MONTANA CENTRAL TUMOR REGISTRY ABSTRACTING MANUAL 2010

Montana Central Tumor Registry
Department of Public Health and Human Services
Public Health and Safety Division
PO Box 202952
Helena, MT 59620
406 . 444 . 2618

Blank Page

Table of Contents

General Principles

Purpose 9
Casefinding 9
Reference Date 9
Reportable List 10
Non-Reportable List 11
Quality Control 12
Follow-Up 12
Confidentiality 12
Class of Case 13
Date of First Contact 13
Procedure Manual 14
Unique Patient Identifiers 14
National Provider Identifier 15
Coding Dates 15
Cancer Identification 16
Multiple Primaries 17
Revising the Original Diagnosis 17
Ambiguous Terminology 18
Outcomes 18
Case Administration 19
In Utero Diagnosis and Treatment 20
Embolization 20

Patient Information

Reporting Hospital 27-28
Abstracted By 29
Type of Reporting Source 30
Suspense Case 31
Accession Number 32
Sequence Number 33-34
Last Name 35
First Name 36
Middle Name 37
Maiden Name 38
Alias 39
Suffix 40
Date of First Contact and Flag 41-42
Medical Record Number 43
Social Security Number 44
Sex 45
Date of Birth and Flag 46-47
Age at Diagnosis 48
Place of Birth 49-50
Patient Address Rules 51
- Street Address at DX 52
- Supplemental Address at DX 53
- City at DX 54
- State at DX 55-56
- Zip Code at DX 57-61
- County at Diagnosis 62
- Current Address 65-70

Telephone and Type 71
Class of Case 72-73
Primary Payer at Diagnosis 74-75
Race 1-5 77-81
Spanish/Hispanic Origin 82
Usual Occupation 84

Usual Industry 85
Tobacco History 86
Alcohol History 87
Marital Status at DX 88
Spouse/Parent Name 89
Comorbidities and Complications 1-10 91-102
Facility Referred From 104
Facility Referred To 105
NPI Facility Referred From 106
NPI Facility Referred To 107
Casefinding Source 108
Ambiguous Terminology Diagnosis 109
Date of Conclusive Diagnosis and Flag 110-111
Multiple Tumors Reported as One Primary 112
Date of Multiple Tumors and Flag 113-114
Multiplicity Counter 115

Cancer Information

Place of Diagnosis Text 125
Other Primary Tumors 126
Date of Diagnosis and Flag 127-128
Primary Site Title 129
Primary Site 130
Laterality 131-132
Diagnostic Confirmation 133-134
Path Number 135
Pathology Text 136
Histology Title 137
Histology 138
Behavior 139
Grade/Differentiation 140-142
Grade Path System 143
Grade Path Value 144
Staging Text 145
SEER Summary Stage 2000 146
AJCC TNM Staging 147
Clinical 148-152
Pathologic 153-157
CS (Collaborative Stage) 158-159
Tumor Size 160
Extension 161
Tumor Size/Extension Evaluation 162
Lymph Nodes 163
Regional Nodes Evaluation 164
Regional Lymph Nodes Positive 165
Regional Lymph Nodes Examined 166
Lymph Vascular Invasion 167
Metastasis at Diagnosis 168
Metastasis Evaluation 169
Mets at Diagnosis – Bone 170
Mets at Diagnosis – Brain 171
Mets at Diagnosis – Liver 172
Mets at Diagnosis – Lung 173
Site-Specific Factors 1-25 174-202
Derived AJCC T, N, M 6th Ed 203-209
Derived AJCC T, N, M 7th Ed 210-216
Derived SS1977 217
Derived SS2000 218
PreRx and PostRx (2012) 219-241
Physical Exam Text 243
Scopes Text 244

X-ray/Scan Text 245
Lab Tests Text 246
Remarks Text 247

Treatment Information

First Course Treatment 259-265
Operative Text 267
Surgery Text 268
Radiation (Beam) Text 269
Radiation (Other) Text 270
Chemotherapy Text 271
Hormone Therapy Text 272
BRM/Immunotherapy Text 273
Other Treatment Text 274
Local Hospital 276-277
DX/Stage Procedure 278-279
Date of DX/Stage Procedure and Flag 280-281
Surgery of Primary Site 282
Date of Surgery and Flag 283-284
Date of Surgical Discharge and Flag 285-286
Radiation 287
Date Radiation Started and Flag 288-290
Date Radiation Ended and Flag 291-293
Regional Treatment Modality 294-296
Boost Treatment Modality 297-298
Boost Dose: cGy 299
Regional Dose: cGy 300
Number of Treatments to this Volume 301
Radiation Treatment Volume 302-305
Location of Radiation Treatment 306
Chemotherapy 307-308
Date of Chemotherapy and Flag 309-311
Hormone Therapy 312-313
Date of Hormone Therapy and Flag 314-316
BRM/Immunotherapy 317-318
Date of BRM/Immunotherapy and Flag 319-321
Other Treatment 322-323
Date of Other Treatment and Flag 324-325
Transplant/Endocrine 326-327
Date of Transplant/Endocrine and Flag 328-329
Date of Systemic Treatment and Flag 330-332
Scope of Regional Lymph Node Surgery 333-334
Surgery of Other Regional/Distant Site 335
Palliative Care 336-337
Surgical Approach 2010 338
Treatment Status 339
Readmission within 30 Days 340
Surgical Margins 341
Date of First Course of Treatment and Flag 342-343
Reason for No Surgery 344
Reason for No Radiation 345
Surgery/Radiation Sequence 346-347
Systemic/Surgery Sequence 348-349
Subsequent Treatment 350

Outcomes

Date of Last Contact or Death and Flag 359-360
Vital Status 361
Cancer Status 362
Letter Frequency 363

Describe Place of Death 364
Place of Death 365
Cause of Death 366
Autopsy 367
Physician - Primary Surgeon 369
Physician - Follow-Up 370
Physician - Managing 371
Physician - 3-4 372-373
NPI - Primary Surgeon 374
NPI - Follow-up Physician 375
NPI - Managing Physician 376
NPI - Physician 3-4 377-378
Follow-up Source 379
Next Follow-up Source 380
Recurrence Date - 1st and Flag 381-382
Recurrence Type - 1st 383-384
Recurrence Distant Site 1-3 385-387
Follow-Up Contact 388-397
RMCDS Flag Fields 399
Override Fields 400-415

Appendix A – Definitions of Single and Subsequent Primaries for Hematologic Malignancies (for cases prior 2010) 427-435

Appendix B – Surgical Codes
Oral Cavity, Lip, Tongue, Gum, Mouth, Palate 441
Parotid, Other Unspecified Glands, Major Salivary Glands 442
Pharynx, Tonsil, Pharynx, Pyriform Sinus 443
Esophagus 444
Stomach 445-446
Colon 447-448
Rectosigmoid 449-450
Rectum 451
Anus 452
Liver and Intrahepatic Bile Ducts 453
Pancreas 454
Larynx 455
Lung 456
Hematopoietic/Reticuloendothelial/Immunoproliferative/Myeloproliferative Disease 457
Bones, Joints, and Articular Cartilage 458
Peripheral Nerves and Autonomic Nervous System 458
Connective, Subcutaneous, and Other Soft Tissues 458
Spleen 459
Skin 460
Breast 461-462
Cervix Uteri 463-464
Corpus Uteri 465-466
Ovary 467-468
Prostate 469
Testis 470
Kidney, Renal Pelvis, and Ureter 471
Bladder 472
Brain, Meninges, Spinal Cord, Cranial Nerves, Other CNS 473
Thyroid Gland 474
Lymph Nodes 475
All Other Sites 476
Unknown and Ill-Defined Sites 477

Index 483

General Principles

Blank Page

PREFACE

Construction of this manual is modeled from the Facility Oncology Registry Data Standards 2010 (FORDS). Implementation of this manual will be required with cancer cases diagnosed on or after January 1, 2010. FORDS has been written to ensure that cancer registry data support the meaningful evaluation of patient diagnosis and treatment and that these data are collected with standardized quality control mechanisms.

Required fields are either required by the Montana Central Tumor Registry law (Duty to Report Tumors 50-15-703), Administrative Rules of Montana (37.8.1801 – 37.8.1808), Public Law 102-515 (Cancer Registries Amendment Act), or NPCR Required Status Table under cooperative agreement with the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, PA 02060, National Program of Cancer Registries (cooperative agreement number U58/DP000765).

PURPOSE

Central cancer registries are organizations that collect, store, analyze, and interpret cancer data on people who are diagnosed and/or treated for cancer in population-based areas. The primary objective of the MCTR is to analyze the incidence, mortality, survival, and the changing frequency of cancer in Montana residents. Analysis is possible with complete case, complete data, timely and quality data reporting.

CASEFINDING

Casefinding is the method of locating all eligible cancer cases and retrieving the required information on all patients diagnosed with or treated for cancer who are to be included in the MCTR. Casefinding will identify both new cases and cases already entered. Active casefinding (involves the registrar retrieving all source documents) is recommended for identifying reportable cases. Reportable cases could easily be missed with passive casefinding as non-registry staff are not familiar with reporting criteria and terminology. For example, non-registry staff could miss the collection of cases with terms that may not sound cancerous (such as linitis plastica or Waldenstrom's macroglobulinemia).

A procedure for obtaining complete and relevant data on all cancer patients with a reportable tumor should be established. The following casefinding sources may identify possible cancer cases:

- Pathology reports (histology, cytology, autopsy, bone marrow, hematology)
- Medical Record Disease Index
- History and Physical
- Consultation Notes
- Progress Notes
- Discharge Summary
- Daily admissions and discharges
- Notes from physician's offices
- Diagnostic Imaging reports (X-ray, MRI, CAT scans)
- Surgery schedule
- Medical oncology logs
- Radiation oncology logs

These sources should be checked thoroughly and periodically to ensure that all cancer patients receiving inpatient or outpatient services from the hospital are included in the registry.

REFERENCE DATE

The reference date is the start date after which all eligible cases must be included in the tumor registry. The Montana Legislature established Montana's reference date as January 1, 1979.

REPORTABLE LIST

According to the Administrative Rules of Montana (37.8.1801), the following tumors are to be submitted for reporting. Hospitals are required to submit reportable cancer cases to the MCTR within six months after the patient's discharge date. The list is based on those cases which are categorized as malignant, in-situ, or benign (for types listed below) by the International Classification of Diseases for Oncology.

A. All malignant neoplasms (including in-situ) (behavior code 2 or 3)

EXCEPTION: Basal Cell Carcinoma (BCC) or Squamous Cell Carcinoma (SCC) of skin (C44._).

NOTE: BCC and SCC of the labia (C51.0-C51.1), vagina (C52.9), vulva (C51.9), clitoris (C51.2), penis (C60.1-C60.9), scrotum (C63.2), prepuce (C60.0), and anus (C21.0) must be included. Carcinoma in-situ of the cervix (CIS), intraepithelial neoplasia grade III (8077/2) of the cervix (CIN III), prostate (PIN III), vulva (VIN III), vagina (VAIN III), and anus (AIN III) are reportable because of their in-situ classification. These cases are not required by the Commission on Cancer but are not excluded in the Montana Law or Administrative Rules 37.8.1801 and must be reported.

B. All benign tumors of the brain (behavior code 0 or 1)

INCLUDES: meninges (C70._), brain (C71._), spinal cord, cranial nerves, and other parts of the CNS (C72._), pituitary gland (C75.1), craniopharyngeal duct (C75.2), and pineal gland (C75.3)

C. All carcinoid tumors (malignant, benign, and NOS)

D. Ambiguous Terms (*with indication of reportable cancer*) without additional information

- **Apparent(ly)**
- **Appears**
- **Comparable with**
- **Compatible with**
- **Consistent with**
- **Favor(s)**
- **Malignant appearing**
- **Most likely**
- **Presumed**
- **Probable**
- **Suspect(ed)**
- **Suspicious (for)**
- **Typical (of)**
- **Neoplasm or Tumor for C70.0-C72.9, C75.1-C75.3**

Exception: If a cytology is reported as *suspicious*, do not interpret it as a diagnosis of cancer. Abstract the case only if a positive biopsy or a physician's clinical impression of cancer supports the cytology findings.

Examples of reportable ambiguous terms:

1. Chest x-ray states *consistent with carcinoma* of the right upper lobe of the lung. The patient refused further work-up or treatment.
2. Mammogram documents *suspicious for malignancy*.
3. CT of brain *suspicious for neoplasm*. Neoplasm is reportable for C70.0-C72.9, C75.1-C75.3.

Examples of non-reportable ambiguous terms:

1. Chest x-ray states *consistent with neoplasm* of left upper lobe of lung. While "consistent with" can indicate a problem, "neoplasm" without indication of malignancy is not reportable except for non-malignant primary intracranial and CNS tumors.
2. Mammogram notes p*ossible carcinoma* of the breast. "Possible" is not on the reportable list.
3. Mammogram notes *suspicious* density. While "suspicious" can indicate a problem, "density" is not indicative of cancer.

Non-analytic cases are required to be reported to the Montana Central Tumor Registry.

Genetic findings in the absence of pathologic or clinical evidence of reportable disease are indicative of risk only and do not constitute a diagnosis.

Non-Reportable Cancers

A. Patients with a history of malignancy who are clinically free of disease when seen at your facility.

B. Patients with skin cancer that do not meet the histology requirements in the Reportable List.

C. Patients diagnosed with a probable carcinoma and subsequently ruled out (see list of Ambiguous Terms).

Example: A patient was diagnosed with probable lung carcinoma in June 1995 and a biopsy performed in July 1995 revealed no evidence of cancer.

D. Patients who receive transient care to avoid interrupting a course of therapy started elsewhere.

Example: A patient who lives in Idaho is visiting and receives scheduled chemotherapy started in Idaho.

E. Out-of-state patients with a history of or evidence of cancer who are not receiving cancer treatment or are seen for an unrelated medical condition.

Reportable ICD-9-CM Codes (review for reportability)

042	AIDS (*review for AIDS-related malignancies*)
140.0 - 208.92	Malignant neoplasms **except 173.0 - 173.9**
209.00 - 209.69	Carcinoid tumors (any behavior) and neuroendocrine tumor (malignant only)
209.70-209.79	Secondary neuroendocrine tumors (effective 10/1/09)
225.0 - 225.9	Benign neoplasms of brain and spinal cord
227.3 - 227.4	Benign neoplasm of pituitary gland, pineal body, and other intracranial endocrine-related structures
228.02	Hemangioma of intracranial structures
230.0 - 234.9	Carcinoma in-situ except **232.0 - 232.9**
236.0	Stromal endometriosis (8931/3 per ICD-O-3)
237.0 - 237.9	Neoplasm of uncertain behavior of endocrine glands and nervous system **except 237.2 - 237.4**
238.4	Polycythemia vera (9950/3)
238.6	Solitary plasmacytoma (9731/3), extramedullary plasmacytoma (9734/3)
238.71	Essential thrombocythemia (9962/3)
238.72	Low grade myelodysplastic syndrome lesions (includes 9980/3, 9982/3, 9985/3), Refractory anemia
238.73	High grade myelodysplastic syndrome lesions (includes 9983/3), Refractory anemia with excess blasts
238.74	Myelodysplastic syndrome with 5q deletion (9986/3)
238.75	Myelodysplastic syndrome, unspecified (9985/3)
238.76	Myelofibrosis with myeloid metaplasia (9961/3)
238.79	Other lymphatic and hematopoietic tissues (includes 9960/3, 9961/3, 9970/1, 9931/3)
239.6-239.7	Neoplasms of unspecified behavior of brain and other parts of nervous system
273.2	Gamma heavy chain disease (9762/3); Franklin's disease (9762/3)
273.3	Waldenstrom's macroglobulinemia (9761/3)
288.3	Hypereosinophilic syndrome (9964/3)
289.83	Chronic Myelofibrosis (NOS) (9961/3)
338.3	Neoplasm-related pain (acute) (chronic); Cancer associated pain; Pain due to malignancy
511.81	Malignant pleural effusion
528.01	Mucositis due to antineoplastic therapy
V07.39	Other prophylactic chemotherapy (*review for reportability*)
V07.8	Other specified prophylactic measures (*review for reportability*)
V10.00 - V10.9	Personal history of malignancy (*review for recurrence, subsequent cancers, and/or subsequent tx*)
V58.0-V58.12	Encounter or admission for radiotherapy, chemotherapy, or immunotherapy (*review for reportability*)
V66.1-V66.2	Convalescence following radiotherapy or chemotherapy (*review for reportability*)
V67.1-V67.2	Follow-up exam following radiotherapy or chemotherapy (*review for reportability*)
V86.0 - V86.1	Estrogen receptor positive or negative status [ER + / ER -]
E879.2	Adverse effect of radiation therapy
E930.7	Adverse effect of antineoplastic antibiotics
E933.1	Adverse effect of antineoplastic and immunosuppressive drugs

QUALITY CONTROL

Accuracy and consistency are essential in tumor registry reporting. A computerized tumor registry should conduct minimal data quality checks. This includes visual review of abstracts and computerized edit checks on each abstract prior to submission to the MCTR. The MCTR will perform quality assurance tasks upon receipt of abstracts from each reporting institution. Review procedures may include visual review of abstracts, review of accession register and abstracts, and periodic re-abstracting of cases. The reporting facility will be required to resolve incomplete, incorrect, or inconsistent data upon MCTR query.

FOLLOW-UP

Annual follow-up of patients is an important cancer registry function. The MCTR conducts yearly lifetime follow-up on all reported cases. Follow-up is based on the date of last contact and is delinquent (lost) if no contact has been made within 15 months after the date of last follow-up information. Cases that are lost-to-follow-up (delinquent) should remain in the follow-up process until follow-up information is obtained.

Follow-up data must include the date(s) and type(s) of treatment for cancer, the site(s) of distant metastasis, date and type of recurrence, subsequent treatment for progressive disease or recurrence, the site and histology of any subsequent primary, the date of last contact, the patient's current physician, and the status of the patient and the cancer.

CONFIDENTIALITY

All data concerning cancer patients is held in strict confidence by the MCTR. Confidentiality is of paramount importance; the privacy of patients, physicians, and hospitals is strictly maintained. As it is elsewhere, confidentiality is an issue of increasing concern to cancer registries. The policy of the MCTR does not release any patient identifying information to third parties. Data is released only in statistically summarized form so that individual patients, hospitals, or physicians cannot be identified. Further, statistically summarized information is released only to individuals or organizations who are qualified to perform and interpret data analyses and who employ safeguards against any unauthorized disclosure.

CLASS OF CASE

All accessioned cases are assigned a *Class of Case* based on the nature of involvement of the facility in the care of the patient.

Analytic Cases

Cases diagnosed and/or administered any of the first course of treatment at the accessioning facility after the registry's reference date are analytic (*Class of Case* 00-22). A network clinic or outpatient center belonging to the facility is considered part of the facility.

Analytic cases, *Class of Case* 10-22, are included in treatment and survival analysis.

Analytic cases, *Class of Case* 00, diagnosed on or after January 1, 2006 are not required to be staged or followed. *Class of Case* 00 is reserved for patients who were originally diagnosed by the reporting facility and received all of their treatment elsewhere or a decision not to treat was made elsewhere. If the patient received no treatment, either because the patient refused recommended treatment or a decision was made not to treat, the *Class of Case* is 14. If there is no information about whether or where the patient was treated, the *Class of Case* is 10.

Non-analytic Cases

Non-analytic cases (*Class of Case* 30-99) are not usually included in routine treatment or survival statistics. The CoC does not require registries in accredited programs to accession, abstract, or follow these cases.

Modifications to Class of Case in 2010

Class of Case was redefined for use beginning in 2010. The codes in this manual allow differentiation between analytic and non-analytic cases and make additional distinctions. For analytic cases, the codes distinguish cases diagnosed in a staff physician's office from those diagnosed initially by the facility and patients fully treated at the facility from those partially treated by the reporting facility. Non-analytic cases are distinguished by whether the patient received care at the facility or did not personally appear there. Patients who received care from the facility are distinguished by the reasons a case may not be analytic: diagnosed prior to the patient's reference date, type of cancer that is not required by CoC to be abstracted, consultation, in-transit care, and care for recurrent or persistent disease. Patients who did not receive care from the reporting facility are distinguished by care given in one or more staff physician offices, care given through an agency whose cancer cases are abstracted by the reporting facility but are not part of it, pathology only cases, and death certificate only cases.

DATE OF FIRST CONTACT

The *Date of First Contact* is the date of the facility's first inpatient or outpatient contact with the patient for diagnosis or treatment of the cancer. For analytic cases, the *Date of First Contact* is the date the patient qualifies as an analytic *Class of Case* 00-22. Usually, the *Date of First Contact* is the date of admission for diagnosis or for treatment. If the patient was admitted for non-cancer-related reasons, the *Date of First Contact* is the date the cancer was first suspected during the hospitalization. If the patient's diagnosis or treatment is as an outpatient of the facility, the *Date of First Contact* is the date the patient first appeared at the facility for that purpose.

If the patient was initially diagnosed at the facility and went elsewhere for treatment (*Class of Case* 00), but then returned for treatment that was initially expected to occur elsewhere, the *Class of Case* is updated to 13 or 14 but the *Date of First Contact* is not changed because it still represents the date the patient became analytic. If the *Class of Case* changes from non-analytic (for example, consult only, *Class of Case* 30) to analytic (for example, part of first course treatment administered at the facility, *Class of Case* 21), the *Date of First Contact* is updated to the date the case became analytic (the date the patient was admitted for treatment).

When a pathology specimen is collected off site and submitted to the facility to be read (and the specimen is positive for cancer), the case is not required by the CoC to be abstracted unless the patient receives first course treatment from the facility.

- If the patient subsequently receives first course treatment at the facility, the case is analytic and must be abstracted and followed. The *Date of First Contact* is the date the patient reported to the facility for the treatment; and the *Class of Case* is 11 or 12 if the diagnosing physician is a staff physician at the reporting facility or 20 or 21 for any other

physician. A staff physician is one who is employed by the facility, is under contract with it, or has routine admitting privileges there.

When a staff physician performs a biopsy off site and the specimen is not submitted to the facility to be read, the case is not required to be abstracted unless the patient receives some first course care at the facility.

- If the patient subsequently receives first course treatment at the facility, the case is analytic and must be abstracted and followed. The *Date of First Contact* is the date the patient reported to the facility for the treatment and the *Class of Case* is 11 or 12.

For non-analytic cases, the *Date of First Contact* is the date the patient's non-analytic status begins with respect to the cancer. For example, for a patient diagnosed and treated entirely in a staff physician's office (*Class of Case* 40), the date the physician initially diagnosed the cancer is the *Date of First Contact*. For autopsy only cases, the *Date of First Contact* is the date of death.

If the state or regional registry requires pathology-only cases to be abstracted and reported, the *Date of First Contact* is the date the specimen was collected and the *Class of Case* is 43. If a patient whose tumor was originally abstracted as a *Class of Case* 43 receives first course treatment subsequently as an inpatient or outpatient at the facility, update both *Class of Case* and *Date of First Contact* to reflect the patient's first in-person contact with the facility.

PROCEDURE MANUAL

Tumor registries should maintain a complete, up-to-date procedure manual that documents each phase of its operations. A procedure manual is a valuable and necessary tool used to organize and maintain an effective, efficient program. When adhered to, this manual will ensure a smooth operation with consistent and accurate abstracting, systematic and continuous follow-up, and complete and timely reporting.

The procedure manual should contain:

- The objectives of the cancer registry
- Job descriptions and specifications of registry positions
- Case eligibility criteria
- The reportable list
- Procedures for casefinding, maintaining and using a suspense file, and accessioning
- A description of the registry filing system
- Documentation of data collection methods, including principles of abstracting, detailed definitions for each data item, references used for coding systems, if applicable, and staging systems used
- Follow-up procedures
- Documentation of quality control procedures
- A description of reporting mechanisms
- Policy statements about confidentiality and release of information

UNIQUE PATIENT IDENTIFIERS

Accession Number and *Sequence Number* uniquely identify the patient and the tumor. Each cancer patient in a registry is assigned a unique accession number, and each primary diagnosed for that patient is assigned a sequence number. The accession number never changes.

- Accession numbers are never reassigned, even if a patient is removed from the registry.
- The sequence number is the sequence of all tumors over a lifetime of a patient and is counted throughout the patient's lifetime.
- A registry may contain a single abstract for a patient with a sequence number of 02, because the first tumor had been either diagnosed and treated elsewhere or diagnosed and/or treated before the facility's reference date. Because of differences in requirements, however, it is still possible for two registries with dissimilar eligibility requirements (for example, a facility registry and a state central registry) to assign different sequence numbers to the same tumor, even though the sequence number codes and instructions applied are the same.

NATIONAL PROVIDER IDENTIFIER

The National Provider Identifier (NPI) is a unique identification number for health care providers that was implemented in 2007 and 2008 by the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services (CMS) as part of the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996 (HIPAA). For billing purposes, large practices and large group providers were required to use NPI codes by May 2007; small health plans were required to use NPI codes by May 2008. Individual item descriptions in this manual should be reviewed for specific coding instructions.

CODING DATES

Beginning in 2010, the way dates are transmitted between facility registries and central registries or the National Cancer DataBase (NCDB) was changed to improve the interoperability or communication of cancer registry data with other electronic record systems. Registry software may display dates in the traditional manner or in the interoperable format. Traditional dates are displayed in MMDDCCYY form, with 99 representing unknown day or month portions, and 99999999 representing a completely unknown date. In the traditional form, some dates also permit 88888888 or 00000000 for special meaning. Interoperable dates are displayed in CCYYMMDD form, with the unknown portions of the date filled with blank spaces. If the date is entirely blank, an associated date flag is used to explain the missing date. The following table illustrates the relationship among these items for *Date of Most Definitive Surgical Resection of the Primary Site*, where each lower case 'b' represents a blank space. Flags are not used for software-generated dates.

Description	**Traditional Date**	**Interoperable Date**	**Date Flag**
	Date entered in MMDDCCYY sequence; unknown portions represented by 99 or 9999	**Date entered in CCYYMMDD sequence, leaving unknown portions blank (spaces);omit the date if the date is completely unknown**	
Full date known	MMDDYYCC (example: 02182010)	CCYYMMDD (example: 20100218)	bb
Month and year known	MM99CCYY (example: 02992010)	CCYYMMbb (example: 201002bb)	bb
Year only known	9999CCYY (example: 99992010)	CCYYbbbb (example: 2010bbbb)	bb
Unknown if any surgery performed	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	10
No surgery performed	00000000 (example: 00000000)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb	11
Date is unknown, surgery performed	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb	12

CANCER IDENTIFICATION

Follow the instructions in the ICD-O-3 section, "Coding Guidelines for Topography and Morphology" (ICD-O-3 pp. 19-42) to code *Primary Site*, *Histology*, *Behavior Code*, and *Grade/Differentiation*.

Primary Site

The instructions for coding primary site are found in the "Topography" section of the ICD-O-3 "Coding Guidelines for Topography and Morphology" (ICD-O-3 pages 23-26). The following guidelines should be followed for consistent analysis of primary sites for particular histologies.

Hematopoietic and Lymphoid Cancers

Beginning with cases diagnosed in 2010, the **Hematopoietic and Lymphoid Neoplasm Case Reportability and Coding Manual** is to be used for coding primary site, histology, and grade of hematopoietic tumors and to determine whether multiple conditions represent one or more tumors to be abstracted. For tumors diagnosed prior to January 1, 2010, use the rules applicable when the cancer was diagnosed (See Appendix A).

Kaposi Sarcoma

- Code Kaposi sarcoma to the site in which it arises.
- Code to Skin (C44.9) if Kaposi sarcoma arises simultaneously in the skin and another site or the primary site is not identified.

Melanoma

- Code to Skin, NOS (C44.9) if a patient is diagnosed with metastatic melanoma and the primary site is not identified.

Specific Tissues with Ill-Defined Sites

- If any of the following histologies appears only with an ill-defined site description (e.g., "abdominal" or "arm"), code it to the tissue in which such tumors arise rather than the ill-defined region (C76._) of the body, which contains multiple tissues. Use the alphabetic index ICD-O-3 to assign the most specific site if only a general location is specified in the record.

Histology	Description	Code to This Site
8720-8790	Melanoma	C44._, Skin
8800-8811, 8813-8830, 8840-8921, 9040-9044	Sarcoma except periosteal fibrosarcoma and dermatofibrosarcoma	C49._, Connective, Subcutaneous and Other Soft Tissues
8990-8991	Mesenchymoma	C49._, Connective, Subcutaneous and Other Soft Tissues
9120-9170	Blood vessel tumors, lymphatic vessel tumors	C49._, Connective, Subcutaneous and Other Soft Tissues
9580-9582	Granular cell tumor and alveolar soft part sarcoma	C49._, Connective, Subcutaneous and Other Soft Tissues
9240-9252	Mesenchymal chrondrosarcoma and giant cell tumors	C40._, C41,_ for Bone and Cartilage C49._, Connective, Subcutaneous and Other Soft Tissues
8940-8941	Mixed tumor, salivary gland type	C07._ for Parotid Gland C08._ for Other and Unspecified Major Salivary Glands

MULTIPLE PRIMARIES

The most recent **SEER Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules** contain site-specific rules for lung, breast, colon, melanoma of the skin, head and neck, kidney, renal pelvis/ureter/bladder, and malignant and nonmalignant brain primaries. A separate set of rules addresses the specific and general rules for all other sites. The multiple primary rules guide and standardize the process of determining the number of primaries. The histology rules contain detailed histology and coding instructions.

The **SEER Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules** do not apply to hematopoietic and lymphoid tumors. Use the **Hematopoietic and Lymphoid Neoplasm Case Reportability and Coding Manual** and the **Hematopoietic and Lymphoid Neoplasms Database** to code hematopoietic primaries (lymphoma and leukemia M9590-9989) diagnosed on January 1, 2010 or later. Use the tables in Appendix A only for hematopoietic and lymphoid cases diagnosed prior to 2010. Primary site and timing are not applicable for determining whether these malignancies represent one or more primaries.

Paired Organ Sites

A list of paired organ sites can be found earlier in this section with the coding instructions for *Laterality*. Refer to the **SEER Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules** to determine whether involvement of paired sites should be coded as one or two primaries.

REVISING THE ORIGINAL DIAGNOSIS

Data are gathered from multiple sources using the most recent and complete information available. Over time, the patient's records may contain new information such as tests, scans, and consults. Change the primary site, laterality, histology, and stage as the information becomes more complete. If the primary site is changed, it may also be necessary to revise site-specific staging and treatment codes. There is no time limit for making revisions that give better information about the original diagnosis or stage. However, if staging information is updated, it is important to adhere to the timing requirements for the respective staging system. Most cases that require revision are unknown primaries.

Examples:

1) The institution clinically diagnoses a patient with carcinomatosis. The registry enters the case as an unknown primary (C80.9), carcinoma, NOS (8010/3), stage of disease unknown. Nine months later, a paracentesis shows serous cystadenocarcinoma. The physician says that the patient has an ovarian primary. Change the primary site to ovary (C56.9), histology to serous cystadenocarcinoma (8441/3), and diagnostic confirmation to positive cytologic study, no positive histology (code 2). If enough information is available that meets the AJCC timing requirements for staging, change the stage from not applicable (88) to the appropriate staging basis, TNM elements, and stage group, or to unknown. Update the Collaborative Staging input items and rerun the derivation program.

2) A physician may decide that a previously clinically diagnosed malignancy is a benign lesion. The patient is referred from a nursing home to the facility. The chest x-ray shows a cavitary lesion in the right lung. The family requests that the patient undergo no additional workup or treatment. Discharge diagnosis is "probable carcinoma of right lung". The registrar abstracts a lung primary (C34.9). Two years later a chest x-ray shows an unchanged lesion. The physician documents "lung cancer ruled out". Delete the case from the registry. Adjust the sequence number(s) of any other primaries the patient may have. Do not reuse the accession number.

AMBIGUOUS TERMINOLOGY

If the wording in the patient record is ambiguous with respect to tumor spread, use the following guidelines.

List of Ambiguous Terms Describing Tumor Spread

Terms that Constitute Tumor Involvement/Extension	
Adherent	Into
Apparent	Onto
Compatible with	Out onto
Consistent with	Probable
Encroaching upon	Suspect
Fixation, fixed	Suspicious
Induration	To

OUTCOMES

The outcomes data items describe the known clinical and vital status of the patient. Follow-up information is obtained at least annually for all living *Class of Case* 10-22 patients included in a cancer registry's database. Recorded follow-up data should reflect the most recent information available to the registry that originates from reported patient hospitalizations, known patient readmissions, contact with the patient's physician, and/or direct contact with the patient.

Follow-up items that are required to be in the facility's database:

There may be times when first course treatment information is incomplete. Therefore, it is important to continue follow-up efforts to be certain the necessary treatment information is collected. This includes:

- Complete first course of treatment information when *Surgical Procedure of Primary Site* is delayed six months or more following the *Date of First Contact*.
- Radiation, chemotherapy, hormone therapy, immunotherapy, hematologic transplant and endocrine procedures, or other treatment that had been indicated as being planned as part of first course of treatment, but not been started or completed as of the most recent follow-up date. Use radiation or systemic treatment dates of 88888888 and treatment or "reason for no" treatment codes of 88 or 8 as ticklers to identify incomplete treatment information.
- Follow-up for disease recurrence should be conducted until a) evidence of disease recurrence is reported, or b) the patient dies. If the *Type of First Recurrence* is coded 70 (never cancer free), when the patient was last seen, but treatment is still underway, then check at follow-up to see whether the patient subsequently became cancer-free. Occasionally, if first course treatment ends due to disease progression, it may be second course or subsequent treatment that results in a cancer-free status. If the *Type of First Recurrence* is coded 00 (became cancer-free and has had no recurrence), then continue to follow for recurrence and record the type and date when it occurs. Reappearance of a tumor of the same histology in the same primary site during the time period defined by the SEER Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules does not constitute a recurrence.

While the patient is alive, be sure that contact information is kept current. In addition to the treatment and recurrence items, these include:

- Current Street Address
- Current City
- Current State
- Current Zip Code
- Telephone
- Date of Last Contact

Once the patient's death has been recorded, no further follow-up is performed.

CASE ADMINISTRATION

Correct and timely management of case records in a registry data set are necessary to describe the nature of the data in the cancer record and to facilitate meaningful analysis of data, and it is necessary to understand each item's respective purpose to ensure their accuracy and how to use them in analysis.

Administrative Tracking

The following administrative tracking items are required to be in the facility's database:

- *Abstracted By*
- *Facility Number*

Abstracted By and *Hospital Number* identify the individual and facility responsible for compiling the record.

- In a registry with more than one abstractor or serving more than one facility, it will ordinarily be necessary to enter Abstracted By or Facility Number only when it changes.

The items, *Abstracted By* and *Facility Number*, should be autocoded by the registry software.

EDITS Overrides

The following override items are required to be in the facility's database:

- *Override Acsn/Class/Seq*
- *Override Age/Site/Morph*
- *Override CoC – Site/Type*
- *Override Site/Type*
- *Override Histology*
- *Override Leuk/Lymphoma*
- *Override Site/Behavior*
- *Override Site/Lat/Morph*
- *Override HospSeq/DxConf*
- *Override HospSeq/Site*
- *Override Site/TNM-StgGrp*
- *Override Surg/DxConf*
- *Override Seq/DxConf*
- *Override Site/Lat/Seq*
- *Override Report Source*
- *Override Ill-defined Site*

A series of override items designed to work with the EDITS package have been added with the publication of FORDS. Some of the CoC edits identify rare, but possible, code combinations. For these edits, an override flag can be set if, upon review, the unusual combination is verified as being correct. Once set, the error message will not be repeated on subsequent EDITS passes.

- When no error message is generated by an edit that uses an override item, no action by the registrar is needed.
- If an error message is generated, the problem can often be resolved by checking the accuracy of the entry for each item that contributes to the edit and correcting any problems identified. If correction of data entry errors resolves the problem, no override entry is needed. If the codes reflect the information in the patient record, check for physician notes indicating the unusual combination of circumstances (for example, a colon adenocarcinoma in a child) has been confirmed.
- Enter the override code according to the instructions in the data item. If no comment regarding the unusual circumstances can be found in the record, it may be necessary to check with the managing physician or pathologist to determine whether it is appropriate to override the edit.

IN UTERO DIAGNOSIS AND TREATMENT

Beginning in 2009, diagnosis and treatment dates for a fetus prior to birth are to be assigned the actual date of the event. In the past, those dates were set by the rule to the date the baby was born. The exact date may be used for cases diagnosed prior to 2009.

EMBOLIZATION

The term embolization refers to the intentional blocking of an artery or vein. The mechanism and the reason for embolization determine how and whether it is to be recorded.

Chemoembolization is a procedure in which the blood supply to the tumor is blocked surgically or mechanically and anticancer drugs are administered directly into the tumor. This permits a higher concentration of drug to be in contact with the tumor for a longer period of time. Code chemoembolization as *Chemotherapy* when embolizing agent(s) is a chemotherapeutic drug(s) or when the term *chemoembolization* is used with no reference to the agent. Use *SEER*Rx Interactive Drug Database* (http://seer.cancer.gov/) to determine whether the drugs used are classified as chemotherapeutic agents. Also code as *Chemotherapy* when the patient has primary or metastatic cancer in the liver and the only information about embolization is a statement that the patient had chemoembolization, tumor embolization, or embolization of the tumor in the liver. However, if alcohol is specified as the embolizing agent, even in the liver, code the treatment as *Other Treatment*.

Radioembolization is embolization combined with injection of small radioactive beads or coils into an organ or tumor. Code *Radiation Modality* as brachytherapy when tumor embolization is performed using a radioactive agent or radioactive seeds.

Embolization is coded as *Other Treatment* (code 1) if the embolizing agent is alcohol, or if the embolized site is other than the liver and the only information in the record is that the patient was given “embolization” with no reference to the agent.

Do not code pre-surgical embolization of hypervascular tumors with particles, coils, or alcohol. These pre-surgical embolizations are typically performed to make the resection of the primary tumor easier. Examples where pre-surgical embolization is used include meningiomas, hemangioblastomas, paragangliomas, and renal cell metastases in the brain.

Blank Page

Blank Page

Blank Page

Blank Page

Patient Information

Blank Page

Reporting Hospital

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Hospital (Reporting Facility)	540	3	04/07	Required

Description
Identifies the facility reporting the case.

Rationale
Each facility's identification number is unique. The number is essential to monitor data submissions, ensuring the accuracy of data, and for identifying areas for special studies.

Instructions for Coding
- Reporting Hospital is automatically coded by the software provider.

Montana Reporting Facilities

Hospitals

Number	NPI Number	ACoS Number	Facility Name	City
403	1568629764	6810010	Community Hospital of Anaconda	Anaconda
411	1316965346	6810013	Fallon Medical Complex	Baker
458	1730129305	6810005	Big Sandy Medical Center	Big Sandy
412	1265478291	6810020	Billings Clinic	Billings
413	1083655997	6810030	St. Vincent Healthcare	Billings
407	1720079619	6810040	Bozeman Deaconess Hospital	Bozeman
400	1528037215	6810055	St. James Healthcare	Butte
414	1497754782	6810085	Liberty Medical Center	Chester
415	1083602205	6810095	Teton Medical Center	Choteau
409	1054388387	6810100	Stillwater Community Hospital	Columbus
416	1467445049	6810110	Pondera Medical Center	Conrad
417	1598874232	6810123	Roosevelt Memorial Medical Center	Culbertson
418	1831143080	6810125	Northern Rockies Medical Center	Cut Bank
419	1275560617	6810129	Powell County Memorial Hospital	Deer Lodge
420	1326042078	6810135	Barrett Hospital and Healthcare	Dillon
421	1760531404	6810150	Dahl Memorial Healthcare Association	Ekalaka
405	1740223882	6810155	Madison Valley Hospital Association	Ennis
422	1023066081	6810160	Rosebud Healthcare Center	Forsyth
423	1356332266	6810170	Missouri River Medical Center	Fort Benton
424	1689685323	6810190	Frances Mahon Deaconess Hospital	Glasgow
425	1376552893	6810220	Glendive Medical Center	Glendive
427	1881650737	6810245	Benefis Hospital/Sletten Cancer Institute	Great Falls
480	1801897780	10000701	Great Falls Clinic	Great Falls
429	1659475846	6810260	Marcus Daly Memorial Hospital	Hamilton
430	1891713533	6810272	Big Horn County Memorial Hospital	Hardin
431	1073687406	6810285	Wheatland Memorial Healthcare	Harlowton
432	1427059070	6810290	Northern Montana Hospital	Havre
434	1710152277	6810330	St. Peter's Hospital	Helena
477	1417945627	6810360	Kalispell Regional Medical Center	Kalispell
438	1790798387	6810380	Central Montana Medical Center	Lewistown
439	1952312050	6810390	St. John's Lutheran Hospital	Libby
408	1245222306	6810395	Livingston Memorial Hospital	Livingston
440	1255476388	6810405	Phillips County Hospital	Malta
441	1548292220	6810410	Holy Rosary Healthcare	Miles City
443	1396711396	6810415	Community Medical Center	Missoula
445	1023032588	6810225	St. Patrick Hospital	Missoula

Number	NPI Number	ACoS Number	Facility Name	City
402	1922073907	6810440	Granite County Medical Center	Philipsburg
471	1265547939	6810445	Clark Fork Valley Hospital	Plains
446	1467452102	6810450	Sheridan Memorial Hospital Association	Plentywood
447	1821184888	6810460	St. Joseph Medical Center	Polson
448	1396766903	6810465	Northeast Montana Health Services	Poplar
410	1336119338	6810477	Beartooth Hospital & Health Center	Red Lodge
467	1336213446	6810481	St. Luke Community Hospital	Ronan
449	1386751196	6810485	Roundup Memorial Healthcare	Roundup
451	1346224391	6810505	Daniels Memorial Hospital	Scobey
468	1497742415	6819070	Marias Medical Center	Shelby
469	1083710651	6819075	Ruby Valley Hospital	Sheridan
452	1285719161	6810510	Sidney Health Center	Sidney
470	1093809196	6819080	Mineral Community Hospital	Superior
404	1447245857	6810530	Broadwater Health Center	Townsend
454	1396710851	6810550	North Valley Hospital	Whitefish
457	1811102270	6819100	Mountainview Medical Center	White Sulphur Springs
455	1821016536	6810560	Northeast Montana Health Services	Wolf Point

VA Hospitals

Number	NPI Number	ACoS Number	Facility Name	City
463	1457546384	6810180	Montana VAMC	Fort Harrison

Indian Health Services

Number			Facility Name	City
478	1861409955	6810050	Blackfeet Indian Health Services	Browning
462	1235302142	6810120	Crow IHS Hospital	Crow Agency
464	1942367842	6810280	Fort Belknap IHS Hospital	Harlem
474	1972694602	9999999	Fort Peck IHS Poplar Health Services	Poplar

Radiation Centers

Number	NPI Number	ACoS Number	Facility Name	City
490	1902871544	6813498	Northern Rockies Radiation Oncology Center	Billings

Pathology Laboratories

Number	NPI Number	ACoS Number	Facility Name	City
498	1790787935	9999999	Yellowstone Pathology Institute	Billings
493	1669597266	9999999	Northern Plains Pathology	Great Falls
495	1740364017	9999999	Western Montana Clinic	Missoula

Physicians

Number	NPI Number	ACoS Number	Facility Name	City
200	1760485619	9999999	Tallman Dermatology	Billings
202	1003900457	9999999	Advanced Dermatology	Butte
208	1720073596	9999999	Dermatology Office of Great Falls	Great Falls
210	1003902909	9999999	Helena Dermatology	Helena
212	1497896229	9999999	Associated Dermatology of Helena	Helena
204	1114093846	9999999	Dermatology Associates of Kalispell	Kalispell

Abstracted By

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	570	3		Required

Description
Records the initials or assigned code of the individual abstracting the case.

Rationale
This item can be used for quality control and management in multi-staffed registries.

Instructions for Coding
- Code the initials of the abstractor. Most software vendors automatically code this field when the user logs into the software.
- Do not record the initials of a data-entry person unless that person is also the abstractor.

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	Initials or code of abstractor.

Type of Reporting Source

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	500	1	09/06	Required

Description
Codes the source documents used to abstract the majority of information on the tumor being reported. This may not be the source of original case finding (for example, if a case is identified through a pathology laboratory report review and all source documents used to abstract the case are from the physician's office, code this item 4).

Rationale
The code in this field can be used to explain why information may be incomplete on a tumor. For example, death certificate only cases have unknown values for many data items, so one may want to exclude them from some analyses. The field also is used to monitor the success of non-hospital case reporting and follow-back mechanisms. All population-based registries should have some death certificate-only cases where no hospital admission was involved, but too high a percentage can imply both shortcomings in case-finding and that follow-back to uncover missed hospital reports was not complete..

Instructions for Coding
- Code in the following priority order: 1, 2, 8, 4, 3, 5, 6, 7. The source facilities included in the previous code 1 are split between codes 1, 2, and 8.
- Field should not be left blank.

Code	Report Source	Priority
1	Hospital (inpatient or outpatient) Clinic (free standing) Managed health plans with comprehensive, unified medical records	1
2	Radiation Treatment Centers Medical Oncology Centers (hospital-affiliated or independent)	2
3	Laboratory (hospital-affiliated or private) Pathology reporting only	5
4	Physician's Office Private medical practitioner	4
5	Nursing Convalescent home Hospice	6
6	Autopsy only	7
7	Death certificate only (for MCTR use only)	8
8	Other hospital outpatient units Surgery centers	3

This data item is intended to indicate the completeness of information available to the abstractor. Reports from health plans (e.g., Kaiser, Veterans Administration, military facilities) in which all diagnostic and treatment information is maintained centrally and is available to the abstractor are expected to be at least as complete as reports for hospital inpatients, which is why these sources are grouped with inpatients and given the code with the highest priority.

Sources with code "2" usually have complete information on the cancer diagnosis, staging, and treatment.

Code 6, Autopsy only, means that the cancer was not diagnosed even as a clinical diagnosis while the patient was alive. Autopsy findings take precedence over death certificate information (i.e., Code 6 takes precedence over code 7). However, a clinical diagnosis of cancer at any of the sources coded 1 through 5 has priority over confirmation at autopsy.

Sources coded with "8" would include, but would not be limited to, outpatient surgery and nuclear medicine services. A physician's office that calls itself a surgery center should be coded as a physician's office. Surgery centers are equipped and staffed to perform surgical procedures under general anesthesia. If a physician's office calls itself a surgery center, but cannot perform surgical procedures under general anesthesia, code as a physician's office.

Suspense Case

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
		1		Optional

Description
Identifies a case that has not been completely abstracted.

Rationale
Registrars may desire to use the "suspense" code (1) when first abstracting a record with incomplete information and after completion then changing the record back to a non-suspense record (0). The "suspense" record is like flagging a record that has been started but not completed. Cases that are flagged suspense (1) are not submitted to the MCTR until the flag is changed to a 0.

Instructions for Coding

Code	Description
(leave blank)	Not a suspense record (default code)
1	Suspense record

Accession Number

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	550	9	01/04, 01/10	Required

Description
Provides a unique identifier for the patient consisting of the year in which the patient was first seen at the reporting facility and the consecutive order in which the patient was abstracted.

Rationale
This data item protects the identity of the patient and allows cases to be identified on a local, state, and national level.

Instructions for Coding
- Assign a unique accession number to each patient. The accession number identifies the patient even if multiple primaries exist. Use the same accession number for all subsequent primaries.
- When a patient is deleted from the database, do not reuse the accession number for another patient.
- The first four numbers specify the year (of first contact with cancer) and the last five numbers are the numeric order in which the patient was entered into the registry database.
- Numeric gaps are allowed in accession numbers.
- A patient's accession number is never reassigned.
- If a patient is first accessioned into the registry, then the registry later changes its reference date and the patient is subsequently accessioned into the registry with a new primary, use the original accession number associated with the patient and code the data item *Sequence Number* appropriately.

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	Nine-digit number used to identify the year in which the patient was first seen at the reporting facility for the diagnosis and/or treatment of cancer.

Examples:

Code	Reason
200300033	Patient enters the hospital in 2003 and is diagnosed with breast cancer. The patient is the 33rd patient accessioned in 2003.
200300033	A patient with the accession number 200300033 for a breast primary returns to the hospital with a subsequent colon primary in 2004. The accession number will remain the same. *Sequence Number* will reflect this primary.
200300010	Patient is diagnosed in November 2002, at another facility enters the reporting facility in January 2003, and is the tenth case accessioned in 2003.
200300012	Patient is diagnosed in staff physician office in December 2002 enters the reporting facility in January 2003, and is the 12th case accessioned in 2003.
199100067	Patient enters the hospital in 1991, and is diagnosed with prostate cancer. The registry later sets a new reference date of January 1, 1997. The same patient presents with a diagnosis of lymphoma in 2005. *Sequence Number* will distinguish this primary.
200300001	First patient diagnosed/treated and entered into the registry database for 2003.
200300999	999th patient diagnosed/treated and entered into the registry database for 2003.
200401504	1504th patient diagnosed/treated and entered into the registry database for 2004.

Sequence Number

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	560	2	09/04, 09/06, 04/07, 01/10	Required

Description
Indicates the sequence of reportable malignant and non-malignant neoplasms over the lifetime of the patient.

Rationale
This data item is used to distinguish among cases having the same accession numbers, to select patients with only one malignant primary tumor for certain follow-up studies, and to analyze factors involved in the development of multiple tumors.

Instructions for Coding
- Codes 00-59 and 99 indicate neoplasms of malignant or in-situ behavior (behavior code 2 or 3).
- Codes 60-88 indicate neoplasms of non-malignant behavior (behavior code 0 or 1) and malignant neoplasms that the MCTR has defined as reportable that the CoC does not require (carcinoma in-situ of the cervix (CIS), intraepithelial neoplasia grade III (8077/2) of the cervix (CIN III), prostate (PIN III), vulva (VIN III), vagina (VAIN III), and anus (AIN III)).
- Code 00 only if the patient has a single malignant primary. If the patient develops a subsequent malignant or in-situ primary tumor, change the code for the first tumor from 00 to 01, and number the subsequent tumors sequentially.
- Code 60 only if the patient has a single non-malignant primary or reportable neoplasm that the MCTR has defined as reportable that the CoC does not require (see list above). If the patient develops a subsequent non-malignant primary, change the code for the first tumor from 60 to 61, and assign codes to subsequent non-malignant primaries sequentially.
- If two or more malignant or in-situ neoplasms are diagnosed at the same time, assign the lowest sequence number to the diagnosis with the worst prognosis. If no difference in prognosis is evident, the decision is arbitrary.
- If two or more non-malignant neoplasms are diagnosed at the same time, assign the lowest sequence number to the diagnosis with the worst prognosis. If no difference in prognosis is evident, the decision is arbitrary.
- Any tumor in the patient's past which is reportable or reportable-by-agreement at the time the current tumor is diagnosed must be taken into account when sequencing subsequently accessioned tumors. However, do not reassign sequence numbers if one of those tumors becomes non-reportable later.
- Sequence numbers should be reassigned if the facility learns later of an unaccessioned tumor that would affect the sequence.

Malignant or In-situ

Code	Definition
00	One malignant or in-situ primary only in the patient's lifetime
01	First of two or more independent malignant or in-situ primaries
02	Second of two or more independent malignant or in-situ primaries
…	
…	(Actual sequence of this malignant or in-situ primary)
…	
59	Fifty-ninth of 59 or more independent malignant or in-situ primaries
99	Unknown number of malignant or in-situ primaries

Required by MCTR (see pages 10-12)

(CIS) carcinoma in-situ of the cervix
(CIN III) intraepithelial neoplasia grade III (8077/2) of the cervix
(PIN III) prostate
(VIN III) vulva
(VAIN III) vagina
(AIN III) anus
Benign tumors of brain and CNS
Uncertain carcinoid

Code	Definition
60	Only one non-malignant primary or in-situ case required by MCTR listed above
61	First of two or more independent non-malignant primaries or in-situ case required by MCTR listed above
62	Second of two or more independent non-malignant primaries or in-situ case required by MCTR listed above
…	
…	(Consecutive number of non-malignant primaries) or in-situ case required by MCTR listed above
…	
87	Twenty-seventh of twenty-seven independent non-malignant primaries or in-situ case required by MCTR listed above
88	Unspecified number of neoplasms in this category

Examples:

Code	Reason
00	A patient with no history of previous cancer is diagnosed with in-situ breast carcinoma June 13, 2003.
01	The sequence number is changed when the patient with an in-situ breast carcinoma diagnosed on June 13, 2003, is diagnosed with a subsequent melanoma on August 30, 2003.
02	Sequence number assigned to the melanoma diagnosed on August 30, 2003, following a breast cancer in-situ diagnosed on June 13, 2003.
04	A nursing home patient is admitted to a hospital for first course surgery for a colon adenocarcinoma. The patient has a prior history of three malignant cancers of the type the registry is required to accession, though the patient was not seen for these cancers at the hospital. No sequence numbers 01, 02, or 03 are accessioned for this patient.
60	The sequence number assigned to a benign brain tumor diagnosed on November 1, 2005, following a breast carcinoma diagnosed on June 13, 2003, and a melanoma diagnosed on August 30, 2003.
63	Carcinoma in-situ of the cervix (CIN III) is diagnosed by the facility in 2003 and accessioned as sequence 60. A benign brain tumor was diagnosed and treated elsewhere in 2002; patient comes to the facility with a second independent benign brain tumor in 2004. Unaccessioned earlier brain tumor is counted as sequence 61, CIN III is re-sequenced to 62, and second benign brain tumor is assigned sequence 63.

Last Name

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Name – Last	2230	40	01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the last name of the patient.

Rationale
This data item is used by hospitals as a patient identifier.

Instructions for Coding
- Truncate name if more than 40 letters long. Blanks, spaces, hyphens, and apostrophes are allowed.
- Do not use other punctuation.
- Do not leave blank; code as unknown if the patient's last name is unknown.
- This field may be updated, if the last name changes.

Examples:

Code	Reason
Mc Donald	Recorded with space as Mc Donald
O'Hara	Recorded with apostrophe as O'Hara
Smith-Jones	Janet Smith marries Fred Jones and changes her name to Smith-Jones
UNKNOWN	Patient's last name is unknown, use UNKNOWN

First Name

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Name – First	2240	40	01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the first name of the patient.

Rationale
This data item is used by hospitals to differentiate between patients with the same last name.

Instructions for Coding
- Truncate name if more than 40 letters long. Do not use punctuation.

Examples:

Code	Reason
Michael	Patient is admitted as Michael David Hogan
(leave blank)	If patient's first name is unknown, do not fill in the space.

Middle Name

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Name – Middle	2250	40	01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the middle name or middle initial of the patient.

Rationale
This data item helps to distinguish between patients with identical first and last names.

Instructions for Coding

- Truncate the name if more than 40 letters long. Record the middle initial if the complete name is not provided. Do not use punctuation.

Examples:

Code	Reason
David	Patient's name is Michael David Hogan
D	Patient's name is Michael D. Hogan
(leave blank)	If patient's middle name is not known or there is none, do not fill in the space.

Maiden Name

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Name – Maiden	2390	40	01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the maiden name of the patient.

Rationale
Maiden name may be useful in matching multiple records for the same patient.

Instructions for Coding
- Truncate the name if more than 15 letters long. Do not use punctuation.
- Leave blank if unknown or patient was never married.

Alias

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Name – Alias	2280	40	01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the alias or nickname of the patient.

Rationale
This item is useful for matching multiple records on the same patient.

Instructions for Coding
- If the patient uses only a last name alias, record the last name alias followed by a blank space and the real first name.
- If the patient uses an alias for the first name, record the last name followed by a blank space and the alias name.
- If the patient uses an alias for the first and last name, record the last name alias followed by a blank space and the first name alias.
- Leave the field blank if the patient has no alias.

Examples:

Code	Reason
Williams Bud	Patient named Ralph Williams goes by Bud Williams.
Twain Mark	Patient Samuel Clemens uses the name Mark Twain.
Brown Janice	Patient named Janice Smith uses the name Janice Brown.
(leave blank)	If patient's alias is unknown, do not fill in the space.

Suffix

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Name – Suffix	2270	3		Optional

Description
Identifies the title that may follow a patient's name.

Rationale
Suffix is usually a generation identifier which helps to distinguish patients with the same name.

Instructions for Coding
- Leave blank if the patient does not have a name suffix.
- If multiple suffixes are used, the generation specific suffix is to be recorded.
- Do not use punctuation.

Code	Description	Code	Description
FR	Father	DR	Doctor
SR	Senior	HON	Honorable
JR	Junior	I	First
REV	Reverend	II	Second
STR	Sister	III	Third
BR	Brother		

Date of First Contact

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Date First Seen	580	8	01/04, 09/06, 01/10	Required

Description
Date of first contact with the reporting facility for diagnosis and/or treatment of this cancer.

Rationale
This data item can be used to measure the time between first contact and the date that the case was abstracted. It can also be used to measure the length of time between the first contact and treatment for quality of care reports.

Instructions for Coding

- Record the date the patient first had contact with the facility as either an inpatient or outpatient for diagnosis and/or treatment of a reportable tumor. The date may be the date of an outpatient visit for a biopsy, X-ray, or laboratory test, or the date a pathology specimen was collected at the hospital
- If this is an autopsy-only or death certificate-only case, then use the date of death.
- When a patient is diagnosed in a staff physician's office, the date of first contact is the date the patient was physically first seen at the reporting facility.
- Beginning in 2010, the way dates are transmitted has changed. In order that the registry data can be interoperable with other data sources, dates are transmitted in a format widely accepted outside of the registry setting. However, this does not necessarily mean that the way dates are entered in any particular registry software product has changed. Software providers can provide the best information about date entry in their own systems. The traditional format for *Date of First Contact* is MMDDCCYY, with 99 identifying unknown month or day, and 99999999 representing an entirely unknown date. The interoperable form of *Date of First Contact* transmits in CCYYMMDD form, where blank spaces are used for unknown trailing portions of the date. The *Date of Birth Flag* is used to explain why *Date of First Contact* is not a known date. See *Date of First Contact Flag* for an illustration of the relationships among these items.

Examples:

Code	Reason
02122008	A patient has an outpatient mammography that is suspicious for malignancy on February 12, 2008, and subsequently undergoes an excisional biopsy or radical surgical procedure on February 14, 2008
09142009	Patient undergoes a biopsy in a physician's office on September 8, 2009. The pathology specimen was sent to the reporting facility and was read as malignant melanoma. The patient enters that same reporting facility on September 14, 2009 for wide re-excision.
12072010	Patient has an MRI of the brain on December 7, 2010 for symptoms including severe headache and disorientation. The MRI findings are suspicious for astrocytoma. Surgery on December 19 removes all gross tumor..
04992003	If information is limited to the description "Spring, 2003".
07992003	If information is limited to the description "The middle of the year, 2003".
10992003	If information is limited to the description "Fall, 2003".
12992003 or 01992004	If information is limited to the description "Winter", try to determine if this means the beginning or the end of the year.

Date of First Contact Flag

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	581	2	New 01/10	Required

Description
This flag explains why there is no appropriate value in the corresponding date field, *Date of First Contact*.

Rationale
As part of an initiative to standardize date fields, date flag fields were introduced to accommodate non-date information that had previously been transmitted in date fields.

Instructions for Coding
- Leave this item blank if *Date of First Contact* has a full or partial date recorded.
- Code 12 if the *Date of First Contact* cannot be determined at all.
- Registrars should enter this data item directly (when appropriate) even if the traditional form of date entry is used in the software.

Code	Definition
12	A proper value is applicable but not known (for example, date of first contact is unknown
(Blank)	A valid date is provided in item *Date of First Contact*

The following table illustrates the use of the date flag and the traditional and interoperable date formats for coding *Date of First Contact* and *Date of First Contact Flag*. ***In the table below, the lowercase letter "b" is used to represent each blank space***.

Description	Traditional Date	Interoperable Date	Date Flag
	Date entered in MMDDCCYY sequence; unknown portions represented by 99 or 9999	**Date entered in CCYYMMDD sequence, leaving unknown portions blank (spaces);omit the date if the date is completely unknown**	
Full date known	MMDDYYCC (example: 02182010)	CCYYMMDD (example: 20100218)	bb
Month and year known	MM99CCYY (example: 02992010)	CCYYMMbb (example: 201002bb)	bb
Year only known	9999CCYY (example: 99992010)	CCYYbbbb (example: 2010bbbb)	bb
Unknown date	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	12

Medical Record Number

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Chart Number	2300	11		Required

Description
Records the medical record number usually assigned by the reporting facility's health information management (HIM) department.

Rationale
This number identifies the patient within a reporting facility. It can be used to reference a patient record and it helps to identify multiple reports on the same patient.

Instructions for Coding
- Record the medical record number.
- When a patient enters a military hospital as a family member of a military sponsor, do not code the patient's relationship to the military sponsor in this field.

Examples:

Code	Reason
_ _ _ _ _000000	If the medical record number is fewer than 11 characters, right justify the characters and allow leading blanks.
_ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _RT (Radiology) _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _SU (Surgery clinic)	Record standard abbreviations for departments that do not use HIM medical record numbers.
_ _ _ _ _ _ _ _UNK	The medical record is unknown.

Social Security Number

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2320	9		Required

Description
Records the patient's Social Security number.

Rationale
This data item can be used to identify patients with similar names.

Instructions for Coding
- Code the patient's Social Security number.
- A patient's Medicare claim number may not always be identical to the person's Social Security number.
- Code Social Security numbers that end with a "B" or "D" as 999999999. The patient receives benefits under the spouse's number and this is the spouse's Social Security number.

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	Record the patient's Social Security number (SSN) without dashes.
999999999	When the patient does not have a Social Security number, or the information is not available.

Sex

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Gender	220	1		Required

Description
Identifies the sex of the patient.

Rationale
This data item is used to compare cancer rates and outcomes by site. The same sex code should appear in each medical record for a patient with multiple tumors.

Instructions for Coding
- Record the patient's sex as indicated in the medical record.

Code	Label
1	Male
2	Female
3	Other (hermaphrodite)
4	Transsexual
9	Not stated in patient record

Date of Birth

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Birthdate	240	8	01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the date of birth of the patient.

Rationale
This data item is useful for patient identification. It is also useful when analyzing tumors according to age cohort.

Instructions for Coding

- Record the patient's date of birth as indicated in the patient record. For single-digit day or month, record with a lead 0 (for example, September is 09). Use the full four-digit year for year.
- For *in utero* diagnosis and treatment, record the actual date of birth. It will follow one or both dates for those events.
- If only the patient age is available, calculate the year of birth from age and the year of diagnosis and leave day and month of birth unknown (for example, a 60 year old patient diagnosed in 2010 is calculated to have been born in 1950).
- If month is unknown, the day is coded unknown. If the year cannot be determined, the day and month are both coded unknown.
- If the date of birth cannot be determined at all, record the reason in *Date of Birth Flag*.
- Beginning in 2010, the way dates are transmitted has changed. In order that the registry data can be interoperable with other data sources, dates are transmitted in a format widely accepted outside of the registry setting. However, this does not necessarily mean that the way dates are entered in any particular registry software product has changed. Software providers can provide the best information about date entry in their own systems. The traditional format for *Date of Birth* is MMDDCCYY, with 99 identifying unknown month or day, and 99999999 representing an entirely unknown date. The interoperable form of *Date of Birth* transmits in CCYYMMDD form, where blank spaces are used for unknown trailing portions of the date. The *Date of Birth Flag* is used to explain why *Date of Birth* is not a known date. See *Date of Birth Flag* for an illustration of the relationships among these items.

Date of Birth Flag

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	241	2	New 01/10	Required

Description
This flag explains why there is no appropriate value in the corresponding date field, *Date of Birth*.

Rationale
As part of an initiative to standardize date fields, date flag fields were introduced to accommodate non-date information that had previously been transmitted in date fields.

Instructions for Coding
- Leave this item blank if *Date of Birth* has a full or partial date recorded.
- Code 12 if the *Date of Birth* cannot be determined at all.
- Registrars should enter this data item directly (when appropriate) even if the traditional form of date entry is used in the software.

Code	Definition
12	A proper value is applicable but not known (for example, birth date is unknown
(Blank)	A valid date is provided in item *Date of Birth*

The following table illustrates the use of the date flag and the traditional and interoperable date formats for coding *Date of Birth* and *Date of Birth Flag*. ***In the table below, the lowercase letter "b" is used to represent each blank space***.

Description	Traditional Date	Interoperable Date	Date Flag
	Date entered in MMDDCCYY sequence; unknown portions represented by 99 or 9999	**Date entered in CCYYMMDD sequence, leaving unknown portions blank (spaces);omit the date if the date is completely unknown**	
Full date known	MMDDYYCC (example: 02181942)	CCYYMMDD (example: 19420218)	bb
Month and year known	MM99CCYY (example: 02991942)	CCYYMMbb (example: 194202bb)	bb
Year only known	9999CCYY (example: 99991942)	CCYYbbbb (example: 1942bbbb)	bb
Unknown date	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	12

Age at Diagnosis

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	230	3		Required

Description
Records the age of the patient at his or her birthday before diagnosis.

Rationale
This data item is useful for patient identification. It may also be useful when analyzing tumors according to specific patient age.

Instructions for Coding
- If the patient has multiple primaries, then the age at diagnosis may be different for subsequent primaries.

Code	Definition
000	Less than one year old.
001	One year old, but less than two years old.
002	Two years old.
…	Show actual age in years.
120	One hundred twenty years old.
999	Unknown age.

Place of Birth

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Birthplace	250	3	01/04, 09/06	Required

Description
Records the patient's place of birth.

Rationale
This data item is used to evaluate medical care delivery to special populations and to identify populations at special risk for certain cancers. Place of birth is helpful for patient matching and can be used when reviewing race and ethnicity. In addition, adding birthplace data to race and ethnicity allows for a more specific definition of the population being reported. Careful descriptions of ancestry, birthplace, and immigration history of populations studied are needed to make the basis for classification into ethnic groups clear. Birthplace has been associated with variation in genetic, socioeconomic, cultural, and nutritional characteristics that affect patterns of disease. A better understanding of the differences within racial and ethnic categories also can help states develop effective, culturally sensitive public health prevention programs to decrease the prevalence of high-risk behaviors and increase the use of preventive services.

Instructions for Coding
- Use the most specific code.
- Use the SEER Geocodes for "Place of Birth". These codes include states of the United States as well as foreign countries.
- For SEER geocodes, see *The SEER Program Coding and Staging Manual*, (http://seer.cancer.gov/) or *Standards for Cancer Registries Volume II: Data Standards and Data Dictionary Version 11.1*, Eleventh Edition, (http://www.naaccr.org).

Code	Definition
000-750	SEER Geocode
998	Place of birth outside of the United States, no other detail known
999	Place of birth unknown

Blank Page

Patient Address

Patient Address and Residency Rules

The patient's address at diagnosis is the patient's place of residence at the time of original diagnosis. It does not change if the patient moves. If the patient has more than one primary tumor, the address at diagnosis may be different for each primary.

The current address initially is the patient's residence at the time the patient was first seen at the accessioning facility for this primary. The current address is updated if the patient moves. If the patient has more than one primary tumor, the current address should be the same for each primary.

Normally a residence is the home named by the patient. Legal status and citizenship are not factors in residency decisions. Rules of residency are identical to or comparable with the rules of the Census Bureau whenever possible. The registry can resolve residency questions by using the Census Bureau's definition, "the place where he or she lives and sleeps most of the time or the place the person considers to be his or her usual home". Vital statistic rules may differ from Census rules. Do not record residence from the death certificate. Review each case carefully.

Rules for Persons with Ambiguous Residences

Persons with More Than One Residence (summer and winter homes): Use the address the patient specifies if a usual residence is not apparent.

Persons with No Usual Residence (transients, homeless): Use the address of the place the patient was staying when the cancer was diagnosed. This could be a shelter or the diagnosing facility.

Persons Away at School: College students are residents of the school area. Boarding school students below the college level are residents of their parents' homes.

Persons in Institutions: The Census Bureau states, "Persons under formally authorized, supervised care or custody", are residents of the institution. This includes the following:

- Incarcerated persons
- Persons in nursing, convalescent, and rest homes
- Persons in homes, schools, hospitals, or wards for the physically disabled, mentally retarded, or mentally ill.
- Long-term residents of other hospitals, such as Veterans Affairs (VA) hospitals.

Persons in the Armed Forces and on Maritime Ships: Members of the armed forces are residents of the installation area. Use the stated address for military personnel and their families. Military personnel may use the installation address or the surrounding community's address. The Census Bureau has detailed residency rules for Navy personnel, Coast Guard, and maritime ships. Refer to Census Bureau publications for the detailed rules.

Street Address at DX

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Patient Address at Diagnosis Addr at DX – No & Street	2330	60	01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the patient's address (number and street) at the time of diagnosis.

Rationale
The address is part of the patient's demographic data and has multiple uses. It indicates referral patterns and allows for the analysis of cancer clusters or environmental studies. Physical address allows a central registry to assign latitude and longitude to patient addresses and gives the ability to map each location. Accurate geographic information allows a central registry to monitor cancer trends to watch for possible patterns that could be the first hint of an environmental or other geographic focus of increased cancer risk.

Instructions for Coding
- Record the physical address (number and street address or the rural mailing address) of the patient's usual residence when the tumor was diagnosed.
- The address should be fully spelled out with standardized use of abbreviations and punctuation per U.S. Postal Service postal addressing standards. The USPS Postal Addressing Standards, Pub 28, November 2000 can be found on the Internet at *http://pe.usps.gov/cpim/ftp/pubs/pub28/pub28.pdf*.
- Abbreviations should be limited to those recognized by the Postal Service standard abbreviations. They include, but are not limited to:

  - AVE (avenue)
  - BLVD (boulevard)
  - CIR (circle)
  - CT (court)
  - DR (drive)
  - PLZ (plaza)
  - PARK (park)
  - PKWY (parkway)
  - RD (road)
  - SQ (square)
  - ST (street)
  - APT (apartment)
  - BLDG (building)
  - FL (floor)
  - STE (suite)
  - UNIT (unit)
  - RM (room)
  - DEPT (department)
  - N (north)
  - NE (northeast)
  - NW (northwest)
  - S (south)
  - SE (southeast)
  - SW (southwest)
  - E (east)
  - W (west)

  A complete list of recognized street abbreviations is provided in *Appendix C of USPS Pub 28*.
- Punctuation is normally limited to periods (i.e., 39.2 RD), slashes for fractional addresses (i.e., 101 ½ MAIN ST), and hyphens when a hyphen carries meaning (i.e., 289-01 MONTGOMERY AVE). Use of the pound sign (#) to designate address units should be avoided whenever possible. The preferred notation is as follows: 102 MAIN ST APT 101. If a pound sign is used, there must be a space between the pound sign and the secondary number (i.e., 425 FLOWER BLVD # 72).
- If the patient has multiple tumors, the address may be different for subsequent primaries.
- Do not update this data item if the patient's address changes.
- See "Residency Rules" on page 54 for further instructions.

Code	Definition
103 FIRST AVE SW APT 102	The use of capital letters is preferred by the USPS; use recognized USPS standardized abbreviations; do not use punctuation unless absolutely necessary to clarify an address; leave blanks between numbers and words.
UNKNOWN	If the patient's address is unknown, enter UNKNOWN.

Supplemental Address at DX

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Addr at DX – Supplemental	2335	60	09/06, 01/10	Required

Description
Provides the ability to store additional address information such as the name of a place or facility (i.e., a nursing home or name of an apartment complex) at the time of diagnosis.

Rationale
A registry may receive the name of a facility instead of a proper street address containing the street number, name, direction, and other elements necessary to locate an address on a street file for the purpose of geocoding.

Instructions for Coding
- Record the place or facility (i.e., a nursing home or name of an apartment complex) of the patient's usual residence when the tumor was diagnosed.
- If the patient has multiple tumors, the address may be different for subsequent primaries.
- Do not use this data item to record the number and street address of the patient.
- Do not update this data item if the patient's address changes.
- See "Residency Rules" on page 54 for further instructions.

Code	Definition
VALLEYVIEW NURSING HOME	The use of capital letters is preferred by the USPS; use recognized USPS standardized abbreviations; do not use punctuation unless absolutely necessary to clarify an address; leave blanks between numbers and words.
(leave blank)	If this address space is not needed, then leave blank.

City at DX

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Addr at DX – City or Town	70	50	01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the name of the city or town in which the patient resides at the time the tumor is diagnosed and treated.

Rationale
The city or town is part of the patient's demographic data and has multiple uses. It indicates referral patterns and allows for the analysis of cancer clusters or environmental studies.

Instructions for Coding
- If the patient resides in a rural area, record the name of the city or town used in his or her mailing address.
- If the patient has multiple malignancies, the city or town may be different for subsequent primaries.
- Do not update this data item if the patient's city or town of residence changes.
- See "Residency Rules" on page 54 for further instructions.

Code	Definition
CITY NAME	Do not use punctuation, special characters, or numbers. The use of capital letters is preferred by the USPS; it also guarantees consistent results in queries and reporting. Abbreviate where necessary.
UNKNOWN	If the patient's city or town is unknown.

State at DX

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Addr at DX – State	80	2	01/04, 09/06, 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the patient's state of residence at the time of diagnosis.

Rationale
The state of residence is part of the patient's demographic data and has multiple uses. It indicates referral patterns and allows for the analysis of cancer clusters or environmental studies.

Instructions for Coding
- Use U.S. Postal Service abbreviation for the state, territory, commonwealth, U.S. possession, or Canadian province or territory in which the patient resides at the time the tumor is diagnosed and treated.
- If the patient has multiple tumors, the state of residence may be different for subsequent primaries.
- If the patient is a foreign resident, then code either XX or YY depending on the circumstance.
- Do not update this data item if the patient's state of residence changes.

Code	Definition
MT	If the state in which the patient resides at the time of diagnosis and treatment is Montana, then use the USPS code for the state of Montana.
XX	Resident of a country other than the U.S. (including its territories, commonwealths, or possessions) or Canada and the country is *known*.
YY	Resident of a country other than the U.S. (including its territories, commonwealths, or possessions) or Canada and the country is *unknown*.
US	Resident of the U.S. (including its territories, commonwealths, or possessions) and the state is *unknown*.
CD	Resident of Canada and the province is *unknown*.
ZZ	Residence unknown.

Common abbreviations (refer to the Zip Code directory for further listings)

State		State		State	
Alabama	AL	Massachusetts	MA	Tennessee	TN
Alaska	AK	Michigan	MI	Texas	TX
Arizona	AZ	Minnesota	MN	Utah	UT
Arkansas	AR	Mississippi	MS	Vermont	VT
California	CA	Missouri	MO	Virginia	VA
Colorado	CO	Montana	MT	Washington	WA
Connecticut	CT	Nebraska	NE	West Virginia	VW
Delaware	DE	Nevada	NV	Wisconsin	WI
District of Columbia	DC	New Hampshire	NH	Wyoming	WY
Florida	FL	New Jersey	NJ	United States, state unk	US
Georgia	GA	New Mexico	NM	American Samoa	AS
Hawaii	HI	New York	NY	Guam	GU
Idaho	ID	North Carolina	NC	Puerto Rico	PR
Illinois	IL	North Dakota	ND	Virgin Islands	VI
Indiana	IN	Ohio	OH	Palau	PW
Iowa	IA	Oklahoma	OK	Micronesia	FM
Kansas	KS	Oregon	OR	Marshall Islands	MH
Kentucky	KY	Pennsylvania	PA	Outlying Islands	UM
Louisiana	LA	Rhode Island	RI	APO/FPO Armed Services America	AA
Maine	ME	South Carolina	SC	APO/FPO Armed Services Europe	AE
Maryland	MD	South Dakota	SD	APO/FPO Armed Services Pacific	AP

The following are abbreviations for Canadian provinces and territories:

Province/Territory		Province/Territory	
Alberta	AB	Nunavut	NU
British Columbia	BC	Ontario	ON
Manitoba	MB	Prince Edward Island	PE
New Brunswick	NB	Quebec	QC
Newfoundland and Labrador	NL	Saskatchewan	SK
Northwest Territories	NT	Yukon	YT
Nova Scotia	NS	Canada, province unknown	CD

Zip Code at DX

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Addr at DX – Postal (Zip) Code	100	9	01/04	Required

Description
Identifies the postal code of the patient's address at diagnosis.

Rationale
The postal code is part of the patient's demographic data and has multiple uses. It will provide a referral pattern report and allow analysis of cancer clusters or environmental studies.

Instructions for Coding
- For U.S. residents, record the patient's nine-digit extended postal code at the time of diagnosis and treatment.
- For Canadian residents, record the six-character postal code.
- When available, record the postal code for other countries.
- If the patient has multiple malignancies, the postal code may be different for subsequent primaries.
- Do not update this data item if the patient's postal code changes.
- See "Residency Rules" on page 54 for further instructions.

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	The patient's nine-digit U.S. extended postal code. Do not record hyphens.
59666_ _ _ _	When the nine-digit extended U.S. Zip Code is not available, record the five-digit postal code, left justified, followed by four blanks.
M6G2S8_ _ _	The patient's six-character Canadian postal code left justified, followed by three blanks.
88888_ _ _ _ or 888888888	Permanent address in a country other than Canada, United States, or U.S. possessions **and** postal code is unknown.
99999_ _ _ _ or 999999999	Permanent address in Canada, United States, or U.S. possession **and** postal code is unknown.

Montana Zip Codes:

City	County	Zip	City	County	Zip
Absarokee	Stillwater	59001	Acton	Yellowstone	59002
Alberton	Mineral	59820	Alder	Madison	59710
Alzada	Carter	59311	Anaconda	Deer Lodge	59711
Angela	Rosebud	59312	Antelope	Sheridan	59211
Arlee	Lake	59821	Ashland	Rosebud	59003
Augusta	Lewis & Clark	59410	Avon	Powell	59713
Babb	Glacier	59411	Bainville	Roosevelt	59212
Baker	Fallon	59313	Ballantine	Yellowstone	59006
Basin	Jefferson	59631	Bearcreek	Carbon	59007
Belfry	Carbon	59008	Belgrade	Gallatin	59714
Belt	Cascade	59412	Biddle	Powder River	59314
Big Arm	Lake	59910	Bigfork	Flathead	59911
Bighorn	Treasure	59010	Big Sandy	Chouteau	59520
Big Sky	Gallatin	59716	Big Timber	Sweet Grass	59011
Billings	Yellowstone	59101	Billings	Yellowstone	59102
Billings	Yellowstone	59103	Billings	Yellowstone	59104
Billings	Yellowstone	59105	Billings	Yellowstone	59106
Billings	Yellowstone	59107	Billings	Yellowstone	59108
Birney	Rosebud	59012	Black Eagle	Cascade	59414
Bloomfield	Dawson	59315	Bonner	Missoula	59823
Boulder	Jefferson	59632	Box Elder	Hill	59521
Boyd	Carbon	59013	Boyes	Carter	59316
Bozeman	Gallatin	59715	MSU Bozeman	Gallatin	59717
Bozeman	Gallatin	59718	Bozeman	Gallatin	59719
Bozeman	Gallatin	59771	Bozeman	Gallatin	59772
Bozeman	Gallatin	59773	Brady	Pondera	59416
Bridger	Carbon	59014	Broadus	Powder River	59317
Broadview	Yellowstone	59015	Brockton	Roosevelt	59213
Brockway	McCone	59214	Browning	Glacier	59417
Brusett	Garfield	59318	Buffalo	Fergus	59418
Busby	Big Horn	59016	Butte	Silver Bow	59701
Butte	Silver Bow	59702	Butte	Silver Bow	59703
Butte	Silver Bow	59750	Bynum	Teton	59419
Cameron	Madison	59720	Canyon Creek	Lewis & Clark	59633
Capitol	Carter	59319	Cardwell	Jefferson	59721
Carter	Chouteau	59420	Cascade	Cascade	59421
Cat Creek	Petroleum	59087	Charlo	Lake	59824
Chester	Liberty	59522	Chinook	Blaine	59523
Choteau	Teton	59422	Circle	McCone	59215
Clancy	Jefferson	59634	Clinton	Missoula	59825
Clyde Park	Park	59018	Coffee Creek	Fergus	59424
Cohagen	Garfield	59322	Colstrip	Rosebud	59323
Columbia Falls	Flathead	59912	Columbus	Stillwater	59019
Condon	Missoula	59826	Conner	Ravalli	59827
Conrad	Pondera	59425	Cooke City	Park	59020
Coram	Flathead	59913	Corvallis	Ravalli	59828
Corwin Springs	Park	59030	Craig	Lewis & Clark	59648
Crane	Richland	59217	Creston	Flathead	59902
Crow Agency	Big Horn	59022	Culbertson	Roosevelt	59218
Custer	Yellowstone	59024	Cut Bank	Glacier	59427
Dagmar	Sheridan	59219	Darby	Ravalli	59829
Dayton	Lake	59914	De Borgia	Mineral	59830
Decker	Big Horn	59025	Deer Lodge	Powell	59722

City	County	Zip	City	County	Zip
Dell	Beaverhead	59724	Denton	Fergus	59430
Dillon	Beaverhead	59725	Divide	Silver Bow	59727
Dixon	Sanders	59831	Dodson	Phillips	59524
Drummond	Granite	59832	Dupuyer	Pondera	59432
Dutton	Teton	59433	East Glacier	Glacier	59434
East Helena	Lewis & Clark	59635	Edgar	Carbon	59026
Ekalaka	Carter	59324	Elliston	Powell	59728
Elmo	Lake	59915	Emigrant	Park	59027
Ennis	Madison	59729	Essex	Flathead	59916
Ethridge	Toole	59435	Eureka	Lincoln	59917
Evergreen	Flathead	59901	Fairfield	Teton	59436
Fairview	Richland	59221	Fallon	Prairie	59326
Fishtail	Stillwater	59028	Flaxville	Daniels	59222
Florence	Ravalli	59833	Floweree	Chouteau	59440
Forestgrove	Fergus	59441	Forsyth	Rosebud	59327
Fort Benton	Chouteau	59442	Fort Harrison	Lewis & Clark	59636
Fort Peck	Valley	59223	Fort Shaw	Cascade	59443
Fort Smith	Big Horn	59035	Fortine	Lincoln	59918
Four Buttes	Daniels	59263	Frazer	Valley	59225
Frenchtown	Missoula	59834	Froid	Roosevelt	59226
Fromberg	Carbon	59029	Galata	Toole	59444
Gallatin Gateway	Gallatin	59730	Gardiner	Park	59030
Garneill	Fergus	59445	Garrison	Powell	59731
Garryowen	Big Horn	59031	Geraldine	Chouteau	59446
Geyser	Judith Basin	59447	Gildford	Hill	59525
Glasgow	Valley	59230	Glen	Beaverhead	59732
Glendive	Dawson	59330	Glentana	Valley	59240
Gold Creek	Powell	59733	Grantsdale	Ravalli	59835
Grass Range	Fergus	59032	Great Falls	Cascade	59401
Great Falls	Cascade	59402	Great Falls	Cascade	59403
Great Falls	Cascade	59404	Great Falls	Cascade	59405
Great Falls	Cascade	59406	Greenough	Missoula	59836
Greycliff	Sweet Grass	59033	Hall	Granite	59837
Hamilton	Ravalli	59840	Hammond	Carter	59332
Hardin	Big Horn	59034	Harlem	Blaine	59526
Harlowton	Wheatland	59036	Harrison	Madison	59735
Hathaway	Rosebud	59333	Haugan	Mineral	59842
Havre	Hill	59501	Hays	Blaine	59527
Heart Butte	Pondera	59448	Helena	Lewis & Clark	59601
Helena	Lewis & Clark	59602	Helena	Lewis & Clark	59604
Helena	Lewis & Clark	59620	Helena	Lewis & Clark	59624
Helena	Lewis & Clark	59626	Helmville	Powell	59843
Heron	Sanders	59844	Highwood	Chouteau	59450
Hilger	Fergus	59451	Hingham	Hill	59528
Hinsdale	Valley	59241	Hobson	Judith Basin	59452
Hogeland	Blaine	59529	Homestead	Roosevelt	59242
Hot Springs	Sanders	59845	Hungry Horse	Flathead	59919
Huntley	Yellowstone	59037	Huson	Missoula	59846
Hysham	Treasure	59038	Ingomar	Rosebud	59039
Inverness	Hill	59530	Ismay	Custer	59336
Jackson	Beaverhead	59736	Jefferson City	Jefferson	59638
Joliet	Carbon	59041	Joplin	Liberty	59531
Jordan	Garfield	59337	Judith Gap	Wheatland	59453
Kalispell	Flathead	59901	Kalispell	Flathead	59902
Kalispell	Flathead	59903	Kalispell	Flathead	59904

City	County	Zip	City	County	Zip
Kevin	Toole	59454	Kila	Flathead	59920
Kinsey	Custer	59338	Kremlin	Hill	59532
Lake McDonald	Flathead	59921	Lakeside	Flathead	59922
Lambert	Richland	59243	Lame Deer	Rosebud	59043
Larslan	Valley	59244	Laurel	Yellowstone	59044
Lavina	Golden Valley	59046	Ledger	Pondera	59456
Lewistown	Fergus	59457	Libby	Lincoln	59923
Lima	Beaverhead	59739	Lincoln	Lewis & Clark	59639
Lindsay	Dawson	59339	Livingston	Park	59047
Lloyd	Blaine	59535	Lodge Grass	Big Horn	59050
Lolo	Missoula	59847	Loma	Chouteau	59460
Lonepine	Sanders	59848	Loring	Phillips	59537
Lothair	Liberty	59461	Lothair	Toole	59474
Lustre	Valley	59225	Luther	Carbon	59068
Malmstrom AFB	Cascade	59402	Malta	Phillips	59538
Manhattan	Gallatin	59741	Marion	Flathead	59925
Martin City	Flathead	59926	Martinsdale	Meagher	59053
Marysville	Lewis & Clark	59640	McAllister	Madison	59740
McCabe	Roosevelt	59245	McLeod	Sweet Grass	59052
Medicine Lake	Sheridan	59247	Melrose	Silver Bow	59743
Melstone	Musselshell	59054	Melville	Sweet Grass	59055
Mildred	Prairie	59341	Miles City	Custer	59301
Mill Iron	Carter	59324	Milltown	Missoula	59851
Missoula	Missoula	59801	Missoula	Missoula	59802
Missoula	Missoula	59803	Missoula	Missoula	59804
Missoula	Missoula	59806	Missoula	Missoula	59807
Missoula	Missoula	59808	Moccasin	Judith Basin	59462
Moiese	Lake	59824	Molt	Stillwater	59057
Monarch	Cascade	59463	Montana City	Jefferson	59634
Moore	Fergus	59464	Mosby	Garfield	59058
Musselshell	Musselshell	59059	Nashua	Valley	59248
Neihart	Cascade	59465	Niarada	Sanders	59845
Norris	Madison	59745	Noxon	Sanders	59853
Nye	Stillwater	59061	Oilmont	Toole	59466
Olive	Powder River	59343	Olney	Flathead	59927
Opheim	Valley	59250	Otter	Powder River	59062
Outlook	Sheridan	59252	Ovando	Powell	59854
Pablo	Lake	59855	Paradise	Sanders	59856
Park City	Stillwater	59063	Peerless	Daniels	59253
Pendroy	Teton	59467	Phillipsburg	Granite	59858
Pinesdale	Ravalli	59841	Plains	Sanders	59859
Plentywood	Sheridan	59254	Plevna	Fallon	59344
Polaris	Beaverhead	59746	Polebridge	Flathead	59928
Polson	Lake	59860	Pompeys Pillar	Yellowstone	59064
Pony	Madison	59747	Poplar	Roosevelt	59255
Powderville	Powder River	59345	Power	Teton	59468
Pray	Park	59065	Proctor	Lake	59914
Proctor	Lake	59929	Pryor	Big Horn	59066
Radersburg	Broadwater	59641	Ramsay	Silver Bow	59748
Rapelje	Stillwater	59067	Ravalli	Lake	59863
Raymond	Sheridan	59256	Raynesford	Judith Basin	59469
Red Lodge	Carbon	59068	Redstone	Sheridan	59257
Reedpoint	Stillwater	59069	Reserve	Sheridan	59258
Rexford	Lincoln	59930	Richey	Dawson	59259
Richland	Valley	59260	Ringling	Meagher	59642

City	County	Zip	City	County	Zip
Roberts	Carbon	59070	Rollins	Lake	59931
Ronan	Lake	59864	Roscoe	Carbon	59071
Rosebud	Rosebud	59347	Roundup	Musselshell	59072
Roy	Fergus	59471	Rudyard	Hill	59540
Ryegate	Golden Valley	59074	Saco	Phillips	59261
Saint Ignatius	Lake	59865	Saint Marie	Valley	59231
Saint Mary	Glacier	59417	Saint Regis	Mineral	59866
Saint Xavier	Big Horn	59075	Saltese	Mineral	59867
Sand Coulee	Cascade	59472	Sand Springs	Garfield	59077
Sanders	Treasure	59076	Sanders	Treasure	59038
Santa Rita	Glacier	59473	Savage	Richland	59262
Scobey	Daniels	59263	Seeley Lake	Missoula	59868
Shawmut	Wheatland	59078	Shelby	Toole	59474
Shepherd	Yellowstone	59079	Sheridan	Madison	59749
Shonkin	Chouteau	59450	Sidney	Richland	59270
Silesia	Carbon	59041	Silver Gate	Park	59081
Silver Star	Madison	59751	Simms	Cascade	59477
Somers	Flathead	59932	Sonnette	Powder River	59348
Springdale	Park	59082	Stanford	Judith Basin	59479
Stevensville	Ravalli	59870	Stockett	Cascade	59480
Stryker	Lincoln	59933	Sula	Ravalli	59871
Sumatra	Rosebud	59083	Sun River	Cascade	59483
Sunburst	Toole	59482	Superior	Mineral	59872
Swan Lake	Flathead	59911	Sweetgrass	Toole	59484
Teigen	Petroleum	59084	Terry	Prairie	59349
Thompson Falls	Sanders	59873	Three Forks	Gallatin	59752
Toston	Broadwater	59643	Townsend	Broadwater	59644
Trego	Lincoln	59934	Trout Creek	Sanders	59874
Troy	Lincoln	59935	Turner	Blaine	59542
Twin Bridges	Madison	59754	Twodot	Wheatland	59085
Ulm	Cascade	59485	Valier	Pondera	59486
Vandalia	Valley	59273	Vaughn	Cascade	59487
Victor	Ravalli	59875	Vida	McCone	59274
Virginia City	Madison	59755	Volborg	Custer	59351
Walkerville	Silver Bow	59701	Warmsprings	Deer Lodge	59756
Westby	Sheridan	59275	West Glacier	Flathead	59936
West Yellowstone	Gallatin	59758	Whitefish	Flathead	59937
Whitehall	Jefferson	59759	Wht Sulphur Spr	Meagher	59645
Whitetail	Daniels	59276	Whitlash	Liberty	59545
Wibaux	Wibaux	59353	Willard	Fallon	59354
Willow Creek	Gallatin	59760	Wilsall	Park	59086
Winifred	Fergus	59489	Winnett	Petroleum	59087
Winston	Broadwater	59647	Wisdom	Beaverhead	59761
Wise River	Beaverhead	59762	Wolf Creek	Lewis & Clark	59648
Wolf Point	Roosevelt	59201	Worden	Yellowstone	59088
Wyola	Big Horn	59089	Yellowtail	Big Horn	59035
Zortman	Phillips	59546	Zurich	Blaine	59547

County at Diagnosis

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	90	3	01/04, 09/06, 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the county of the patient's residence at the time the reportable tumor is diagnosed.

Rationale
This data item may be used for epidemiological purposes. For example, to measure the cancer incidence in a particular geographic area.

Instructions for Coding

- For U.S. residents, use codes issued by the Federal Information Processing Standards (FIPS) publication, *Counties and Equivalent Entities of the United States, Its Possessions, and Associated areas*. This publication is available in a reference library or can be accessed on the Internet through the U.S. EPA's Envirofacts Data Warehouse and Applications Web site at *http://www.epa.gov/.*
- If the patient has multiple tumors, the county codes may be different for each tumor.
- If the patient is a non-U.S. resident and is coded XX in State at Diagnosis, then code the patient's country of residence in this space.
- For country codes, see the current version of *Standards for Cancer Registries Volume II: Data Standards and Data Dictionary*, *(http://www.naaccr.org).*
- Do not update this data item if the patient's county of residence changes.

Code	Label	Definition
001-997	County at Diagnosis	Valid FIPS code.
998	Outside state/county code unknown	Known town, city, state, or country of residence, but county code not known **and** a resident outside of the state of the reporting institution (must meet all criteria).
999	County unknown	The county of the patient is unknown. It is not documented in the patient's medical record.

Montana County Codes:

Code	Label	Code	Label	Code	Label
001	Beaverhead	039	Granite	077	Powell
003	Big Horn	041	Hill	079	Prairie
005	Blaine	043	Jefferson	081	Ravalli
007	Broadwater	045	Judith Basin	083	Richland
009	Carbon	047	Lake	085	Roosevelt
011	Carter	049	Lewis & Clark	087	Rosebud
013	Cascade	051	Liberty	089	Sanders
015	Chouteau	053	Lincoln	091	Sheridan
017	Custer	055	McCone	093	Silver Bow
019	Daniels	057	Madison	095	Stillwater
021	Dawson	059	Meagher	097	Sweetgrass
023	Deer Lodge	061	Mineral	099	Teton
025	Fallon	063	Missoula	101	Toole
027	Fergus	065	Musselshell	103	Treasure
029	Flathead	067	Park	105	Valley
031	Gallatin	069	Petroleum	107	Wheatland
033	Garfield	071	Phillips	109	Wibaux
035	Glacier	073	Pondera	111	Yellowstone
037	Golden Valley	075	Powder River		

Blank Page

Current Street Address

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Addr Current – No & Street	2350	60	09/04, 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the patient's current address (number and street).

Rationale
This data item provides a current address used for follow-up purposes. It is different from *Patient Address at Diagnosis*.

Instructions for Coding

- Record the number and street address or the rural mailing address of the patient's current usual residence.
- The address should be fully spelled out with standardized use of abbreviations and punctuation per U.S. Postal Service postal addressing standards. The USPS Postal Addressing Standards, Pub 28, November 2000 can be found on the Internet at *http://pe.usps.gov/cpim/ftp/pubs/pub28/pub28.pdf*.
- Abbreviations should be limited to those recognized by the Postal Service standard abbreviations. They include, but are not limited to:

  - AVE (avenue)
  - BLVD (boulevard)
  - CIR (circle)
  - CT (court)
  - DR (drive)
  - PLZ (plaza)
  - PARK (park)
  - PKWY (parkway)
  - RD (road)
  - SQ (square)
  - ST (street)
  - APT (apartment)
  - BLDG (building)
  - FL (floor)
  - STE (suite)
  - UNIT (unit)
  - RM (room)
  - DEPT (department)
  - N (north)
  - NE (northeast)
  - NW (northwest)
  - S (south)
  - SE (southeast)
  - SW (southwest)
  - E (east)
  - W (west)

  A complete list of recognized street abbreviations is provided in *Appendix C of USPS Pub 28*.
- Punctuation is normally limited to periods (i.e., 39.2 RD), slashes for fractional addresses (i.e., 101 ½ MAIN ST), and hyphens when a hyphen carries meaning (i.e., 289-01 MONTGOMERY AVE). Use of the pound sign (#) to designate address units should be avoided whenever possible. The preferred notation is as follows: 102 MAIN ST APT 101. If a pound sign is used, there must be a space between the pound sign and the secondary number (i.e., 425 FLOWER BLVD # 72).
- If the patient has multiple tumors, the current street address should be the same for all tumors.
- Update this data item if the patient's address changes.
- Do not change this item when the patient dies.
- See "Residency Rules" on page 54 for further instructions.

Code	Definition
103 FIRST AVE SW APT 102	The use of capital letters is preferred by the USPS; use recognized USPS standardized abbreviations; do not use punctuation unless absolutely necessary to clarify an address; leave blanks between numbers and words.
UNKNOWN	The patient's street address is unknown.

Current Supplemental Address

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Addr Current – Supplemental	2355	60	09/04, 09/06, 01/10	Required

Description
Provides the ability to store additional address information such as the name of a place or facility (i.e., a nursing home or name of an apartment complex).

Rationale
A registry may receive the name of a facility instead of a proper street address containing the street number, name, direction, and other elements necessary to locate an address on a street file for the purpose of geocoding.

Instructions for Coding
- Record the place or facility (i.e., a nursing home or name of an apartment complex) of the patient's current usual residence.
- If the patient has multiple tumors, the current address should be the same for all tumors.
- Update this data item if a patient's address changes.
- Do not use this data item to record the number and street address of the patient.
- Do not change this item when the patient dies.
- See "Residence Rules" on page 54 for further instructions.

Code	Definition
VALLEYVIEW NURSING HOME	The use of capital letters is preferred by the USPS; use recognized USPS standardized abbreviations; do not use punctuation unless absolutely necessary to clarify an address; leave blanks between numbers and words.
(leave blank)	If this address space is not needed, then leave blank.

Current City

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Addr Current – City/Town	1810	50	09/04, 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the name of the city or town of the patient's current usual residence.

Rationale
This data item provides a current city/town used for follow-up purposes. It is different from *City/Town at Diagnosis*.

Instructions for Coding
- If the patient resides in a rural area, record the name of the city or town used in his or her mailing address.
- If the patient has multiple tumors, the current city or town should be the same for all tumors.
- Update this data item if the patient's city/town of residence changes.
- Do not change this item when the patient dies.
- See "Residency Rules" on page 54 for further instructions.

Code	Definition
CITY NAME	Do not use punctuation, special characters, or numbers. The use of capital letters is preferred by the USPS; it also guarantees consistent results in queries and reporting. Abbreviate where necessary.
UNKNOWN	The city in which the patient resides in unknown.

Current State

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Addr Current – State	1820	2	09/04, 09/06	Required

Description
Identifies the patient's current state of residence.

Rationale
This item provides a current state of residence used for follow-up purposes. It is different from *State at Diagnosis*.

Instructions for Coding
- U.S. Postal Service abbreviation for the state, territory, commonwealth, U.S. possession, or Canadian province/territory of the patient's current usual residence.
- If the patient has multiple tumors, the current state of residence should be the same for all tumors.
- If the patient is a foreign resident, then code either XX or YY depending on the circumstance.
- Update this data item if the patient's state of residence changes.
- Do not change this item when the patient dies.

Code	Definition
MT	If the state in which the patient resides at the time of diagnosis and treatment is Montana, then use the USPS code for the state of Montana.
XX	Resident of a country other than the U.S. (including its territories, commonwealths, or possessions) or Canada and the country is *known*.
YY	Resident of a country other than the U.S. (including its territories, commonwealths, or possessions) or Canada and the country is *unknown*.
US	Resident of the U.S. (including its territories, commonwealths, or possessions) and the state is *unknown*.
CD	Resident of Canada and the province is *unknown*.
ZZ	Residence unknown.

Common abbreviations (refer to the Zip Code directory for further listings)

State		State		State	
Alabama	AL	Massachusetts	MA	Tennessee	TN
Alaska	AK	Michigan	MI	Texas	TX
Arizona	AZ	Minnesota	MN	Utah	UT
Arkansas	AR	Mississippi	MS	Vermont	VT
California	CA	Missouri	MO	Virginia	VA
Colorado	CO	Montana	MT	Washington	WA
Connecticut	CT	Nebraska	NE	West Virginia	VW
Delaware	DE	Nevada	NV	Wisconsin	WI
District of Columbia	DC	New Hampshire	NH	Wyoming	WY
Florida	FL	New Jersey	NJ	United States, state unk	US
Georgia	GA	New Mexico	NM	American Samoa	AS
Hawaii	HI	New York	NY	Guam	GU
Idaho	ID	North Carolina	NC	Puerto Rico	PR
Illinois	IL	North Dakota	ND	Virgin Islands	VI
Indiana	IN	Ohio	OH	Palau	PW
Iowa	IA	Oklahoma	OK	Micronesia	FM
Kansas	KS	Oregon	OR	Marshall Islands	MH
Kentucky	KY	Pennsylvania	PA	Outlying Islands	UM
Louisiana	LA	Rhode Island	RI	APO/FPO Armed Services America	AA
Maine	ME	South Carolina	SC	APO/FPO Armed Services Europe	AE
Maryland	MD	South Dakota	SD	APO/FPO Armed Services Pacific	AP

The following are abbreviations for Canadian provinces and territories:

Province/Territory		Province/Territory	
Alberta	AB	Nunavut	NU
British Columbia	BC	Ontario	ON
Manitoba	MB	Prince Edward Island	PE
New Brunswick	NB	Quebec	QC
Newfoundland and Labrador	NL	Saskatchewan	SK
Northwest Territories	NT	Yukon	YT
Nova Scotia	NS	Canada, province unknown	CD

Current Zip Code

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Addr Current – Postal (Zip) Code	1830	9	01/04	Required

Description
Identifies the postal code of the patient's current address.

Rationale
This data item provides a current postal code for follow-up purposes and should be updated. It is different from *Postal Code at Diagnosis*.

Instructions for Coding
- For U.S. residents, record the nine-digit extended postal code for the patient's current usual residence.
- For Canadian residents, record the six-character postal code.
- When available, record the postal code for other countries.
- If the patient has multiple tumors, the postal code should be the same for both tumors.
- Update this data item if the patient's postal code changes.

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	The patient's nine-digit U.S. extended postal code. Do not record hyphens.
59666_ _ _ _	When the nine-digit extended U.S. Zip Code is not available, record the five-digit postal code, left justified, followed by four blanks.
M6G2S8_ _ _	The patient's six-character Canadian postal code left justified, followed by three blanks.
88888_ _ _ _ or 888888888	Permanent address in a country other than Canada, United States, or U.S. possessions **and** postal code is unknown.
99999_ _ _ _ or 999999999	Permanent address in Canada, United States, or U.S. possession **and** postal code is unknown.

Montana Zip Codes:

See pages 58-61 for Montana Zip codes and associated Counties.

Telephone and Type

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2360	11		Required

Description
Records the current telephone number with area code for the patient and describes who the phone number belongs to.

Rationale
This data item may be used by the hospital registry to contact the patient for follow-up.

Instructions for Coding
- The telephone number should be the current number with area code of the patient.
- Update this data item if the patient's telephone number changes.

Phone Number:

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	Number is entered without dashes.
00000000000	Patient does not have a telephone.
99999999999	Telephone number is unavailable or unknown.

Type:

Type	Description
0	Parent
1	Patient
2	Son or daughter
3	Relative, NOS
9	Unknown whose phone number

Class of Case

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	610	2	01/04, 06/05, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description

Class of Case divides cases into two groups. Analytic cases (codes 00-22) are those that are required by CoC to be abstracted because of the program's primary responsibility in managing the cancer. Analytic cases are grouped according to the location of diagnosis and treatment. Non-analytic cases (codes 30-49 and 99) may be abstracted by the facility to meet central registry requirements or in response to a request by the facility's cancer program. Non-analytic cases are grouped according to the reason a patient who received care at the facility is non-analytic, or the reason a patient who never received care at the facility may have been abstracted.

Class of Case can be used in conjunction with *Type of Reporting Source*. *Type of Reporting Source* is designed to document the source of documents used to abstract the cancer being reported.

Rationale

Class of Case reflects the facility's role in managing the cancer, whether the cancer is required to be reported by CoC, and whether the case was diagnosed after the program's Reference Date.

Instructions for Coding

- The code structure for this item was revised in 2010.
- Code the *Class of Case* that most precisely describes the patient's relationship to the facility.
- Code 00 applies only when it is known the patient went elsewhere for treatment. If that information is not available, code *Class of Case* 10.
- It is possible that information for coding *Class of Case* will change during the patient's first course of care. If that occurs, change the code accordingly.
- Document *Facility Referred To* and *NPI-Facility Referred To* or the applicable physician NPI for patients coded 00 to establish that the patient went elsewhere for treatment.
- Code 34 or 36 if the diagnosis benign or borderline (*Behavior* 0 or 1) for any site diagnosed before 2004 or for any site other than meninges (C70._), brain (C71._), spinal cord, cranial nerves, and other parts of the central nervous system (C72._), pituitary gland (C75.1), craniopharyngeal duct (C75.2) and pineal gland (C75.3) that were diagnosed in 2004 or later.
- Code 34 or 36 for carcinoma in situ of the cervix (CIS) and intraepithelial neoplasia grade III (8077/2 or 8148/2) of the cervix (CIN III), Prostate (PIN III), vulva (VIN III), vagina (VAIN III), and anus (AIN III).
- A staff physician (codes 10-12, 41) is a physician who is employed by the reporting facility, under contract with it, or a physician who has routine practice privileges there.

Code	Definition	Reportable by MCTR
Analytic Cases		
	Initial diagnosis at reporting facility	
00*	Initial diagnosis at the reporting facility AND all treatment or a decision not to treat was done ELSEWHERE	√
10*	Initial diagnosis at the reporting facility or in a staff physician's office AND PART OR ALL of the first course treatment or a decision not to treat was at the reporting facility, NOS	√
11	Initial diagnosis in a staff physician's office AND PART of first course treatment was done at the reporting facility	√
12	Initial diagnosis in staff physician's office AND ALL first course treatment or a decision not to treat was done at the reporting facility	√
13*	Initial diagnosis at the reporting facility AND PART of first course treatment was done at the reporting facility	√
14*	Initial diagnosis at the reporting facility AND ALL first course treatment or a decision not to treat was done at the reporting facility	√
	Initial diagnosis elsewhere, facility involved in first course treatment	
20*	Initial diagnosis elsewhere AND PART OR ALL of first course treatment was done at the reporting facility, NOS	√
21*	Initial diagnosis elsewhere AND PART of first course treatment was done at the reporting facility	√
22*	Initial diagnosis elsewhere AND ALL first course treatment was done at the reporting facility	√

Non-Analytic Cases		
	Patient appears in person at reporting facility; both initial diagnosis and treatment elsewhere	
30*	Initial diagnosis and all first course treatment elsewhere AND reporting facility participated in DIAGNOSTIC WORKUP (for example, consult only, staging workup after initial diagnosis elsewhere)	√
31*	Initial diagnosis and all first course treatment elsewhere AND reporting facility provided IN-TRANSIT care	
32*	Diagnosis AND all first course treatment provided elsewhere AND patient presents at reporting facility with disease RECURRENCE OR PERSISTENCE	√
33*	Diagnosis AND all first course treatment provided elsewhere AND patient presents at reporting facility with disease HISTORY ONLY	
34	Type of case not required to be accessioned (for example, a benign colon tumor) AND initial diagnosis AND part or all of first course treatment by reporting facility	
35	Case diagnosed before program's Reference Date AND initial diagnosis AND PART OR ALL of first course treatment by reporting facility	√
36	Type of case not required to be accessioned (for example, a benign colon tumor) AND initial diagnosis elsewhere AND all or part of first course treatment by reporting facility	
37	Case diagnosed before program's Reference Date AND initial diagnosis elsewhere AND all or part of first course treatment by facility	√
38*	Initial diagnosis established by AUTOPSY at the reporting facility, cancer not suspected prior to death	√
	Patient does not appear in person at reporting facility	
40	Diagnosis AND all first course treatment given at the same staff physician's office	√
41	Diagnosis and all first course treatment given in two or more different staff physician offices	√
42	Non-staff physician or non-CoC accredited clinic or other facility, not part of reporting facility, accessioned by reporting facility for diagnosis and/or treatment by that entity (for example, hospital abstracts cases from an independent radiation facility)	
43*	PATHOLOGY or other lab specimens ONLY	√
49*	DEATH CERTIFICATE ONLY	
	Unknown relationship to reporting facility	
99*	Non-analytic case of unknown relationship to facility (not for use by CoC accredited cancer programs for analytic cases); UNKNOWN	

Note: This expanded list of coded values is effective with cases diagnosed on or after 1/1/2010.

Examples:

Code	Reason
32	After treatment failure, the patient was admitted to the facility for supportive care
11	Patient was diagnosed by a staff physician, received radiation therapy at another physician, then underwent surgical resection at the reporting facility
42	Patients from an unaffiliated, free-standing clinic across the street that hospital abstracts with its cases because many physicians work both at the clinic and at the hospital

*Indicates *Class of Case* codes appropriate for abstracting cases from non-hospital sources such as physician offices, ambulatory surgery centers, freestanding pathology laboratories, or radiation therapy centers. When applied to these types of facilities, the non-hospital source is the reporting facility. The codes are applied the same way as if the case were reported from a hospital.

By using *Class of Case* codes in this manner for non-hospital sources, the central cancer registry is able to retain information reflecting the facility's role in managing the cancer consistent with the way it is reported from hospitals. Using *Class of Case* in conjunction with *Type of Reporting Source* which identifies the source documents used to abstract the cancer being reported, the central cancer registry has two distinct types of information to use in making consolidation decisions.

Primary Payer at Diagnosis

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	630	2	07/06, 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the patient's primary payer/insurance carrier at the time of initial diagnosis and/or treatment.

Rationale
This item is used in financial analysis and as an indicator for quality and outcome analyses. Joint Commission on Accreditation of Healthcare Organizations (JCAHO) requires the patient admission page to document the type of insurance or payment structure that will cover the patient while being cared for at the hospital.

Instructions for Coding
- If the patient is diagnosed at the reporting facility, record the payer at the time of diagnosis.
- If the patient is diagnosed elsewhere or the payer at the time of diagnosis is not known, record the payer when the patient is initially admitted for treatment.
- Record the type of insurance reported on the patient's admission page.
- Codes 21 and 65-68 are to be used for patients diagnosed on or after January 1, 2006.
- If more than one payer or insurance carrier is listed on the patient's admission page, record the first.
- If the patient's payer or insurance carrier changes, do not change the initially recorded code.

Code	Label	Definition
01	Not insured	Patient has no insurance and is declared a charity write-off.
02	Not insured, self-pay	Patient has no insurance and is declared responsible for charges.
10	Insurance, NOS	Type of insurance unknown or other than the types listed in codes 20, 21, 31, 35, 60-68.
20	Private Insurance: Managed Care, HMO, or PPO	An organized system of prepaid care for a group of enrollees usually within a defined geographic area. Generally formed as one of four types: a group model, an independent physician association (IPA), a network, or a staff model. "Gate-keeper model" is another term for describing this type of insurance.
21	Private Insurance: Fee-for-Service	An insurance plan that does not have negotiated fee structure with the participating hospital. Type of insurance plan not coded as 20.
31	Medicaid	State government administered insurance for persons who are uninsured, below the poverty level, or covered under entitlement programs. Medicaid other than those described in 35.
35	Medicaid -Administered through a Managed Care plan	Patient is enrolled in Medicaid through a Managed Care program (e.g., HMO or PPO). The managed care plan pays for all incurred costs.
60	Medicare without supplement, Medicare, NOS	Federal government funded insurance for persons who are 62 years of age or older, or are chronically disabled (social security insurance eligible). Not described in codes 61, 62, or 63.
61	Medicare with supplement, NOS	Patient has Medicare and another type of unspecified insurance to pay costs not covered by Medicare.
62	Medicare-Administered through a Managed Care plan	Patient is enrolled in Medicare through a Managed Care plan (e.g., HMO or PPO). The Managed Care plan pays for all incurred costs.

Code	Label	Definition
63	Medicare with private supplement	Patient has Medicare and private insurance to pay costs not covered by Medicare.
64	Medicare with Medicaid eligibility	Federal government Medicare insurance with State Medicaid administered supplement.
65	TRICARE	Department of Defense program providing supplementary civilian-sector hospital and medical services beyond a military treatment facility to military dependents, retirees, and their dependents. Formerly CHAMPUS (Civilian Health and Medical Program of the Uniformed Services).
66	Military	Military personnel or their dependents who are treated at a military facility.
67	Veterans Affairs	Veterans who are treated in Veterans Affairs facilities.
68	Indian/Public Health Service	Patient who receives care at an Indian Health Service facility or at another facility, and the medical costs are reimbursed by the Indian Health Service. Patient receives care at Public Health Service facility or at another facility, and medical costs are reimbursed by the Public Health Service.
99	Insurance status unknown	It is unknown from the patient's medical record whether or not the patient is insured.

Examples:

Code	Reason
01	An indigent patient is admitted with no insurance coverage.
20	A patient is admitted for treatment and the patient admission page states the primary insurance carrier is an HMO.
62	A 65-year old male patient is admitted for treatment and the patient admission page states the patient is covered by Medicare with additional insurance coverage from a PPO.

Blank Page

Race 1

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	160	2	01/04, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the primary race of the person.

Rationale
Racial origin captures information used in research and cancer control activities comparing stage at diagnosis and/or treatment by race. The full coding system should be used to allow for an accurate national comparison.

Instructions for Coding

- Additional races reported by the person should be coded in *Race 2, Race 3, Race 4*, and *Race 5*.
- *Race 1* is the field used to compare with race data on cases diagnosed prior to January 1, 2000.
- "Race" is analyzed with *Spanish/Hispanic Origin*. Both items must be recorded.
- All tumors for the same patient should have the same race code.
- If the patient is multiracial, then code all races using *Race 2* through *Race 5* and code all remaining *race* items 88.
- If the person is multiracial and one of the races is white, code the other race(s) first with white in the next race field.
- If the person is multiracial and one of the races is Hawaiian, code Hawaiian as *Race 1*, followed by the other race(s).
- A known race code (other than blank or 99) must not occur more than once. For example, do not code "Black" in *Race 1* for one parent and "Black" in *Race 2* for the other parent.
- If *Race 1* is coded 99, then *Race 2* through *Race 5* must all be coded 99.
- Codes 08-13 became effective with diagnoses on or after January 1, 1988.
- Code 14 became effective with diagnoses on or after January 1, 1994.
- In 2010, code 09 was converted to the new code 15, and codes 16 and 17 were added.
- Codes 20-97 became effective with diagnoses on or after January 1, 1991. SEER participants in San Francisco, San Jose-Monterey, and Los Angeles are permitted to use codes 14 and 20-97 for cases diagnosed after January 1, 1987.
- If a patient diagnosed prior to January 1, 2000, develops a subsequent primary after that date, then *Race 2* through *Race 5* that do not have specific race recorded must be coded 88.

Codes		Codes	
01	White	20	Micronesian, NOS
02	Black	21	Chamorran
03	American Indian, Aleutian, or Eskimo	22	Guamanian, NOS
04	Chinese	25	Polynesian, NOS
05	Japanese	26	Tahitian
06	Filipino	27	Samoan
07	Hawaiian	28	Tongan
08	Korean	30	Melanesian, NOS
10	Vietnamese	31	Fiji Islander
11	Laotian	32	New Guinean
12	Hmong	96	Other Asian, including Asian, NOS and Oriental, NOS
13	Kampuchean (Cambodian)	97	Pacific Islander, NOS
14	Thai	98	Other
15	Asian Indian or Pakistani, NOS (formerly code 9)	99	Unknown
16	Asian Indian		
17	Pakistani		

Examples:

Code	Reason
01	A patient was born in Mexico of Mexican parentage. *Code also Spanish/Hispanic Origin*.
02	A black female patient.
05	A patient has a Japanese father and a Caucasian mother. (Caucasian will be coded to *Race 2*).

Race 2

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	161	2	01/01, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the patient's race.

Rationale
Racial origin captures information used in research and cancer control activities comparing stage at diagnosis and/or treatment by race. The full coding system should be used to allow for an accurate national comparison.

Instructions for Coding
- "Race" is analyzed with *Spanish/Hispanic Origin*. Both items must be recorded.
- If *Race 1* is coded 99, then *Race 2* must be coded 99.
- All tumors for the same patient should have the same race code.
- Codes 08-13 became effective with diagnoses on or after January 1, 1988.
- Code 14 became effective with diagnoses on or after January 1, 1994.
- In 2010, code 09 was converted to the new code 15, and codes 16 and 17 were added.
- Codes 20-97 became effective with diagnoses on or after January 1, 1991. SEER participants in San Francisco, San Jose-Monterey, and Los Angeles are permitted to use codes 14 and 20-97 for cases diagnosed after January 1, 1987.
- See the instructions for *Race 1* for coding sequences for entering multiple races.

Codes		Codes	
01	White	20	Micronesian, NOS
02	Black	21	Chamorran
03	American Indian, Aleutian, or Eskimo	22	Guamanian, NOS
04	Chinese	25	Polynesian, NOS
05	Japanese	26	Tahitian
06	Filipino	27	Samoan
07	Hawaiian	28	Tongan
08	Korean	30	Melanesian, NOS
10	Vietnamese	31	Fiji Islander
11	Laotian	32	New Guinean
12	Hmong	96	Other Asian, including Asian, NOS and Oriental, NOS
13	Kampuchean (Cambodian)	97	Pacific Islander, NOS
14	Thai	98	Other
15	Asian Indian or Pakistani, NOS (formerly code 9)	99	Unknown
16	Asian Indian		
17	Pakistani		

Race 3

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	162	2	01/04, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the patient's race.

Rationale
Racial origin captures information used in research and cancer control activities comparing stage at diagnosis and/or treatment by race. The full coding system should be used to allow for an accurate national comparison.

Instructions for Coding
- "Race" is analyzed with *Spanish/Hispanic Origin*. Both items must be recorded.
- If *Race 2* is coded 88 or 99, then *Race 3* must be coded with the same value.
- All tumors for the same patient should have the same race code.
- Codes 08-13 became effective with diagnoses on or after January 1, 1988.
- Code 14 became effective with diagnoses on or after January 1, 1994.
- In 2010, code 09 was converted to the new code 15, and codes 16 and 17 were added.
- Codes 20-97 became effective with diagnoses on or after January 1, 1991. SEER participants in San Francisco, San Jose-Monterey, and Los Angeles are permitted to use codes 14 and 20-97 for cases diagnosed after January 1, 1987.
- See the instructions for *Race 1* for coding sequences for entering multiple races.

Codes		Codes	
01	White	20	Micronesian, NOS
02	Black	21	Chamorran
03	American Indian, Aleutian, or Eskimo	22	Guamanian, NOS
04	Chinese	25	Polynesian, NOS
05	Japanese	26	Tahitian
06	Filipino	27	Samoan
07	Hawaiian	28	Tongan
08	Korean	30	Melanesian, NOS
10	Vietnamese	31	Fiji Islander
11	Laotian	32	New Guinean
12	Hmong	96	Other Asian, including Asian, NOS and Oriental, NOS
13	Kampuchean (Cambodian)	97	Pacific Islander, NOS
14	Thai	98	Other
15	Asian Indian or Pakistani, NOS (formerly code 9)	99	Unknown
16	Asian Indian		
17	Pakistani		

Race 4

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	163	2	01/04, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the patient's race.

Rationale
Racial origin captures information used in research and cancer control activities comparing stage at diagnosis and/or treatment by race. The full coding system should be used to allow for an accurate national comparison.

Instructions for Coding
- "Race" is analyzed with *Spanish/Hispanic Origin*. Both items must be recorded.
- If *Race 3* is coded 88 or 99, then *Race 4* must be coded with the same value.
- All tumors for the same patient should have the same race code.
- Codes 08-13 became effective with diagnoses on or after January 1, 1988.
- Code 14 became effective with diagnoses on or after January 1, 1994.
- In 2010, code 09 was converted to the new code 15, and codes 16 and 17 were added.
- Codes 20-97 became effective with diagnoses on or after January 1, 1991. SEER participants in San Francisco, San Jose-Monterey, and Los Angeles are permitted to use codes 14 and 20-97 for cases diagnosed after January 1, 1987.
- See the instructions for *Race 1* for coding sequences for entering multiple races.

Codes		Codes	
01	White	20	Micronesian, NOS
02	Black	21	Chamorran
03	American Indian, Aleutian, or Eskimo	22	Guamanian, NOS
04	Chinese	25	Polynesian, NOS
05	Japanese	26	Tahitian
06	Filipino	27	Samoan
07	Hawaiian	28	Tongan
08	Korean	30	Melanesian, NOS
10	Vietnamese	31	Fiji Islander
11	Laotian	32	New Guinean
12	Hmong	96	Other Asian, including Asian, NOS and Oriental, NOS
13	Kampuchean (Cambodian)	97	Pacific Islander, NOS
14	Thai	98	Other
15	Asian Indian or Pakistani, NOS (formerly code 9)	99	Unknown
16	Asian Indian		
17	Pakistani		

Race 5

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	164	2	01/04, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the patient's race.

Rationale
Racial origin captures information used in research and cancer control activities comparing stage at diagnosis and/or treatment by race. The full coding system should be used to allow for an accurate national comparison.

Instructions for Coding
- "Race" is analyzed with *Spanish/Hispanic Origin*. Both items must be recorded.
- If *Race 4* is coded 88 or 99, then *Race 5* must be coded with the same value.
- All tumors for the same patient should have the same race code.
- Codes 08-13 became effective with diagnoses on or after January 1, 1988.
- Code 14 became effective with diagnoses on or after January 1, 1994.
- In 2010, code 09 was converted to the new code 15, and codes 16 and 17 were added.
- Codes 20-97 became effective with diagnoses on or after January 1, 1991. SEER participants in San Francisco, San Jose-Monterey, and Los Angeles are permitted to use codes 14 and 20-97 for cases diagnosed after January 1, 1987.
- See the instructions for *Race 1* for coding sequences for entering multiple races.

Codes		Codes	
01	White	20	Micronesian, NOS
02	Black	21	Chamorran
03	American Indian, Aleutian, or Eskimo	22	Guamanian, NOS
04	Chinese	25	Polynesian, NOS
05	Japanese	26	Tahitian
06	Filipino	27	Samoan
07	Hawaiian	28	Tongan
08	Korean	30	Melanesian, NOS
10	Vietnamese	31	Fiji Islander
11	Laotian	32	New Guinean
12	Hmong	96	Other Asian, including Asian, NOS and Oriental, NOS
13	Kampuchean (Cambodian)	97	Pacific Islander, NOS
14	Thai	98	Other
15	Asian Indian or Pakistani, NOS (formerly code 9)	99	Unknown
16	Asian Indian		
17	Pakistani		

Spanish/Hispanic Origin

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Ethnicity	190	1	09/04	Required

Description
Identifies persons of Spanish or Hispanic origin.

Rationale
This code is used by hospitals and central registries to identify whether or not the person should be classified as "Hispanic" for purposes of calculating cancer rates. Hispanic populations have different patterns of occurrence of cancer from other populations that may be included in the 01 (White category) or *Race 1* through *Race 5*.

Instructions for Coding
- Persons of Spanish or Hispanic origin may be of any race, but these categories are generally not used for Native Americans, Filipinos, or others who may have Spanish names.
- Code 0 (Non-Spanish; non-Hispanic) for Portuguese and Brazilian persons.
- If the patient has multiple tumors, all records should have the same code.

Code	Label
0	Non-Spanish; non-Hispanic
1	Mexican (includes Chicano)
2	Puerto Rican
3	Cuban
4	South or Central American (except Brazil)
5	Other specified Spanish/Hispanic origin (includes European; excludes Dominican Republic)
6	Spanish, NOS; Hispanic, NOS; Latino, NOS (There is evidence other than surname or maiden name that the person is Hispanic, but he/she cannot be assigned to any other category of 1-5)
7	Spanish surname only (The only evidence of the person's Hispanic origin is surname or maiden name, and there is no contrary evidence that the person is not Hispanic)
8	Dominican Republic (for use with patients who were diagnosed with cancer on January 1, 2005, or later)
9	Unknown whether Spanish or not; not stated in patient record

Blank Page

Usual Occupation

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Text – Usual Occupation	310	100	01/10	Required

Description
Text area for information about the patient's usual occupation, also known as usual type of job or work.

Rationale
Used to identify new work-related health hazards; serves as an additional measure of socioeconomic status; identifies occupational groups in which cancer screening or prevention activities may be beneficial. This data item applies only to patients who are age 14 years or older at the time of diagnosis.

Instructions for Coding
- Record the patient's usual occupation (i.e., the kind of work performed during most of the patient's working life before diagnosis of this tumor). Do not record "retired".
- If usual occupation is not available or is unknown, record the patient's current or most recent occupation, or any known occupation.
- Update this field if better information is obtained as to the usual occupation of the patient. However, it is not the responsibility of the registrar to update abstracts with information provided on death certificates.
- If the patient was a housewife/househusband and also worked outside the home most of his/her adult life, record the usual occupation outside of the home. If the patient was a housewife/househusband and did not work outside the home for most of his/her adult life, record "housewife" or "househusband".
- If the patient was not a student or housewife and never worked, record "never worked" as the usual occupation.
- If no information is available, record "unknown".
- Spell out acronyms of occupations; do not just record the acronym. For example, spell out Registered Nurse rather than RN.

Usual Industry

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Text – Usual Industry	320	100	01/10	Required

Description
Text area for information about the patient's usual industry; also known as usual kind of business/industry.

Rationale
Used to identify new work-related health hazards, serves as an additional measure of socioeconomic status; identifies industrial groups or worksite-related groups in which cancer screening or prevention activities may be beneficial. This data item applies only to patients who are age 14 years or older at the time of diagnosis.

Instructions for Coding

- Record the primary type of activity carried on by the business/industry where the patient was employed for the most number of years before diagnosis of this tumor.
- Be sure to distinguish among "manufacturing", "wholesale", "retail", and "service" components of an industry which performs more than one of these components.
- If the primary activity carried on at the location where the patient worked is unknown, it may be sufficient to record the name of the company (with city or town) for which the patient performed his/her usual occupation. In these situations, if resources permit, a central registry may be able to use the employer name and city/town to determine the type of activity conducted at that location
- If current or most recent occupation, rather than usual occupation was recorded, record the patient's current or most recent business/industry.
- Update this field if better information is obtained as to the usual industry of the patient. However, it is not the responsibility of the registrar to update abstracts with industry information provided on death certificates.
- There should be an entry for "usual industry" if any occupation is recorded. If no information is available regarding industry in which the reported occupation was carried out, record "unknown".
- Spell out acronyms of industry/company; do not just record the acronym. For example, spell out Department of Public Health and Human Services rather than DPHHS.
- Describe the company if the name of the company is not in itself descriptive. For example, describe "Sam's" as "Sam's Exxon Gas Station".

Tobacco History

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Smoking History	340	1	01/09	Required

Description
Identifies the patient's past or current use of tobacco.

Rationale
This data item is used to evaluate if previous or present tobacco use may have caused a higher risk of cancer.

Instructions for Coding

Code	Definition
0	Never used
1	Cigarette smoker, current
2	Cigar/pipe smoker, current
3	Snuff/chew/smokeless, current
4	Combination use, current
5	Previous use
9	Unknown

Alcohol History

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	350	1	01/09	Required

Description
Indicates the patient's past or current consumption of alcoholic beverages.

Rationale
This data item is used to evaluate if previous or present alcohol use have caused a higher risk of cancer.

Instructions for Coding

Code	Definition
0	No history of alcohol use
1	Current use of alcohol
2	Past history of alcohol use, does not currently use
9	Alcohol usage unknown

Marital Status at DX

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	150	1		Required

Description
Identifies the patient's marital status at diagnosis.

Rationale
This data item is used to evaluate marital status and identify those at risk for certain cancers.

Instructions for Coding
- Code the patient's marital status at diagnosis for each primary tumor.
- If the patient has more than one primary tumor, the marital status may be different for each.
- Marital status should not be modified or updated if the patient's marital status changes after diagnosis.
- If a patient is under 15 years of age, assume he/she is single and code 1.

Code	Definition
1	Single (never married)
2	Married (including common law)
3	Separated
4	Divorced
5	Widowed
9	Unknown

Spouse/Parent Name

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Name – Spouse/Parent	2290	60	01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the patient's spouse or parent.

Rationale
This data item is used to confirm marital status and to aid in follow-up of the patient.

Instructions for Coding
- Record the patient's spouse's name if the patient is married.
- Record the patient's parent's name if the patient is unmarried or is still a child.

Blank Page

Comorbidities and Complications

The CoC requires that the registry record include up to 10 comorbid conditions, factors influencing the health status of the patient, and treatment complications, to be copied from the patient record. All are considered secondary diagnoses. The information is recorded in the **ICD-9-CM** code form, typically on the patient's discharge abstract or face sheet of the billing record.

Comorbidities are preexisting medical conditions or conditions that were present at the time the patient was diagnosed with this cancer (for example, chronic conditions such as COPD, diabetes, and hypertension). Comorbid conditions are identified by ICD-9-CM codes 001-139.8 and 240-999.9. Comorbid conditions are coded without the decimal point and adding trailing 0s to the code value. Thus 496 (COPD) is coded as 49600.

Complications are conditions that occur during the hospital stay, while the patient is being treated for the cancer (for example, postoperative urinary tract infection or pneumonia). Complications may also occur following the completion of therapy and be a cause for readmission to the hospital. Complications are identified by the ICD-9-CM "E" codes which classify environmental events, circumstances, and conditions as the cause of injury, poisoning, and other adverse effects. Only "E" codes that describe adverse effects occurring during medical care are collected in this data item. They are represented by ICD-9-CM codes E870-E879.9 (misadventures to patients during surgical and medical care) and E930-E949.9 (drugs and medicinal and biologic substances causing adverse effects in therapeutic use). Complications are coded with the leading character "E", without the decimal point, and trailing zeros. Thus, E930.0 is coded as E9300.

Factors influencing the health status of patients are circumstances or problems that are not themselves a current illness of injury and are identified by the ICD-9-CM "V" codes (for example, women receiving post menopausal hormone replacement therapy, or a history of malignant neoplasm). Only specific "V" codes which describe health characteristics are collected in this data item. They are represented by ICD-9-CM codes V07.2-V07.39 (prophylactic measures), V10-V15.9 (personal health history), V22.2-V23.1 (pregnancy), V25.4 (contraception), V44-V45.89 (artificial opening and other post surgical states), V50.41-V50.49 (prophylactic organ removal). Factors influencing the health status of patients are coded with the leading character "V", without the decimal point, and trailing zeros. Thus, V23.1 is coded as V2310.

Comorbidities and Complications 1

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3110	5	01/04, 06/05	Recommended

Description
Records the patient's preexisting medical conditions, factors influencing health status, and/or complications during the patient's hospital stay for the treatment of this cancer using ICD-9-CM codes. Both are considered secondary diagnoses.

Rationale
Preexisting medical conditions, factors influencing health status, and/or complications may affect treatment decisions and influence patient outcomes. Information on comorbidities is used to adjust outcome statistics when evaluating patient survival and other outcomes. Complications may be related to the quality of care.

Instructions for Coding

- Secondary diagnoses must be reported for patients that have inpatient hospitalizations at your facility.
- Secondary diagnoses should be reported for patients receiving outpatient care or treated in oncology clinics at your facility when available.
- Consult the patient record for the discharge abstract. Secondary diagnoses are found on the discharge abstract. Information from the billing department at your facility may be consulted when a discharge abstract is not available.
- Code the secondary diagnoses in the sequence in which they appear on the discharge abstract or are recorded by the billing department at your facility.
- Report the secondary diagnoses for this cancer using the following priority rules:
  - Surgically treated patients:
    - a) following the most definitive surgery of the primary site
    - b) following other non-primary site surgeries
  - Non-surgically treated patients:
    following the first treatment encounter/episode
  - In cases of non-treatment:
    following the last diagnostic/evaluative encounter
- If the data item *Readmission to the Same Hospital Within 30 Days of Surgical Discharge* is coded 1, 2, or 3, then use available *Comorbidities and Complications* data items to record E codes appearing on the "readmission" discharge abstract.
- **Do not** record any neoplasms (ICD-9-CM codes 140-239.9) listed as secondary diagnoses for this data item.
- **Do not** record causes of injury and poisoning unrelated to the patient's medical care (ICD-9-CM codes E800-E869.9, E880-E929.9, or E950-E999).
- **Do not** record the following factors influencing health status and contact with health services (ICD-9-CM codes V01-V07.1, V07.4-V09.91, V16-V21.9, V23.2-V25.3, V25.5-V43.89, V46-V50.4, or V50.8-V83.89).
- If no secondary diagnoses were documented, then code 00000 in this data item, and leave the remaining "Comorbidities and Complications" data items blank.
- If fewer than 10 secondary diagnoses are listed, then code the diagnoses listed, and leave the remaining "Comorbidities and Complications" data items blank.

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	Report the ICD-9-CM codes for up to 10 comorbid conditions or complications. *Note:* For comorbid conditions (ICD-9-CM codes 001-139.8 and 240-999.9) there is an assumed decimal point between the 3rd and 4th characters. *Note:* For complications (ICD-9-CM "E" codes) and factors influencing health status (ICD-9-CM "V" codes) there is an assumed decimal point between the 4th and 5th characters.
00000	No comorbid conditions or complications documented.

Examples:

Code	Reason
49600	COPD (ICD-9-M code 496)
25001	Type 1 diabetes mellitus (ICD-9-CM code 250.01)
40100	Hypertension (ICD-9-CM code 401)
E8732	The patient was inadvertently exposed to an overdose of external beam radiation (ICD-9-CM code E873.2)
E8782	The patient with colon cancer underwent surgical resection and subsequently experienced an anastomotic leak (ICD-9-CM code E878.2)
E9300	During hospitalization, the patient has an adverse reaction to Ampicillin, a semisynthetic form of penicillin (ICD-9-CM code E930.0)
V1030	The patient has a personal history of breast cancer (ICD-9-CM code V10.3)

Comorbidities and Complications 2

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3120	5	01/04, 06/05	Recommended

Description
Records the patient's preexisting medical conditions, factors influencing health status, and/or complications during the patient's hospital stay for the treatment of this cancer using ICD-9-CM codes. Both are considered secondary diagnoses.

Rationale
Preexisting medical conditions, factors influencing health status, and/or complications may affect treatment decisions and influence patient outcomes. Information on comorbidities is used to adjust outcome statistics when evaluating patient survival and other outcomes. Complications may be related to the quality of care.

Instructions for Coding
- Code the diagnoses listed and leave remaining "Comorbidities and Complications" items blank.
- For further coding instructions, see *Comorbidities and Complications #1*.

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	Report the ICD-9-CM codes for up to 10 comorbid conditions or complications. *Note*: For comorbid conditions (ICD-9-CM codes 001-139.8 and 240-999.9) there is an assumed decimal point between the 3rd and 4th characters. *Note:* For complications (ICD-9-CM codes E870-E879.9 and E930-E949.9) there is an assumed decimal point between the 4th and 5th characters. *Note:* For complications (ICD-9-CM "E" codes) and factors influencing health status (ICD-9-CM "V" codes) there is an assumed decimal point between the 4th and 5th characters.
(leave blank)	Remaining unused fields.

Comorbidities and Complications 3

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3130	5	01/04, 06/05	Recommended

Description
Records the patient's preexisting medical conditions, factors influencing health status, and/or complications during the patient's hospital stay for the treatment of this cancer using ICD-9-CM codes. Both are considered secondary diagnoses.

Rationale
Preexisting medical conditions, factors influencing health status, and/or complications may affect treatment decisions and influence patient outcomes. Information on comorbidities is used to adjust outcome statistics when evaluating patient survival and other outcomes. Complications may be related to the quality of care.

Instructions for Coding
- Code the diagnoses listed and leave remaining "Comorbidities and Complications" items blank.
- For further coding instructions, see *Comorbidities and Complications #1*.

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	Report the ICD-9-CM codes for up to 10 comorbid conditions or complications. *Note*: For comorbid conditions (ICD-9-CM codes 001-139.8 and 240-999.9) there is an assumed decimal point between the 3rd and 4th characters. *Note:* For complications (ICD-9-CM codes E870-E879.9 and E930-E949.9) there is an assumed decimal point between the 4th and 5th characters. *Note:* For complications (ICD-9-CM "E" codes) and factors influencing health status (ICD-9-CM "V" codes) there is an assumed decimal point between the 4th and 5th characters.
(leave blank)	Remaining unused fields.

Comorbidities and Complications 4

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3140	5	01/04, 06/05	Recommended

Description
Records the patient's preexisting medical conditions, factors influencing health status, and/or complications during the patient's hospital stay for the treatment of this cancer using ICD-9-CM codes. Both are considered secondary diagnoses.

Rationale
Preexisting medical conditions, factors influencing health status, and/or complications may affect treatment decisions and influence patient outcomes. Information on comorbidities is used to adjust outcome statistics when evaluating patient survival and other outcomes. Complications may be related to the quality of care.

Instructions for Coding
- Code the diagnoses listed and leave remaining "Comorbidities and Complications" items blank.
- For further coding instructions, see *Comorbidities and Complications #1*.

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	Report the ICD-9-CM codes for up to 10 comorbid conditions or complications. *Note*: For comorbid conditions (ICD-9-CM codes 001-139.8 and 240-999.9) there is an assumed decimal point between the 3rd and 4th characters. *Note:* For complications (ICD-9-CM codes E870-E879.9 and E930-E949.9) there is an assumed decimal point between the 4th and 5th characters. *Note:* For complications (ICD-9-CM "E" codes) and factors influencing health status (ICD-9-CM "V" codes) there is an assumed decimal point between the 4th and 5th characters.
(leave blank)	Remaining unused fields.

Comorbidities and Complications 5

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3150	5	01/04, 06/05	Recommended

Description
Records the patient's preexisting medical conditions, factors influencing health status, and/or complications during the patient's hospital stay for the treatment of this cancer using ICD-9-CM codes. Both are considered secondary diagnoses.

Rationale
Preexisting medical conditions, factors influencing health status, and/or complications may affect treatment decisions and influence patient outcomes. Information on comorbidities is used to adjust outcome statistics when evaluating patient survival and other outcomes. Complications may be related to the quality of care.

Instructions for Coding
- Code the diagnoses listed and leave remaining "Comorbidities and Complications" items blank.
- For further coding instructions, see *Comorbidities and Complications #1*.

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	Report the ICD-9-CM codes for up to 10 comorbid conditions or complications. *Note*: For comorbid conditions (ICD-9-CM codes 001-139.8 and 240-999.9) there is an assumed decimal point between the 3rd and 4th characters. *Note:* For complications (ICD-9-CM codes E870-E879.9 and E930-E949.9) there is an assumed decimal point between the 4th and 5th characters. *Note:* For complications (ICD-9-CM "E" codes) and factors influencing health status (ICD-9-CM "V" codes) there is an assumed decimal point between the 4th and 5th characters.
(leave blank)	Remaining unused fields.

Comorbidities and Complications 6

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3160	5	01/04, 06/05	Recommended

Description
Records the patient's preexisting medical conditions, factors influencing health status, and/or complications during the patient's hospital stay for the treatment of this cancer using ICD-9-CM codes. Both are considered secondary diagnoses.

Rationale
Preexisting medical conditions, factors influencing health status, and/or complications may affect treatment decisions and influence patient outcomes. Information on comorbidities is used to adjust outcome statistics when evaluating patient survival and other outcomes. Complications may be related to the quality of care.

Instructions for Coding
- Code the diagnoses listed and leave remaining "Comorbidities and Complications" items blank.
- For further coding instructions, see *Comorbidities and Complications #1*.

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	Report the ICD-9-CM codes for up to 10 comorbid conditions or complications. *Note*: For comorbid conditions (ICD-9-CM codes 001-139.8 and 240-999.9) there is an assumed decimal point between the 3rd and 4th characters. *Note:* For complications (ICD-9-CM codes E870-E879.9 and E930-E949.9) there is an assumed decimal point between the 4th and 5th characters. *Note:* For complications (ICD-9-CM "E" codes) and factors influencing health status (ICD-9-CM "V" codes) there is an assumed decimal point between the 4th and 5th characters.
(leave blank)	Remaining unused fields.

Comorbidities and Complications 7

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3161	5		Recommended

Description
Records the patient's preexisting medical conditions, factors influencing health status, and/or complications during the patient's hospital stay for the treatment of this cancer. Both are considered secondary diagnoses.

Rationale
Preexisting medical conditions, factors influencing health status, and/or complications may affect treatment decisions and influence patient outcomes. Information on comorbidities is used to adjust outcome statistics when evaluating patient survival and other outcomes. Complications may be related to the quality of care.

Instructions for Coding
- Comorbidities and Complications 7 is to be used for patients diagnosed on or after January 1, 2006.
- Code the diagnoses listed and leave remaining "Comorbidities and Complications" items blank.
- For further coding instructions, see *Comorbidities and Complications #1*.

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	Report the ICD-9-CM codes for up to 10 comorbid conditions or complications. *Note*: For comorbid conditions (ICD-9-CM codes 001-139.8 and 240-999.9) there is an assumed decimal point between the 3rd and 4th characters. *Note:* For complications (ICD-9-CM codes E870-E879.9 and E930-E949.9) there is an assumed decimal point between the 4th and 5th characters. *Note:* For complications (ICD-9-CM "E" codes) and factors influencing health status (ICD-9-CM "V" codes) there is an assumed decimal point between the 4th and 5th characters.
(leave blank)	Remaining unused fields.

Comorbidities and Complications 8

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3162	5		Recommended

Description
Records the patient's preexisting medical conditions, factors influencing health status, and/or complications during the patient's hospital stay for the treatment of this cancer. Both are considered secondary diagnoses.

Rationale
Preexisting medical conditions, factors influencing health status, and/or complications may affect treatment decisions and influence patient outcomes. Information on comorbidities is used to adjust outcome statistics when evaluating patient survival and other outcomes. Complications may be related to the quality of care.

Instructions for Coding
- Comorbidities and Complications 8 is to be used for patients diagnosed on or after January 1, 2006.
- Code the diagnoses listed and leave remaining "Comorbidities and Complications" items blank.
- For further coding instructions, see *Comorbidities and Complications #1*.

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	Report the ICD-9-CM codes for up to 10 comorbid conditions or complications. *Note*: For comorbid conditions (ICD-9-CM codes 001-139.8 and 240-999.9) there is an assumed decimal point between the 3rd and 4th characters. *Note:* For complications (ICD-9-CM codes E870-E879.9 and E930-E949.9) there is an assumed decimal point between the 4th and 5th characters. *Note:* For complications (ICD-9-CM "E" codes) and factors influencing health status (ICD-9-CM "V" codes) there is an assumed decimal point between the 4th and 5th characters.
(leave blank)	Remaining unused fields.

Comorbidities and Complications 9

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3163	5		Recommended

Description
Records the patient's preexisting medical conditions, factors influencing health status, and/or complications during the patient's hospital stay for the treatment of this cancer. Both are considered secondary diagnoses.

Rationale
Preexisting medical conditions, factors influencing health status, and/or complications may affect treatment decisions and influence patient outcomes. Information on comorbidities is used to adjust outcome statistics when evaluating patient survival and other outcomes. Complications may be related to the quality of care.

Instructions for Coding
- Comorbidities and Complications 9 is to be used for patients diagnosed on or after January 1, 2006.
- Code the diagnoses listed and leave remaining "Comorbidities and Complications" items blank.
- For further coding instructions, see *Comorbidities and Complications #1*.

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	Report the ICD-9-CM codes for up to 10 comorbid conditions or complications. *Note*: For comorbid conditions (ICD-9-CM codes 001-139.8 and 240-999.9) there is an assumed decimal point between the 3rd and 4th characters. *Note:* For complications (ICD-9-CM codes E870-E879.9 and E930-E949.9) there is an assumed decimal point between the 4th and 5th characters. *Note:* For complications (ICD-9-CM "E" codes) and factors influencing health status (ICD-9-CM "V" codes) there is an assumed decimal point between the 4th and 5th characters.
(leave blank)	Remaining unused fields.

Comorbidities and Complications 10

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3164	5		Recommended

Description
Records the patient's preexisting medical conditions, factors influencing health status, and/or complications during the patient's hospital stay for the treatment of this cancer. Both are considered secondary diagnoses.

Rationale
Preexisting medical conditions, factors influencing health status, and/or complications may affect treatment decisions and influence patient outcomes. Information on comorbidities is used to adjust outcome statistics when evaluating patient survival and other outcomes. Complications may be related to the quality of care.

Instructions for Coding
- Comorbidities and Complications 10 is to be used for patients diagnosed on or after January 1, 2006.
- Code the diagnoses listed and leave remaining "Comorbidities and Complications" items blank.
- For further coding instructions, see *Comorbidities and Complications #1*.

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	Report the ICD-9-CM codes for up to 10 comorbid conditions or complications. *Note*: For comorbid conditions (ICD-9-CM codes 001-139.8 and 240-999.9) there is an assumed decimal point between the 3rd and 4th characters. *Note:* For complications (ICD-9-CM codes E870-E879.9 and E930-E949.9) there is an assumed decimal point between the 4th and 5th characters. *Note:* For complications (ICD-9-CM "E" codes) and factors influencing health status (ICD-9-CM "V" codes) there is an assumed decimal point between the 4th and 5th characters.
(leave blank)	Remaining unused fields.

Blank Page

Facility Referred From

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Institution Referred From	2410	10	01/09	Optional

Description
Identifies the facility that referred the patient to the reporting facility.

Rationale
Each facility's identification number (FIN) is unique. This number is used to document and monitor referral patterns.

Instructions for Coding

- For facilities with seven-digit FINs in the range of 6020009-6953290 that were assigned by the CoC before January 1, 2001, the coded FIN will consist of three leading zeros followed by the full seven-digit number.
- For facilities with eight-digit FINs greater than or equal to 10000000 that were assigned by the CoC after January 1, 2001, the coded FIN will consist of two leading zeroes followed by the full eight-digit number.
- A complete list of FINs is available on the American College of Surgeons Website at http://www.facs.org/cancer/coc/fin.html.

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	Seven or eight-digit FIN.
0000000000	If the patient was not referred to the reporting facility from another facility.
0099999999	If the patient was referred, but the referring facility's ID number is unknown.

Examples:

Code	Reason
0006439999	6439999, General Hospital, Anytown, Montana
0010000099	10000099, Anytown Medical Center, Anytown, Montana

Facility Referred To

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Institution Referred To	2420	10	01/09	Optional

Description
Identifies the facility to which the patient was referred for further care after discharge from the reporting facility.

Rationale
Each facility's identification number (FIN) is unique. This number is used to document and monitor referral patterns.

Instructions for Coding

- For facilities with seven-digit FINs in the range of 6020009-6953290 that were assigned by the CoC before January 1, 2001, the coded FIN will consist of three leading zeros followed by the full seven-digit number.
- For facilities with eight-digit FINs greater than or equal to 10000000 that were assigned by the CoC after January 1, 2001, the coded FIN will consist of two leading zeroes followed by the full eight-digit number.
- A complete list of FINs is available on the American College of Surgeons Website at http://www.facs.org/cancer/coc/fin.html.

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	Eight-digit facility ID number.
0000000000	If the patient was not referred to another facility.
0099999999	If the patient was referred, but the facility's ID number is unknown.

Examples:

Code	Reason
0006439999	6439999, General Hospital, Anytown, Montana
0010000099	10000099, Anytown Medical Center, Anytown, Montana

NPI-Facility Referred From

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
NPI Institution Referred From	2415	10	01/09	Optional

Description
Identifies the facility that referred the patient to the reporting facility.

Rationale
Each facility's NPI is unique. This number is used to document and monitor referral patterns.

NPI–Institution Referred From is the NPI equivalent of *Facility Referred From*. Both are required during a period of transition.

Instructions for Coding
- Record the 10-digit NPI for the referring facility.
- NPI should be recorded as available for cases diagnosed during 2007, and is required to be recorded for all cases diagnosed January 1, 2008, and later.
- NPI may be blank for cases diagnosed on or before December 31, 2006.
- Check with the registry, billing, or health information departments of the facility to determine its NPI or search at https://nppes.cms.hhs.gov/NPPES/NPIRegistryHome.do.

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	10-digit NPI number for the facility.
(leave blank)	NPI for the referring facility is unknown or not available.
(leave blank)	If the patient was not referred to the reporting facility from another facility.

NPI-Facility Referred To

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
NPI Institution Referred To	2425	10	01/09	Optional

Description
Identifies the facility to which the patient was referred for further care after discharge from the reporting facility.

Rationale
Each facility's NPI is unique. This number is used to document and monitor referral patterns.

NPI–Institution Referred To is the NPI equivalent of *Facility Referred To*. Both are required during a period of transition.

Instructions for Coding
- Record the 10-digit NPI for the facility to which the patient was referred.
- NPI should be recorded as available for cases diagnosed during 2007, and is required to be recorded for all cases diagnosed January 1, 2008, and later.
- NPI may be blank for cases diagnosed on or before December 31, 2006.
- Check with the registry, billing, or health information departments of the facility to determine its NPI or search at https://nppes.cms.hhs.gov/NPPES/NPIRegistryHome.do.

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	10-digit NPI number for the facility.
(leave blank)	NPI for the facility referred to is unknown or not available.
(leave blank)	If the patient was not referred to the reporting facility from another facility.

Casefinding Source

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	501	2		Optional

Description
This variable codes the earliest source of identifying information. For cases identified by a source other than reporting facilities (such as through death clearance or as a result of an audit), this variable codes the type of source through which the tumor was first identified. This data item cannot be used by itself as a data quality indicator. The timing of the casefinding processes (e.g., death linkage) varies from registry to registry, and the coded value of this variable is a function of that timing.

Rationale
This data item will help reporting facilities as well as regional and central registries in prioritizing their casefinding activities. It will identify reportable tumors that were first found through death clearance or sources other than traditional reporting facilities. It provides more detail than "Type of Reporting Source".

Instructions for Coding

- Code the source that first identified the tumor. Determine where the case was first identified and enter the appropriate code.
- At the regional or central level, if a hospital and a non-hospital source identified the case independently of each other, enter the code for the non-hospital source (i.e., codes 30-95 have priority over codes 10-29).
- If the case was first identified at a reporting facility (codes 10-29), code the earliest source (based on patient or specimen contact at the facility) of identifying information.
- If a death certificate, independent pathology laboratory report, consultation-only report from a hospital, or other report was used to identify a case that was then abstracted from a different source, enter the code for the source that first identified the case, not the source from which it was subsequently abstracted.
- If a regional or central registry identifies a case and asks a reporting facility to abstract it, enter the code that corresponds to the initial source, not the code that corresponds to the eventual reporting facility.

Codes

Code	Definition
Cases first identified at a reporting facility	
10	Reporting hospital, NOS
20	Pathology department review (surgical pathology reports, autopsies, or cytology reports)
21	Daily discharge review (daily screening of charts of discharged patients in the medical records department)
22	Disease index review (review of disease index in the medical records department)
23	Radiation therapy department/center
24	Laboratory reports (other than pathology reports, code 20)
25	Outpatient chemotherapy
26	Diagnostic imaging/radiology (other than radiation therapy, code 23; includes nuclear medicine)
27	Tumor board
28	Hospital rehabilitation service or clinic
29	Other hospital source (including clinic, NOS or outpatient department, NOS)
Case first identified by source other than a reporting facility covered in the codes above	
30	Physician-initiated case
40	Consultation-only or pathology-only report (not abstracted by reporting hospital
50	Independent (non-hospital) pathology-Laboratory report
60	Nursing home-initiated case
70	Coroner's office records review
75	Managed care organization (MCO) or insurance records
80	Death certificate (case identified through death clearance)
85	Out-of-state case sharing
90	Other non-reporting hospital source
95	Quality control review (case initially identified through quality control activities such as casefinding audit of a regional or central registry)
99	Unknown

Ambiguous Terminology Diagnosis

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	442	1	01/07, 01/10	Optional

Description
Identifies cases for which an ambiguous term is the most definitive word or phrase used to establish a cancer diagnosis. Ambiguous terminology may originate from any source document, such as pathology report, radiology report, or from a clinical report. This data item is used only when ambiguous terminology is used to establish diagnosis. It is not used when ambiguous terminology is used to clarify a primary site, specific histology, histologic group, or stage of disease.

Rationale
Cases with a reportable cancer diagnosis that has been established based only on reports that contain ambiguous terminology to describe final diagnostic findings cannot currently be identified. Multiple surveys have identified a lack of consensus in the interpretation and use of ambiguous terms across physician specialties. These cases may or may not have an actual cancer diagnosis based on clinician, radiologist, and pathologist review. Furthermore, the historical interpretation and use if ambiguous terms by cancer registrars and registries has not been consistent or compatible with physician use of these terms.

This data item will identify specific primary sites where the ambiguous terminology is commonly used to describe or establish a cancer diagnosis. Data collected will be used as the basis for modifications to case inclusion and reportable rules following complete analysis and impact assessment. This data item will allow cases to be identified within an analysis file and be excluded from patient contact studies.

Instructions for Coding
- Apply the instructions in the current version of *Multiple Primary Histology and Coding Rules* to code this item.

Codes

Code	Definition
0	Conclusive term
1	Ambiguous term only
2	Ambiguous term followed by conclusive term
9	Unknown term

Date of Conclusive Diagnosis

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	443	8	01/07, 01/10	Optional

Description
Records the date when a conclusive cancer diagnosis (based on definitive statement of malignancy) is made 60 days or more following an initial diagnosis that was based only on ambiguous terminology.

Rationale
This date item allows for analysis of the time interval between cancer diagnosis based on ambiguous terminology and confirmation of the cancer diagnosis by conclusive means.

Instructions for Coding

- The date must be greater than 60 days from the date of initial diagnosis.
- Record the date a conclusive diagnosis was made based on a definitive statement of malignancy more than 60 days after the date of initial diagnosis. Update the histology code if it is different.
- Apply the instructions in the current version of *Multiple Primary Histology and Coding Rules* to code this item.
- Leave blank for cases diagnosed prior to January 1, 2007.
- Beginning in 2010, the way dates are transmitted has changed. In order that the registry data can be interoperable with other data sources, dates are transmitted in a format widely accepted outside of the registry setting. However, this does not necessarily mean that the way dates are entered in any particular registry software product has changed. Software providers can provide the best information about date entry in their own systems. The traditional format for *Date of Conclusive Diagnosis* is MMDDCCYY, with 99 identifying unknown month or day, and 99999999 representing an entirely unknown date. The interoperable form of *Date of Conclusive Diagnosis* transmits in CCYYMMDD form, where blank spaces are used for unknown trailing portions of the date. The *Date of Conclusive Dx Flag* is used to explain why *Date of Conclusive Diagnosis* is not a known date. See *Date of Conclusive Dx Flag* for an illustration of the relationships among these items.

Date of Conclusive Dx Flag

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	448	2	New 01/10	Optional

Description
This flag explains why there is no appropriate value in the corresponding date field, *Date of Conclusive Diagnosis*.

Rationale
As part of an initiative to standardize date fields, date flag fields were introduced to accommodate non-date information that had previously been transmitted in date fields.

Instructions for Coding
- Leave this item blank if *Date of Conclusive Diagnosis* has a full or partial date recorded.
- Code 10 if it is unknown whether the diagnosis was based on ambiguous terminology.
- Code 11 if the case was diagnosed originally or within 60 days of initial diagnosis using unambiguous terminology.
- Code 15 if the case was diagnosed using ambiguous terminology and no conclusive (unambiguous) diagnosis followed.
- Code 12 if the *Date of Conclusive Diagnosis* cannot be determined, but the case was originally diagnosed using ambiguous terminology and was conclusively diagnosed more than 60 days later.
- Registrars should enter this data item directly (when appropriate) even if the traditional form of date entry is used in the software.
- Leave blank for cases diagnosed prior to January 1, 2007.

Code	Definition
10	No information whatsoever can be inferred (for example, unknown if the diagnosis was initially based on ambiguous terminology).
11	No proper value is applicable in this context (e.g., not applicable, initial diagnosis made by unambiguous terminology [Code 0 in data item *Ambiguous Terminology Diagnosis*]).
12	A proper value is applicable but not known (for example, date of conclusive diagnosis is unknown.
15	Information is not available at this time, but it is expected that it will be available later (e.g., accessioned based on ambiguous terminology only [Code 1 in data item *Ambiguous Terminology Diagnosis*]).
(Blank)	A valid date is provided in item *Date of Conclusive Diagnosis*. Case was diagnosed prior to January 1, 2007.

The following table illustrates the use of the date flag and the traditional and interoperable date formats for coding *Date of Conclusive Diagnosis* and *Date of Conclusive Dx Flag*. ***In the table below, the lowercase letter "b" is used to represent each blank space***.

Description	Traditional Date	Interoperable Date	Date Flag
	Date entered in MMDDCCYY sequence; unknown portions represented by 99 or 9999	**Date entered in CCYYMMDD sequence, leaving unknown portions blank (spaces);omit the date if the date is completely unknown**	
Full date known	MMDDYYCC (example: 02182009)	CCYYMMDD (example: 20090218)	bb
Month and year known	MM99CCYY (example: 02992009)	CCYYMMbb (example: 200902bb)	bb
Year only known	9999CCYY (example: 99992009)	CCYYbbbb (example: 2009bbbb)	bb
Unknown if Ambiguous Terms	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	10
Not Applicable (non-ambiguous)	88888888 (example: 88888888)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	11
Unknown date	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	12
Ambiguous terms only	00000000 (example: 00000000)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	15

Multiple Tumors Reported as One Primary

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	444	2	01/09, 01/10	Optional

Description
Identifies cases with multiple tumors that are abstracted as a single primary using the multiple primary rules in terms of the mix of histologic behaviors represented.

Rationale
Patients with multiple tumors that are reported as a single primary for surveillance purposes may have a worse prognosis or more extensive treatment than patients with a single tumor. This data item makes it possible to identify important information about these cases for data analysis. Data collected for this item are used to assess the number, type, and anatomic location of multiple tumors currently abstracted as a single primary using the rules for determining multiple primary cancers and the impact these cases have on cancer case counts and incidence rates.

Instructions for Coding
- The data item does not apply to metastatic tumors.
- Apply the instructions in the current version of *Multiple Primary Histology and Coding Rules* to code this item.
- Leave blank for cases diagnosed prior to January 1, 2007.

Date of Multiple Tumors

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	445	8	01/07, 01/09, 01/10	Optional

Description
Identifies the date the patient is diagnosed with multiple or subsequent reportable tumor(s) reported as a single primary. Multiple tumors must have the same histologic group as the original tumor and must be located in the same organ or primary site as the original tumor, using the primary site and histology coding rules.

Rationale
This data item allows for the separation of cases with multiple reportable tumors present at the time of initial diagnosis from cases with subsequent reportable tumors. The date allows for tracking the time interval between the date of original diagnosis and the first date of subsequent tumor(s) for specific primary sites and tumor histologies.

Instructions for Coding
- Record the date the patient is diagnosed with synchronous multiple tumors abstracted as a single primary.
- Record the *Date of Initial Diagnosis* as the *Date of Multiple Tumors* when multiple tumors are abstracted and reported as a single primary at the time of initial diagnosis.
- Apply the instructions in the current version of *Multiple Primary Histology and Coding Rules* to code this item.
- Do not assign a date for leukemia, lymphoma, immunoproliferative disease (M9590-9992), Kaposi sarcoma (M9140), and unknown primaries (C80.9).
- Leave blank for cases diagnosed prior to January 1, 2007.
- Beginning in 2010, the way dates are transmitted has changed. In order that the registry data can be interoperable with other data sources, dates are transmitted in a format widely accepted outside of the registry setting. However, this does not necessarily mean that the way dates are entered in any particular registry software product has changed. Software providers can provide the best information about date entry in their own systems. The traditional format for *Date of Multiple Tumors* is MMDDCCYY, with 99 identifying unknown month or day, and 99999999 representing an entirely unknown date. The interoperable form of *Date of Multiple Tumors* transmits in CCYYMMDD form, where blank spaces are used for unknown trailing portions of the date. The *Date of Multiple Tumors Flag* is used to explain why *Date of Multiple Tumors* is not a known date. See *Date of Multiple Tumors Flag* for an illustration of the relationships among these items.

Date of Multiple Tumors Flag

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	439	2	New 01/10	Optional

Description
This flag explains why there is no appropriate value in the corresponding date field, *Date of Multiple Tumors*.

Rationale
As part of an initiative to standardize date fields, date flag fields were introduced to accommodate non-date information that had previously been transmitted in date fields.

Instructions for Coding
- Leave this item blank if *Date of Multiple Tumors* has a full or partial date recorded.
- Code 15 if there is a single tumor for the primary. This code is changed the first time an additional tumor is diagnosed that is properly coded as the same primary.
- Code 11 if multiple tumors are not collected for this site and histology (code 88 for *Multiplicity Counter*).
- Code 12 if the *Date of Multiple Tumors* cannot be determined, but it is known that there are multiple tumors in this primary.
- Registrars should enter this data item directly (when appropriate) even if the traditional form of date entry is used in the software.
- Leave blank for cases diagnosed prior to January 1, 2007.

Code	Definition
11	No proper value is applicable in this context (e.g., information on multiple tumors are not collected/not applicable for this site).
12	A proper value is applicable but not known (for example, date of multiple tumors is unknown.
15	Information is not available at this time, but it is expected that it will be available later (e.g., single tumor).
(Blank)	A valid date is provided in item *Date of Multiple Tumors*. Case was diagnosed prior to January 1, 2007.

The following table illustrates the use of the date flag and the traditional and interoperable date formats for coding *Date of Multiple Tumors* and *Date of Mult Tumors Flag*. ***In the table below, the lowercase letter "b" is used to represent each blank space***.

Description	Traditional Date	Interoperable Date	Date Flag
	Date entered in MMDDCCYY sequence; unknown portions represented by 99 or 9999	**Date entered in CCYYMMDD sequence, leaving unknown portions blank (spaces);omit the date if the date is completely unknown**	
Full date known	MMDDYYCC (example: 02182008)	CCYYMMDD (example: 20080218)	bb
Month and year known	MM99CCYY (example: 02992008)	CCYYMMbb (example: 200802bb)	bb
Year only known	9999CCYY (example: 99992008)	CCYYbbbb (example: 2008bbbb)	bb
Not Applicable (for site and histology	88888888 (example: 88888888)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	11
Unknown date, multiple tumors	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	12
Single tumor only	00000000 (example: 00000000)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	15

Multiplicity Counter

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	446	2	01/09, 01/10	Optional

Description
Records the number of tumors (multiplicity) reported as a single primary.

Rationale
Patients with multiple tumors reported as a single primary for surveillance purposes may have a worse prognosis and more extensive treatment than patients with a single tumor. This data item will make it possible to identify important information about these cases for data analysis. Data collected for this item will be used to assess the number, type, and anatomic location of multiple reportable tumors currently abstracted as a single primary and the impact of these cases on cancer case counts and incidence rates.

Instructions for Coding
- This data item does not apply to metastatic tumors.
- Apply the instructions in the current version of *Multiple Primary Histology and Coding Rules* to code this item.
- This data item is used when a physician states that there are two or more primaries, but for surveillance purposes, the case is reported as a single primary.
- Use code 88 for leukemia, lymphoma, immunoproliferative disease (M9590-M9992), Kaposi sarcoma (M9140), and unknown primaries (C80.9).
- Leave blank for cases diagnosed prior to January 1, 2007.

Blank Page

Blank Page

Blank Page

Blank Page

Blank Page

Blank Page

Blank Page

Cancer Information

Blank Page

Place of Diagnosis Text

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Text – Place of Diagnosis	2690	60	01/10	Required

Description
Text area for manual documentation of the facility, physician office, city, state, or county where the diagnosis was made.

Rationale
Text documentation is an essential component of a complete electronic abstract and is heavily utilized for quality control and special studies. Text is needed to justify coded values and to document supplemental information not transmitted with coded values. High-quality text documentation facilitates consolidation of information from multiple reporting sources at the central registry.

The text field must contain a description that has been entered by the abstractor independently from the code(s). If cancer abstraction software generates text automatically from codes, the text cannot be utilized to check coded values. Information documenting the disease process should be entered manually from the medical record and should not be generated electronically from coded values.

Instructions for Coding
- Prioritize entered information in the order of the fields listed below.
- Text automatically generated from coded data is not acceptable.
- Approved abbreviations should be utilized.
- Do not repeat information from other text fields.
- Additional comments can be continued in empty text fields, including *Remarks*. For text documentation that is continued from one text field to another, use asterisks or other symbols to indicate the connection with preceding text.
- If information is missing from the record, state that it is missing.
- Do not include irrelevant information.
- Do not include information that the registry is not authorized to collect.

Suggestions for text:
- The complete name of the hospital or physician office where diagnosis occurred. The initials of a hospital are not adequate.
- For out-of-state residents and facilities, include the city and the state where the medical facility is located.

Data Item(s) to be verified/validated using the text entered in this field include the *Reporting Hospital*, *Type of Reporting Source*, *Class of Case*, *Facility Referred From*, and *Facility Referred To* fields. After manual entry of the text field, ensure that the text entered on both agrees with the coded values and clearly justifies the selected codes.

Other Primary Tumors

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Text – Other Primary Tumors		90		Required

Description
Text area for documentation of information regarding other primary tumors the patient may have.

Rationale
Identification of other tumors may affect the sequence.

Instructions for Coding
- Document the information regarding other tumors the patient may have or had in the past.

For example:
01 = adenoca of cervix, 1957, not submitted
01 = oat cell carcinoma of lung, 1996, submitted

Date of Diagnosis

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Diagnosis Date	390	8	09/04, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Records the date of initial diagnosis by a physician for the tumor being reported.

Rationale
The timing for staging and treatment of cancer begins with the date of initial diagnosis for cancer.

Instructions for Coding
- Use the first date of diagnosis whether clinically or histologically confirmed.
- If the physician states that in retrospect the patient had cancer at an earlier date, use the earlier date as the date of diagnosis.
- Use the date treatment was started as the date of diagnosis if the patient receives a first course of treatment before a definitive diagnosis.
- Refer to the list of "Ambiguous Terms" on page 18 for language that represents a diagnosis of cancer.
- The date of death is the date of diagnosis for a *Class of Case* 38 (diagnosed at autopsy) or 49 (death certificate only).
- Use the actual date of diagnosis for an *in utero* diagnosis, for cases diagnosed on January 1, 2009 or later. For cases diagnosed before January 1, 2009, assign the date of birth.
- If the year of diagnosis cannot be identified, it must be approximated. In that instance, the month and date are unknown.
- Beginning in 2010, the way dates are transmitted has changed. In order that the registry data can be interoperable with other data sources, dates are transmitted in a format widely accepted outside of the registry setting. However, this does not necessarily mean that the way dates are entered in any particular registry software product has changed. Software providers can provide the best information about date entry in their own systems. The traditional format for *Date of Initial Diagnosis* is MMDDCCYY, with 99 identifying unknown month or day, and 99999999 representing an entirely unknown date. The interoperable form of *Date of Initial Diagnosis* transmits in CCYYMMDD form, where blank spaces are used for unknown trailing portions of the date. The *Date of Diagnosis Flag* is used to explain why *Date of Initial Diagnosis* is not a known date. See *Date of Diagnosis Flag* for an illustration of the relationships among these items.

Date of Diagnosis Flag

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	391	2	New 01/10	Required

Description
This flag explains why there is no appropriate value in the corresponding date field, *Date of Initial Diagnosis*.

Rationale
As part of an initiative to standardize date fields, date flag fields were introduced to accommodate non-date information that had previously been transmitted in date fields.

Instructions for Coding
- Leave this item blank if *Date of Initial Diagnosis* has a full or partial date recorded.
- Code 12 if the *Date of Initial Diagnosis* cannot be determined at all.
- Registrars should enter this data item directly (when appropriate) even if the traditional form of date entry is used in the software.

Code	Definition
12	A proper value is applicable but not known (for example, date of initial diagnosis is unknown
(Blank)	A valid date is provided in item *Date of Initial Diagnosis*

The following table illustrates the use of the date flag and the traditional and interoperable date formats for coding *Date of Initial Diagnosis* and *Date of Diagnosis Flag*. ***In the table below, the lowercase letter "b" is used to represent each blank space***.

Description	Traditional Date	Interoperable Date	Date Flag
	Date entered in MMDDCCYY sequence; unknown portions represented by 99 or 9999	**Date entered in CCYYMMDD sequence, leaving unknown portions blank (spaces);omit the date if the date is completely unknown**	
Full date known	MMDDYYCC (example: 02182010)	CCYYMMDD (example: 20100218)	bb
Month and year known	MM99CCYY (example: 02992010)	CCYYMMbb (example: 201002bb)	bb
Year only known	9999CCYY (example: 99992010)	CCYYbbbb (example: 2010bbbb)	bb
Unknown date	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	12

Primary Site Title

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Text – Primary Site Title	2580	100	01/10	Required

Description
Text area for manual documentation of information regarding the primary site and laterality of the tumor being reported.

Rationale
Text documentation is an essential component of a complete electronic abstract and is heavily utilized for quality control and special studies. Text is needed to justify coded values and to document supplemental information not transmitted with coded values. High-quality text documentation facilitates consolidation of information from multiple reporting sources at the central registry.

The text field must contain a description that has been entered by the abstractor independently from the code(s). If cancer abstraction software generates text automatically from codes, the text cannot be utilized to check coded values. Information documenting the disease process should be entered manually from the medical record and should not be generated electronically from coded values.

Instructions for Coding
- Prioritize entered information in the order of the fields listed below.
- Text automatically generated from coded data is not acceptable.
- Approved abbreviations should be utilized.
- Do not repeat information from other text fields.
- Additional comments can be continued in empty text fields, including *Text – Remarks*. For text documentation that is continued from one text field to another, use asterisks or other symbols to indicate the connection with preceding text.
- If information is missing from the record, state that it is missing.
- Do not include irrelevant information.
- Do not include information that the registry is not authorized to collect.

Suggestions for text:
- Include information on the location of the primary site of the tumor
- Include available information on tumor laterality

Data Item(s) to be verified/validated using the text entered in this field include the *Primary Site* and the *Laterality* fields. After manual entry of the text field, ensure that the text entered on both agrees with the coded values and clearly justifies the selected codes.

Primary Site

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	400	4	01/04, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the primary site.

Rationale
Primary Site is a basis for staging and determination of treatment options. If also affects the prognosis and course of the disease.

Instructions for Coding
- Record the ICD-O-3 topography code for the site of origin.
- Consult the physician advisor to identify the primary site or the most definitive site code if the medical record does not contain that information.
- Topography codes are indicated by a "C" preceding the three-digit code number. Do not record the decimal point.
- Follow the Instructions for Coding in ICD-O-3, pages 20-40 and in the current *Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules* to assign site for solid tumors.
- Follow the instructions in *Hematopoietic and Lymphoid Neoplasm Case Reportability and Coding Manual* and the Hematopoietic and Lymphoid Neoplasms Database (hematopoietic DB) for assigning site for lymphomas, leukemia and other hematopoietic neoplasms.
- Use subcategory 8 for single tumors that overlap the boundaries of two or more sub-sites and the point of origin is not known.
- Use subcategory 9 for multiple tumors that originate in one organ.

Examples:

Code	Reason
C108	Overlapping lesion of oropharynx. Code overlapping lesion when a large tumor involves both the lateral wall of the oropharynx (C10.2) and the posterior wall of the oropharynx (C10.3) and the point of origin is not stated.
C678	Overlapping lesion of bladder. Code overlapping lesion of the bladder when a single lesion involves the dome (C67.1) and the lateral wall (C67.2) and the point of origin is not stated.
C189	Colon, NOS. Familial polyposis with carcinoma and carcinoma in-situ throughout the transverse (C18.4) and descending colon (C18.6) would be one primary and coded to colon, NOS (C18.9). For a full explanation see the *SEER Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules*.
C16_	Stomach (sub-site as identified). An extranodal lymphoma of the stomach would be coded to C16._ (sub-site as identified).

Laterality

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Paired Organ	410	1	01/04, 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the side of a paired organ or the side of the body on which the reportable tumor originated. This applies to the primary site only.

Rationale
Laterality supplements staging and extent of disease information and defines the number of primaries involved.

Instructions for Coding
- Code laterality for all paired sites (see list of paired organs on the following page).
- Do not code metastatic sites as bilateral involvement.
- Code midline lesions 5.
- Non-paired sites may be coded right or left, if appropriate. Otherwise, code non-paired sites 0.

Code	Definition
0	Organ is not a paired site.
1	Origin of primary is right.
2	Origin of primary is left.
3	Only one side involved, right or left origin not specified.
4	Bilateral involvement at time of diagnosis, lateral origin unknown for a single primary; or both ovaries involved simultaneously with a single histology; bilateral retinoblastomas; bilateral Wilms tumors
5	Paired site: midline tumor.
9	Paired site, but no information concerning laterality.

Laterality must be recorded for the following paired organs as 1-5 or 9. Organs that are not paired, for which you have not recorded right or left laterality, are coded 0. Midline origins are coded 5. This code is new for 2010, and it may be used retrospectively for cases diagnosed prior to 2010.

Paired Organ Sites	
ICD-O-3	**Site**
C07.9	Parotid gland
C08.0	Submandibular gland
C08.1	Sublingual gland
C09.0	Tonsillar fossa
C09.1	Tonsillar pillar
C09.8	Overlapping lesion of tonsil
C09.9	Tonsil, NOS
C30.0	Nasal cavity (excluding nasal cartilage and nasal septum)
C30.1	Middle ear
C31.0	Maxillary sinus
C31.2	Frontal sinus
C34.0	Main bronchus(excluding carina)
C34.1-C34.9	Lung
C38.4	Pleura
C40.0	Long bones of upper limb and scapula
C40.1	Short bones of upper limb
C40.2	Long bones of lower limb
C40.3	Short bones of lower limb
C41.3	Rib and clavicle (excluding sternum)
C41.4	Pelvic bones (excluding sacrum, coccyx, and symphysis pubis)
C44.1	Skin of eyelid
C44.2	Skin of external ear
C44.3	Skin of other and unspecified parts of face
C44.5	Skin of trunk
C44.6	Skin of upper limb and shoulder
C44.7	Skin of lower limb and hip
C47.1	Peripheral nerves and autonomic nervous system of upper limb and shoulder
C47.2	Peripheral nerves and autonomic nervous system of lower limb and hip
C49.1	Connective, subcutaneous, and other soft tissues of upper limb and shoulder
C49.2	Connective, subcutaneous, and other soft tissues of lower limb and hip
C50.0-C50.9	Breast
C56.9	Ovary
C57.0	Fallopian tube
C62.0-C62.9	Testis
C63.0	Epididymis
C63.1	Spermatic cord
C64.9	Kidney, NOS
C65.9	Renal pelvis
C66.9	Ureter
C69.0-C69.9	Eye and lacrimal gland
C70.0	Cerebral meninges, NOS
C71.0 – C71.1	Cerebrum and Frontal lobe
C71.2 – C71.4	Temporal, Parietal, and Occipital lobes
C72.2 – C72.5	Olfactory, Optic, Acoustic, and Cranial nerves, NOS
C74.0-C74.9	Adrenal gland
C75.4	Carotid body

Diagnostic Confirmation

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	490	1	01/04, 01/10	Required

Description
Records the best method of diagnostic confirmation of the cancer being reported at any time in the patient's history.

Rationale
This item is an indicator of the precision of diagnosis. The percentage of solid tumors that are clinically diagnosed only is an indication of whether casefinding is including sources outside of pathology reports. Full incidence calculations must include both clinically and pathologically confirmed cases.

Instructions for Coding Solid Tumors (all tumors except M9590-9992)

- The codes are in **priority** order; code 1 as the highest priority. Always code the procedure with the lower numeric value when presence of cancer is confirmed with multiple diagnostic methods. This data item must be changed to the lower (higher priority) code if a more definitive method confirms the diagnosis *at any time during* the course of the disease.
- Assign code 1 when the microscopic diagnosis is based on tissue specimens from biopsy, frozen section, surgery, autopsy, or D & C or from aspiration of biopsy of bone marrow specimens.
- Assign code 2 when the microscopic diagnosis is based on cytologic examination of *cells* such as sputum smears, bronchial brushings, bronchial washings, prostatic secretions, breast secretions, gastric fluid, spinal fluid, peritoneal fluid, pleural fluid, urinary sediment, cervical smears and vaginal smears, or from paraffin block specimens from concentrated spinal, pleural, or peritoneal fluid.
- Code 5 when the diagnosis of cancer is based on laboratory tests or marker studies which are clinically diagnostic for that specific cancer.
- Code 6 when the diagnosis is based only on the surgeon's operative report from a surgical exploration or endoscopy or from gross autopsy findings in the absence of tissue or cytological findings.

Codes for Solid Tumors

Code	Label	Definition
1	Positive histology	Histologic confirmation (tissue microscopically examined).
2	Positive cytology	Cytologic confirmation (no tissue microscopically examined; fluid cells microscopically examined).
4	Positive microscopic confirmation, method not specified	Microscopic confirmation is all that is known. It is unknown if the cells were from histology or cytology.
5	Positive laboratory test/marker study	A clinical diagnosis of cancer is based on laboratory tests/marker studies which are clinically diagnostic for cancer. This includes alpha-fetoprotein for liver cancer and abnormal electrophoretic spike for multiple myeloma. Elevated PSA is not diagnostic of cancer. If the physician uses PSA as a basis for diagnosing prostate cancer with no other workup, record as code 5.
6	Direct visualization without microscopic confirmation	The tumor was visualized during a surgical or endoscopic procedure only with no tissue resected for microscopic examination.
7	Radiography and other imaging techniques without microscopic confirmation	The malignancy was reported by the physician from an imaging technique report only.
8	Clinical diagnosis only (other than 5, 6, or 7)	The malignancy was reported by the physician in the medical record.
9	Unknown whether or not microscopically confirmed	A statement of malignancy was reported in the medical record, but there is no statement of how the cancer was diagnosed (usually non-analytic).

Instructions for Coding Hematopoietic or Lymphoid Tumors (9590-9992)

- There is no priority hierarchy for coding diagnostic Confirmation for hematopoietic and lymphoid tumors. Most commonly, the specific histologic type is diagnosed by immunophenotyping or genetic testing. See the *Hematopoietic Database (DB)* for information on the definitive diagnostic confirmation for specific types of tumors.
- Code 1 when the microscopic diagnosis is based on tissue specimens from biopsy, frozen section, surgery, or autopsy or bone marrow specimens from aspiration or biopsy.
- For leukemia only, Code 1 when the diagnosis is based only on the complete blood count (CBC), white blood count (WBC) or peripheral blood smear. Do not use code 1 if the diagnosis was based on immunophenotyping or genetic testing using tissue, bone marrow, or blood.
- Use code 2 when the microscopic diagnosis is based on cytologic examination of *cells* (rather than tissue) including but not limited to spinal fluid, peritoneal fluid, pleural fluid, urinary sediment, cervical smears and vaginal smears, or from paraffin block specimens from concentrated spinal, pleural, or peritoneal fluid. These methods are rarely used for hematopoietic or lymphoid tumors.
- Assign code 3 when there is a histology positive for cancer AND positive immunophenotyping and/or positive genetic testing results. Do not use code 3 for neoplasms diagnosed prior to January 1, 2010.
- Assign code 5 when the diagnosis of cancer is based on laboratory tests or marker studies which are clinically diagnostic for that specific cancer, but no positive histologic confirmation.
- Assign code 6 when the diagnosis is based only on the surgeon's report from a surgical exploration or endoscopy or from gross autopsy findings without tissue or cytological findings.
- Assign code 8 when the case was diagnosed by any clinical method that cannot be coded as 6 or 7. A number of hematopoietic and lymphoid neoplasms are diagnosed by tests of excluding where the tests for the disease are equivocal and the physician makes a clinical diagnosis based on the information from the equivocal tests and the patient's clinical presentation.

Code	Label	Definition
1	Positive histology	Histologic confirmation (tissue microscopically examined).
2	Positive cytology	Cytologic confirmation (no tissue microscopically examined; fluid cells microscopically examined).
3	Positive histology PLUS • Positive immunophenotyping AND/OR • Positive genetic studies	Histology is positive for cancer, and there are also positive immunophenotyping and/or genetic test results. For example, bone marrow examination is positive for acute myeloid leukemia (9861/3). Genetic testing shows AML with inv(16)(p13.1q22) (9871/3).
4	Positive microscopic confirmation, method not specified	Microscopic confirmation is all that is known. It is unknown if the cells were from histology or cytology.
5	Positive laboratory test/marker study	A clinical diagnosis of cancer is based on laboratory tests/marker studies which are clinically diagnostic for cancer.
6	Direct visualization without microscopic confirmation	The tumor was visualized during a surgical or endoscopic procedure only with no tissue resected for microscopic examination.
7	Radiography and other imaging techniques without microscopic confirmation	The malignancy was reported by the physician from an imaging technique report only.
8	Clinical diagnosis only (other than 5, 6, or 7)	The malignancy was reported by the physician in the medical record.
9	Unknown whether or not microscopically confirmed	A statement of malignancy was reported in the medical record, but there is no statement of how the cancer was diagnosed (usually non-analytic).

Note: Code 3 (used only for hematopoietic and lymphoid neoplasms 9590-9992) was adopted for use effective with 2010 diagnoses.

Path Number

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
		10		Recommended

Description
Records the pathology number first used to report this case.

Rationale
Describes the first pathology report contributing to this cancer abstract. The pathology report number provides a cross reference that identifies the specimen at the pathology facility. It may be useful for follow back with the pathology facility.

Instructions for Coding
- Record the pathology number.

Pathology Text

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Text – DX Proc – Path	2570	1,000	01/10	Required

Description
Text area for manual documentation of information from cytology and histopathology reports.

In RMCDS, click on the box "T" on the left of the text line to open entire text box.

Rationale
Text documentation is an essential component of a complete electronic abstract and is heavily utilized for quality control and special studies. Text is needed to justify coded values and to document supplemental information not transmitted with coded values. High-quality text documentation facilitates consolidation of information from multiple reporting sources at the central registry.

The text field must contain a description that has been entered by the abstractor independently from the code(s). If cancer abstraction software generates text automatically from codes, the text cannot be utilized to check coded values. Information documenting the disease process should be entered manually from the medical record and should not be generated electronically from coded values.

Instructions for Coding
- Prioritize entered information in the order of the fields listed below.
- Text automatically generated from coded data is not acceptable.
- Approved abbreviations should be utilized.
- Do not repeat information from other text fields.
- Additional comments can be continued in empty text fields, including *Text – Remarks*. For text documentation that is continued from one text field to another, use asterisks or other symbols to indicate the connection with preceding text.
- If information is missing from the record, state that it is missing.
- Do not include irrelevant information.
- Do not include information that the registry is not authorized to collect.

Suggestions for text:
- Date(s) of procedure(s)
- Type of tissue specimen(s)
- Tumor type and grade (include all modifying adjectives (i.e., predominantly, with features of, with foci of, elements of, etc.)
- Gross tumor size
- Extent of tumor spread
- Involvement of resection margins
- Number of lymph nodes involved and examined
- Record both positive and negative findings; record positive test results first
- Note if pathology report is a slide review or a second opinion from an outside source (i.e., AFIP, Mayo, etc.)
- Record any additional comments from the pathologist, including differential diagnoses considered and any ruled out or favored

Data Item(s) to be verified/validated using the text entered in this field include the *Date of Diagnosis*, *Primary Site*, *Laterality*, *Histologic Type*, *Grade*, *Collaborative Stage variables*, and *Diagnostic Confirmation* fields. After manual entry of the text field, ensure that the text entered on both agrees with the coded values and clearly justifies the selected codes.

Histology Title

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Text – Histology Title	2590	100	01/10	Required

Description
Text area for manual documentation of information regarding the histologic type, behavior, and grade (differentiation) of the tumor being reported.

Rationale
Text documentation is an essential component of a complete electronic abstract and is heavily utilized for quality control and special studies. Text is needed to justify coded values and to document supplemental information not transmitted with coded values. High-quality text documentation facilitates consolidation of information from multiple reporting sources at the central registry.

The text field must contain a description that has been entered by the abstractor independently from the code(s). If cancer abstraction software generates text automatically from codes, the text cannot be utilized to check coded values. Information documenting the disease process should be entered manually from the medical record and should not be generated electronically from coded values.

Instructions for Coding
- Prioritize entered information in the order of the fields listed below.
- Text automatically generated from coded data is not acceptable.
- Approved abbreviations should be utilized (a list of approved abbreviations will be compiled).
- Do not repeat information from other text fields.
- Additional comments can be continued in empty text fields, including *Text – Remarks*. For text documentation that is continued from one text field to another, use asterisks or other symbols to indicate the connection with preceding text.
- If information is missing from the record, state that it is missing.
- Do not include irrelevant information.
- Do not include information that the registry is not authorized to collect.

Suggestions for text:
- Information on histologic type and behavior
- Information on differentiation from scoring systems such as Gleason's Score, Bloom Richardson Grade, etc

Data Item(s) to be verified/validated using the text entered in this field include the *Histology*, *Behavior*, and *Grade* fields. After manual entry of the text field, ensure that the text entered on both agrees with the coded values and clearly justifies the selected codes.

Histology

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Morphology	522	4	09/06, 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the microscopic anatomy of cells.

Rationale
Histology is a basis for staging and the determination of treatment options. It also affects the prognosis and course of the disease.

Instructions for Coding

- ICD-O-3 identifies the morphology codes with an "M" preceding the code number. Do not record the "M".
- Record histology using the ICD-O-3 codes in the Numeric Lists/Morphology section (ICD-O-3, pages 69-104) and in the Alphabetic Index (ICD-O-3, pages 105-218).
- Follow the coding rules outlined on pages 20 through 40 of ICD-O-3.
- Use the current *Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules* when coding the histology for all reportable solid tumors. These rules are effective for cases diagnosed January 1, 2007, or later. Do not use these rules to abstract cases diagnosed prior to January 1, 2007.
- Review all pathology reports.
- Code the **final** pathologic diagnosis for solid tumors.

  EXCEPTION: If the final diagnosis is "Not Otherwise Specified" (carcinoma, NOS; melanoma, NOS; sarcoma, NOS; lymphoma, NOS; or malignant tumor, NOS), then code the histology from the microscopic description or comment if it identifies a more specific histologic type (higher ICD-O-3 code) such as adenocarcinoma, amelanotic melanoma, spindle cell sarcoma.

- For lymphomas, leukemias, and other hematopoietic tumors, follow the instructions in *Hematopoietic and Lymphoid Neoplasm Case Reportability and Coding Manual* and the Hematopoietic and Lymphoid Neoplasms Database (Hematopoietic DB).
- The codes for cancer, NOS (8000) and carcinoma, NOS (8010) are **not** interchangeable. If the physician says that the patient has carcinoma, then code carcinoma, NOS (8010).

Examples:

Code	Label	Definition
8140	Adenocarcinoma	Final pathologic diagnosis is carcinoma, NOS (8010) of the prostate. Microscopic diagnosis specifies adenocarcinoma (8140) of the prostate.
9680	Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma	Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma, per the WHO Classification of Hematopoietic and Lymphoid Neoplasms.

The instructions for coding histology and behavior are found in the "Morphology" section of the ICD-O-3 "Coding Guidelines for Topography and Morphology" (ICD-O-3 pages 27-30).

To code multiple or mixed histologies present in one primary, the most recent *SEER Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules* replaces all previous multiple histology rules. These rules are effective for cases diagnosed January 1, 2007 and after; do not use them to abstract cases diagnosed before January 1, 2007.

Behavior

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	523	1	01/04, 01/10	Required

Description
Records the behavior of the tumor being reported. The fifth digit of the morphology code is the behavior code.

Rationale
The behavior code is used by pathologists to describe whether the tissue samples are benign (0), borderline (1), in-situ (2), or invasive (3).

Instructions for Coding
- Code 3 if any invasion is present, no matter how limited.
- If the specimen is from a metastatic site, code the histology of the metastatic site and code 3 for behavior.

  ***Note*:** The ICD-O-3 behavior code for juvenile astrocytoma (9421/1) should be coded with behavior code as 3 (9421/3) by agreement of North American registry standard-setters.

Code	Label	Definition
0	Benign	Benign
1	Borderline	Uncertain whether benign or malignant
		Borderline malignancy
		Low malignant potential
		Uncertain malignant potential
2	In-situ and/or carcinoma in-situ	Adenocarcinoma in an adenomatous polyp with no invasion of stalk
		Clark level 1 for melanoma (limited to epithelium)
		Comedocarcinoma, noninfiltrating (C50.-)
2	Synonymous with in-situ	Confined to epithelium
		Hutchinson melanotic freckle, NOS (C44.-)
		Intracystic, non-infiltrating
		Intraductal
		Intraepidermal, NOS
		Intraepithelial, NOS
		Involvement up to, but not including the basement membrane
		Lentigo maligna (C44.-)
		Lobular neoplasia (C50.-)
		Lobular, non-infiltrating (C50.-)
		Non-infiltrating
		Noninvasive
		No stromal involvement
		Papillary, non-infiltrating or intraductal
		Precancerous melanosis (C44.-)
		Queyrat erythroplasia (C60.-)
3	Invasive	Invasive or microinvasive

Example:

Code	Reason
3	Intraductal carcinoma (8500/2) with focal areas of invasion.

Grade/Differentiation

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	440	1	09/04, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Describes the tumor's resemblance to normal tissue. Well differentiated (Grade I) is the most like normal tissue, and undifferentiated (Grade IV) is the least like normal tissue. Grades 5-8 define particular cell lines for lymphomas and leukemias.

Rationale
This data item is useful for prognosis.

Instructions for Coding
- Code grade according to ICD-O-3 (pages 30-31 and 67).
- Code the grade or differentiation as stated in the **final** pathologic diagnosis. If the grade is not stated in the final pathologic diagnosis, use the information from the microscopic description or comments.
- When the pathology report(s) lists more than one grade of tumor, code to the highest grade, even if the highest grade is only a focus (Rule G, ICD-O-3, page 21).
- Code the grade or differentiation from the pathologic examination of the primary tumor, not from metastatic sites.
- When there is no tissue diagnosis, it may be possible to establish grade through magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) or positron emission tomography (PET). When available, code grade based on the recorded findings from these imaging reports.
- If the primary site is unknown, code the *Grade/Differentiation* as unknown (9).
- Code the grade for in-situ lesions if the information is available. If the lesion is both invasive and in-situ, code only the invasive portion. If the invasive component grade is unknown, then code 9.
- **Do not** use "high grade", "low grade", or "intermediate grade" descriptions for lymphomas as a basis for differentiation. These terms are categories in the Working Formulation of Lymphoma Diagnoses and do not relate to *Grade/Differentiation*.
- Codes 5-8 define T-cell or B-cell origin for leukemias and lymphomas. T-cell, B-cell, or null cell classifications have precedence over grading or differentiation.
- Do not use the WHO grade to code this data item.
- If no grade is given for astrocytomas, code 9 (unknown).
- If no grade is given for glioblastoma multiforme, code 9 (unknown).
- If *Grade Path System* and *Grade Path Value* are coded, *Grade/Differentiation* must not be 9.

Code	Grade/Cell	Label
1	Grade I, 1, i	Well differentiated; differentiated, NOS
2	Grade II, 2, ii I/III or 1/3	Moderately differentiated; moderately well differentiated; intermediate differentiation
3	Grade III, 3, iii II/III or 2/3	Poorly differentiated; dedifferentiated
4	Grade IV, 4, iv III/III or 3/3	Undifferentiated; Anaplastic
For Lymphomas and Leukemias		
5		T cell; T-precursor
6		B cell; pre-B; B-precursor
7		Null cell; non T-non B
8		NK (natural killer) cell (effective with diagnosis 1/1/95 and after)
For Use in All Histologies		
9		Cell type not determined, not stated or not applicable; unknown primaries; high grade dysplasia (adenocarcinoma in-situ)

The instructions for coding grade and differentiation are found in the "Morphology" section of the ICD-O-3 "Coding Guidelines for Topography and Morphology" (ICD-O-3 pages 30-34).

For sites other than breast, prostate, and kidney, code the tumor grade using the following priority order: 1) terminology; 2) histologic grade; 3) nuclear grade.

The grade of a tumor, including brain, can be established through magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) or positron emission tomography (PET) when there is no tissue diagnosis.

For primary tumors of the brain and spinal cord (C71.0 – C72.9) do not record the WHO grade as the tumor *Grade/Differentiation*; record the WHO grade in the data item *CS Site-Specific Factor 1*. Grade astrocytomas (M-9383, 9484, 9400, 9401, 9410-9412, 9420, 9421) according to ICD-O-3 rules: I (well differentiated), Code 1; II (intermediate differentiation), Code 2; III (poorly differentiated), Code 3; IV (anaplastic), Code 4. Do not automatically code glioblastoma multiforme as Grade IV if no grade is given, code 9 (unknown).

Some primary sites are routinely assigned a grade other than *Grade/Differentiation* that is defined by the ICD-O-3. For the *Grade/Differentiation* item, it is necessary to convert from these systems to Grade/Differentiation as described in the following sections.

Coding Two-grade Systems

Two grade systems apply to colon, rectosigmoid junction, rectum (C18.0-C20.9), and heart (C38.0). Code these sites using a two-grade system; Low Grade (2) or High Grade (4). If the grade is listed as 1/2 or as Low Grade, then code 2. If the grade is listed as 2/2 or as High Grade, then code 4.

Code	Terminology	Histologic Grade
2	Low Grade	1/2
4	High Grade	2/2

Coding Three-grade Systems

Three grade systems apply to peritoneum (C48.1, C48.2), breast (C50.0-C50.9), endometrium (C54.1), fallopian tube (C57.0), prostate (C61.9), kidney (C64.9), and brain and spinal cord (C71.0-C72.9). For sites other than breast, prostate, and kidney, code the tumor grade using the following priority order: (1) Terminology; (2) Histologic Grade; and (3) Nuclear Grade as shown in the table below.

Code	Terminology	Histologic Grade	Nuclear Grade
2	Low grade, well to moderately differentiated	I/III or 1/3	1/3, 1/2
3	Medium grade, moderately undifferentiated, relatively undifferentiated	II/III or 2/3	2/3
4	High grade, poorly differentiated to undifferentiated	III/III or 3/3	2/2, 3/3

Breast (C50.0-C50.9)

For breast cancers, code the tumor grade using the following priority order: (1) Bloom-Richardson (Nottingham) Scores; (2) Bloom-Richardson Grade; (3) Nuclear Grade; (4) Terminology; and (5) Histologic Grade as shown in the table below.

Code	Bloom-Richardson (Nottingham) Scores	Bloom-Richardson Grade	Nuclear Grade	Terminology	Histologic Grade
1	3-5 points	Low grade	1/3, 1/2	Well differentiated	I/III or 1/3
2	6, 7 points	Intermediate grade	2/3	Moderately differentiated	II/III or 2/3
3	8, 9 points	High grade	2/2, 3/3	Poorly differentiated	III/III or 3/3

Kidney (C64.9)

For kidney cancers, code the tumor grade using the following priority rules: (1) Fuhrman Grade; (2) Nuclear Grade; (3) Terminology (well differentiated, moderately differentiated); and (4) Histologic Grade. These prioritization rules do not apply to Wilm's tumor (M-8960).

Prostate (C61.9)

For prostate cancers, code the tumor grade using the table below according to the following priority order: (1) Gleason Score (this is the sum of the patterns, e.g., if the pattern is 2+4 the score is 6); (2) Terminology; (3) Histologic Grade; and (4) Nuclear Grade (obsolete).

Code	Gleason's Score (sum of primary and secondary patterns)	Terminology	Histologic Grade
1	2, 3, 4	Well differentiated	I
2	5, 6	Moderately differentiated	II
3	7, 8, 9, 10	Poorly differentiated	III

Path Grade System and Path Grade Value

Two items introduced in 2010 describe the grade system and value as assigned by the pathologist, prior to any conversion for *Grade/Differentiation*. *Grade Path Value* refers to the numeric value of the grade as reported by the pathologist using a 2, 3 or 4-grade system. *Grade Path System* identifies whether the pathologist was using a 2, 3 or 4-grade system. When there is no information available on grade, the pathologist uses a verbal description of grade, or a specialized grade is described (for example, Bloom-Richardson), these two items are to be left blank.

Tumor Grade and AJCC Staging

The *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual* may state that specific histologies are to be considered a specific grade. Follow AJCC instructions when assigning stage only. Follow ICD-O-3 rules and rules in this section for assigning a grade to tumors recorded in your abstract. The specialized grades described in the *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual* are recorded directly as Collaborative Staging items.

Grade Path System

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	449	1	New 01/10	Required

Description
Indicates whether a two, three or four grade system was used in the pathology report.

Rationale
This item is used to show whether a two, three or four grade system was used in the pathology report to describe the grade. This item is used in conjunction with Grade Path Value.

Instructions for Coding
- This item may be left blank for cases diagnosed prior to 2010.
- Code this item from the same tissue as that used to code *Grade/Differentiation.*
- Code the value corresponding to the number of grades used in the grading system reported in the pathology report.
- Leave the item blank if no pathologic grade is available.
- Leave the item blank if only a verbal description of grade is reported (for example, moderately differentiated).
- Leave this item blank if another grading system is used in the pathology report. For example, do not report grading systems such as Bloom-Richardson for breast primaries, Fuhrman for kidney, Gleason for prostate, or WHO grade. Those grading systems are coded in a site-specific factor for the applicable CS schema.
- Leave this item blank for lymphomas and hematopoietic malignancies (9590-9992).
- This item and *Grade Path Value* should both be coded or both be blank. If both are coded, *Grade/Differentiation* must not be 9.

Code	Definition
Blank	No 2, 3 or 4 grade system available. Unknown.
2	A 2-grade grading system was used (2, II, or ii)
3	A 3-grade grading system was used (3, III, or iii)
4	A 4-grade grading system was used (4, IV, or iv)

Grade Path Value

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	441	1	New 01/10	Required

Description
Describes the grade assigned according to the grading system in *Grade Path System*.

Rationale
This item records the numeric grade reported in the pathology report. This item supplements but does not replace Grade/Differentiation.

Instructions for Coding
- This item may be left blank for cases diagnosed prior to 2010.
- Code this item from the same tissue as that used to code *Grade/Differentiation*. This item records how the original grade of the tumor was described.
- Code the value of the numeric grade from the pathology report of the Grade Path System was 2-4. Code the histologic grade in priority over a nuclear or architectural grade.
- Do not convert the terms *well*, *moderately*, or *poorly differentiated*, *low/high*, or *anaplastic* into codes in this field. Leave blank if that is all that is available.
- Leave the item blank if a numeric grade is given, but the grading system is not stated (for example, Graded 1, with no information about the grade system).
- Leave this item blank if another grading system is used in the pathology report. For example, do not report grading systems such as Bloom-Richardson for breast primaries, Fuhrman for kidney, Gleason for prostate, or WHO grade. Those grading systems are coded in a site-specific factor for the applicable CS schema.
- Leave this item blank for lymphomas and hematopoietic malignancies (9590-9992).
- This item and *Grade Path System* should both be coded or both be blank. If both are coded, *Grade/Differentiation* must not be 9. *Grade Path Value* can never be larger than *Grade Path System*.

Code	Definition
Blank	No 2, 3 or 4 grade system available. Unknown.
1	Recorded as Grade I, i, or 1 of a 2-4 grade system
2	Recorded as Grade II, ii or 2 of a 2-4 grade system
3	Recorded as Grade III, iii or 3 of a 3-4 grade system
4	Recorded as Grade IV, iv of a 4 grade system

Examples:

Code	Reason
1	The pathology report indicates the grade is 1/4
2	Synoptic report says grade ii of iii
3	Microscopic description reports high grade III of III
Blank	No mention of grade at all in the pathology report
Blank	The pathology report indicates that the grade is 2, but no mention of the system is made

Staging Text

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Text – Staging	2600	1,000	01/10	Required

Description
Text area for manual documentation of information about staging decisions that haven't been described in other text fields. Document any unresolved discrepancies between physician and registry staging decisions.

In RMCDS, click on the box "T" on the left of the text line to open entire text box.

Rationale
Text documentation is an essential component of a complete electronic abstract and is heavily utilized for quality control and special studies. Text is needed to justify coded values and to document supplemental information not transmitted with coded values. High-quality text documentation facilitates consolidation of information from multiple reporting sources at the central registry.

The text field must contain a description that has been entered by the abstractor independently from the code(s). If cancer abstraction software generates text automatically from codes, the text cannot be utilized to check coded values. Information documenting the disease process should be entered manually from the medical record and should not be generated electronically from coded values.

Instructions for Coding
- Prioritize entered information in the order of the fields listed below.
- Text automatically generated from coded data is not acceptable.
- Approved abbreviations should be utilized (a list of approved abbreviations will be compiled).
- Do not repeat information from other text fields.
- Additional comments can be continued in empty text fields, including *Text – Remarks*. For text documentation that is continued from one text field to another, use asterisks or other symbols to indicate the connection with preceding text.
- If information is missing from the record, state that it is missing.
- Do not include irrelevant information.
- Do not include information that the registry is not authorized to collect.

Suggestions for text:
- Date(s) of procedure(s), including clinical procedures, that provided information for assigning stage
- Organs involved by direct extension
- Size of tumor
- Status of margins
- Number and sites of positive lymph nodes
- Site(s) of distant metastasis
- Physician's specialty and comments

Data Item(s) to be verified/validated using the text entered in this field include the *Date of DX/Stage Procedure*, *Collaborative Stage Variables*, *SEER Summary Stage 1977*, *SEER Summary Stage 2000*, *Tumor Size*, *Regional Nodes Positive*, *Regional Nodes Examined*, *Behavior Code*, and *Sites of Distant Metastasis* fields. After manual entry of the text field, ensure that the text entered on both agrees with the coded values and clearly justifies the selected codes.

SEER Summary Stage 2000

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	759	1	09/04, 01/09	Required

Description
Provides a site-specific description of the extent of disease at diagnosis.

Rationale
SEER Summary Stage 2000 is used by the CoC to describe disease spread at diagnosis for cancers with no AJCC TNM staging schema. It is a prognostic factor used in the analysis of patient care and outcomes.

Instructions for Coding
- Code this data item for cases diagnosed prior to January 1, 2004.
- Record the SEER Summary Stage 2000 code for all cases that do not have a defined AJCC staging schema.
- Use code 8 for non-malignant tumors only.
- Refer to the *SEER Summary Staging Manual 2000* for site-specific coding instructions. This information can be found on online at http://www.seer.cancer.gov/tools/ssm/.

Code	Definition
0	In-situ
1	Localized
2	Regional by direct extension
3	Regional to lymph nodes
4	Regional (both codes 2 and 3)
5	Regional, NOS
7	Distant metastasis/systemic disease
8	Not applicable (non-malignant tumor)
9	Unknown if extension or metastasis (unstaged, unknown, or unspecified); death certificate only

AJCC TNM Staging

AJCC TNM Stage is based on the clinical, operative, and pathologic assessment of the anatomic extent of disease and is used to make appropriate treatment decisions, determine prognosis, and measure end results. The following general rules apply to AJCC staging of all sites.

- *Clinical staging* includes any information obtained about the extent of cancer before initiation of definitive treatment (surgery, systemic or radiation therapy, active surveillance, or palliative care) or within four months after the date of diagnosis, whichever is *shorter*, as long as the cancer has not clearly progressed during that time frame.
- *Pathologic staging* includes any information obtained about the extent of cancer through completion of definitive surgery as part of first course treatment or identified within 4 months after the date of diagnosis whichever is *longer*, as long as there is no systemic or radiation therapy initiated or the cancer has not clearly progressed during that time frame.

The CoC requires the use of AJCC staging to allow physicians to determine appropriate treatment, and a goal of cancer registry staging is to provide high-quality information about cancer stage before and after treatment. Systematic use of this established staging schema enables the reliable evaluation of treatment results and outcomes reported from various institutions on a local, regional and national basis. If the treating physician(s) has not recorded this information, registrars will code these items based on the best available information.

- The CoC *requires* registries in accredited cancer programs to record the ***clinical*** (pretreatment) classifications of T, N, M, and stage group for *Class of Case* 10-22 cases diagnosed on or after January 1, 2008.

- The CoC *recommends* that registries in accredited cancer programs record the clinical classification of T, N, M, and stage group for *Class of Case* 00 cases diagnosed on or after January 1, 2008.

- The CoC *recommends* that registries in accredited cancer programs record the pathologic classifications (for surgical cases) of T, N, and M and stage group for cases diagnosed on or after January 1, 2008.

- CoC does not require that registrars use information not available in the facility's records to assign staging information. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

- If a patient has multiple primaries, stage each primary independently.

- If the stage group cannot be determined from the recorded components, then record it as unknown.

- When a patient with multiple primaries develops metastases, a biopsy may distinguish the source of distant disease. Stage both primaries as having metastatic disease if the physician is unable to conclude which primary has metastasized. If, at a later time, the physician identifies which primary has metastasized, update the stage(s) as appropriate.

- If pediatric staging is used and AJCC staging is not applied, code 88 for clinical and pathologic T, N, and M as well as stage group. If either clinical or pathologic staging was applied for a pediatric tumor, enter the appropriate codes for both and do not code 88.

Clinical T

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	940	4	09/04, 09/06, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Evaluates the primary tumor (T) and reflects the tumor size and/or extension of the tumor known ***prior*** to the start of any therapy.

Rationale
The CoC requires that AJCC TNM staging be used in its accredited cancer programs. Effective January 1, 2008, the CoC requires that AJCC clinical TNM staging be recorded in its accredited cancer program cancer registries. The AJCC developed this staging system for evaluating trends in the treatment and control of cancer. This staging system is used by physicians to estimate prognosis, plan treatment, evaluate new types of therapy, analyze outcomes, design follow-up strategies, and to assess early detection results.

Instructions for Coding
- The clinical T staging element must be recorded for *Class of Case* 10-22.
- It is strongly recommended that the clinical T staging element be recorded for *Class of Case* 00 cases if the patient's workup at the facility allows coding of clinical T.
- Code clinical T as documented by the first treating physician or the managing physician in the medical record.
- If the managing physician has not recorded clinical T, registrars *will* code this item based on the best available information, without necessarily requiring additional contact with the physician.
- For lung, occult carcinoma is coded TX.
- Refer to the current *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual* for staging rules.

Code	Definition	Code	Definition
(leave blank)	Not recorded.	2A	T2a
X	TX	2A1	T2a1
0	T0	2A2	T2a2
A	Ta	2B	T2b
IS	Tis	2C	T2c
ISPU	Tispu	2D	T2d
ISPD	Tispd	3	T3
1M1	T1mi, T1mic	3A	T3a
1	T1	3B	T3b
1A	T1a	3C	T3c
1A1	T1a1	3D	T3d
1A2	T1a2	4	T4
1B	T1b	4A	T4a
1B1	T1b1	4B	T4b
1B2	T1b2	4C	T4c
1C	T1c	4D	T4d
1D	T1d	4E	T4e
2	T2	88	Not applicable

Clinical N

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	950	4	09/06, 01/08, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the absence or presence of regional lymph node (N) metastasis and describes the extent of regional lymph node metastasis of the tumor known ***prior*** to the start of any therapy.

Rationale
The CoC requires that AJCC TNM staging be used in its accredited cancer programs. Effective January 1, 2008 the CoC requires that AJCC Clinical TNM staging be recorded in its accredited cancer program cancer registries. The AJCC developed this staging system for evaluating trends in the treatment and control of cancer. This staging system is used by physicians to estimate prognosis, plan treatment, evaluate new types of therapy, analyze outcomes, design follow-up strategies, and to assess early detection results.

Instructions for Coding
- The clinical N staging element must be recorded for *Class of Case* 10-22.
- It is strongly recommended that the clinical N staging element be recorded for *Class of Case* 00 cases if the patient's workup at the facility allows coding of clinical N.
- Record clinical N as documented by the first treating physician or the managing physician in the medical record.
- If the managing physician has not recorded clinical N, registrars *will* code this item based on the best available information, without necessarily requiring additional contact with the physician.
- Refer to the current *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual* for staging rules.

Code	Definition	Code	Definition
(leave blank)	Not recorded.	1B	N1b
X	NX	1C	N1c
0	N0	2	N2
0I-	N0i-	2A	N2a
0I+	N0i+	2B	N2b
0M-	N0m-	2C	N2c
0m+	N0m+	3	N3
1MI	N1mi	3A	N3a
0A	N0a	3B	N3b
0B	N0b	3C	N3c
1	N1	4	N4
1A	N1a	88	Not applicable

Clinical M

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	960	4	09/04, 09/06, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the presence or absence of distant metastasis (M) of the tumor known ***prior*** to the start of any therapy.

Rationale
The CoC requires that AJCC TNM staging be used in its accredited cancer programs. Effective January 1, 2008 the CoC requires that AJCC Clinical TNM staging be recorded in its accredited cancer program cancer registries. The AJCC developed this staging system for evaluating trends in the treatment and control of cancer. This staging system is used by physicians to estimate prognosis, plan treatment, evaluate new types of therapy, analyze outcomes, design follow-up strategies, and to assess early detection results.

Instructions for Coding
- The clinical M staging element must be recorded for *Class of Case* 10-22.
- It is strongly recommended that the clinical M staging element be recorded for *Class of Case* 00 cases if the patient's workup at the facility allows coding of clinical M.
- Record clinical M as documented by the first treating physician or managing physician in the medical record.
- If the managing physician has not recorded clinical M, registrars *will* code this item based on the best available information, without necessarily requiring additional contact with the physician.
- Refer to the current *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual* for staging rules.

Code	Definition
(leave blank)	Not recorded.
X (AJCC editions 1-6 only)	MX
0	M0
0+	M0+
1	M1
1A	M1a
1B	M1b
1C	M1c
1D	M1d
1E	M1e
88	Not applicable

Clinical Stage Group

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	970	4	06/05, 09/06, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the anatomic extent of disease based on the T, N, and M elements known **prior** to the start of any therapy.

Rationale
The CoC requires that AJCC TNM staging be used in its accredited cancer programs. Effective January 1, 2008 the CoC requires that AJCC Clinical TNM staging be recorded in its accredited cancer program cancer registries. The AJCC developed this staging system for evaluating trends in the treatment and control of cancer. This staging system is used by physicians to estimate prognosis, plan treatment, evaluate new types of therapy, analyze outcomes, design follow-up strategies, and to assess early detection results.

Instructions for Coding
- Record the clinical stage group as documented by the first treating physician or the managing physician in the medical record.
- If the managing physician has not recorded the clinical stage, registrars *will* code this item based on the best available information, without necessarily requiring additional contact with the physician.
- To assign stage group when some, but not all, of the T, N, and/or M components can be determined, interpret the missing components as "X".
- If the value is only one digit, then record to the left and leave the second space blank.
- Truncate the least significant subdivision of the category from the right as needed.
- Convert all Roman numerals to Arabic numerals and use upper-case (capital letters) only.
- Refer to the current *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual* for staging rules.

Code	Definition	Code	Definition
0	Stage 0	2C	Stage IIC
0A	Stage 0A	3	Stage III
0IS	Stage 0is	3A	Stage IIIA
1	Stage I	3B	Stage IIIB
1A	Stage IA	3C	Stage IIIC
1A1	Stage IA1	3C1	Stage IIIC1
1A2	Stage IA2	3C2	Stage IIIC2
1B	Stage IB	4	Stage IV
1B1	Stage IB1	4A	Stage IVA
1B2	Stage IB2	4A1	Stage IVA1
1C	Stage IC	4A2	Stage IVA2
1S	Stage IS	4B	Stage IVB
2	Stage II	4C	Stage IVC
2A	Stage IIA	OC	Occult
2A1	Stage IIA1	88	Not applicable
2A2	Stage IIA2	99	Unknown
2B	Stage IIB		

Clinical Staged By

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	990	1	09/04, 09/06, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the person who documented the clinical AJCC staging elements and the stage group.

Rationale
Effective January 1, 2008 the CoC requires that AJCC Clinical TNM staging be recorded in its accredited cancer program cancer registries. Data captured in this field can be used to evaluate the accuracy and completeness of physician staging and form the basis for quality management and improvement studies.

Instructions for Coding
- Record the person who documented the clinical AJCC staging elements and the Stage Group.
- If code 1, 2, or 5 is used, then all of the staging elements (T, N, and M) must be recorded by the same person.
- The staging elements (T, N, M) and the Stage Group must be recorded.

Code	Label	Definition
0	Not staged	Clinical staging was not assigned.
1	Managing physician	Clinical staging was assigned by the managing physician.
2	Pathologist	Clinical staging was assigned by the pathologist only.
3	Pathologist and managing physician	Clinical staging was assigned by the pathologist and the managing physician.
4	Cancer Committee chair, cancer liaison physician, or registry physician advisor	Clinical staging was assigned by the Cancer Committee chair, cancer liaison physician, or the registry physician advisor during a quality control review.
5	Cancer registrar	Clinical staging was assigned by the cancer registrar only.
6	Cancer registrar and physician	Clinical staging was assigned by the cancer registrar and any of the physicians specified in codes 1-4.
7	Staging assigned at another facility	Clinical staging was assigned by a physician at another facility.
8	Case is not eligible for staging	An AJCC staging scheme has not been developed for this site. The histology is excluded from an AJCC site scheme.
9	Unknown; not stated in the patient record	It is unknown whether or not the case was staged.

Note: Staging assigned by residents or fellows and co-signed by a faculty or attending physician meets the requirement for physician staging. Staging assigned by medical students, cancer registrars, or other non-physician professionals does not meet the requirement for physician staging.

Pathologic T

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	880	4	09/04, 09/06, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Evaluates the primary tumor (T) and reflects the tumor size and/or extension of the tumor known ***following*** the completion of surgical therapy.

Rationale
The CoC requires that AJCC TNM staging be used in its accredited cancer programs. The AJCC developed this staging system for evaluating trends in the treatment and control of cancer. This staging system is used by physicians to estimate prognosis, plan treatment, evaluate new types of therapy, analyze outcomes, design follow-up strategies, and to assess early detection results.

Instructions for Coding
- Code pathologic T as documented by the treating physician(s) or the managing physician in the medical record.
- If the managing physician has not recorded pathologic T, registrars *should* code this item based on the best available information, without necessarily requiring additional contact with the physician.
- Truncate the least significant subdivision of the category from the right as needed.
- For lung, occult carcinoma is coded TX.
- The CoC recommends that pathologic T be recorded for *Class of Case* 10-22 cases diagnosed on or after January 1, 2008.

Code	Definition	Code	Definition
(leave blank)	Not recorded.	2A	T2a
X	TX	2A1	T2a1
0	T0	2A2	T2a2
A	Ta	2B	T2b
IS	Tis	2C	T2c
ISPU	Tispu	2D	T2d
ISPD	Tispd	3	T3
1MI	T1mi, T1 mic	3A	T3a
1	T1	3B	T3b
1A	T1a	3C	T3c
1A1	T1a1	3D	T3d
1A2	T1a2	4	T4
1B	T1b	4A	T4a
1B1	T1b1	4B	T4b
1B2	T1b2	4C	T4c
1C	T1c	4D	T4d
1D	T1d	4E	T4e
2	T2	88	Not applicable

Pathologic N

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	890	4	09/04,09/06, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the absence or presence of regional lymph node (N) metastasis and describes the extent of regional lymph node metastasis of the tumor known ***following*** the completion of surgical therapy.

Rationale
The CoC requires that AJCC TNM staging be used in its accredited cancer programs. The AJCC developed this staging system for evaluating trends in the treatment and control of cancer. This staging system is used by physicians to estimate prognosis, plan treatment, evaluate new types of therapy, analyze outcomes, design follow-up strategies, and to assess early detection results.

Instructions for Coding
- Code pathologic N as documented by the treating physician(s) or managing physician in the medical record.
- If the managing physician has not recorded pathologic N, registrars *should* code this item based on the best available information, without necessarily requiring additional contact with the physician.
- Refer to the current *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual* for staging rules.
- The CoC recommends that pathologic N be recorded for *Class of Case* 10-22 cases diagnosed on or after January 1, 2008.

Code	Definition	Code	Definition
(leave blank)	Not recorded.	1B	N1b
X	NX	1C	N1c
0	N0	2	N2
0I-	N0i-	2A	N2a
0I+	N0i+	2B	N2b
0M-	N0m-	2C	N2c
0m+	N0m+	3	N3
1MI	N1mi	3A	N3a
0A	N0a	3B	N3b
0B	N0b	3C	N3c
1	N1	4	N4
1A	N1a	88	Not applicable

Pathologic M

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	900	4	09/04, 09/06, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the presence or absence of distant metastasis (M) of the tumor known ***following*** the completion of surgical therapy.

Rationale
The CoC requires that AJCC TNM staging be used in its accredited cancer programs. The AJCC developed this staging system for evaluating trends in the treatment and control of cancer. This staging system is used by physicians to estimate prognosis, plan treatment, evaluate new types of therapy, analyze outcomes, design follow-up strategies, and to assess early detection results.

Instructions for Coding
- Code pathologic M as documented by the treating physician(s) or the managing physician in the medical record.
- If the managing physician has not recorded pathologic M, registrars *should* code this item based on the best available information, without necessarily requiring additional contact with the treating physician(s)
- Refer to the current *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual* for staging rules.
- The CoC recommends that pathologic M be recorded for *Class of Case* 10-22 cases diagnosed on or after January 1, 2008.

Code	Definition
(leave blank)	Not recorded.
X (AJCC editions 1-6 only)	MX (AJCC editions 1-6 only)
0 (AJCC editions 1-6 only)	M0 (AJCC editions 1-6 only)
0+	M0+
1	M1
1A	M1a
1B	M1b
1C	M1c
1D	M1d
1E	M1e
88	Not applicable

Pathologic Stage Group

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	910	4	06/05, 09/06, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the anatomic extent of disease based on the T, N, and M elements known ***following*** the completion of surgical therapy.

Rationale
The CoC requires that AJCC TNM staging be used in its accredited cancer programs. The AJCC developed this staging system for evaluating trends in the treatment and control of cancer. This staging system is used by physicians to estimate prognosis, plan treatment, evaluate new types of therapy, analyze outcomes, design follow-up strategies, and to assess early detection results.

Instructions for Coding
- Record the pathologic stage group as documented by the treating physician(s) or the managing physician in the medical record.
- If the managing physician has not recorded the pathologic stage, registrars *should* code this item based on the best available information, without necessarily requiring additional contact with the physician(s).
- To assign stage group when some, but not all, of the T, N, and/or M components can be determined, interpret the missing components as "X".
- If pathologic M is coded as either X or blank and clinical M is coded as 0, 1, 1A, 1B, or 1C, then the combination of staging elements pT, pN, and cM may be used to complete the pathologic stage group.
- If the value is only one digit, then record to the left and leave the second space blank.
- Convert all Roman numerals to Arabic numerals and use upper-case (capital letters) only.
- Refer to the current *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual* for staging rules.
- The CoC recommends that pathologic stage group be recorded for *Class of Case* 10-22 cases diagnosed on or after January 1, 2008.

Code	Definition	Code	Definition
0	Stage 0	2C	Stage IIC
0A	Stage 0A	3	Stage III
0IS	Stage 0is	3A	Stage IIIA
1	Stage I	3B	Stage IIIB
1A	Stage IA	3C	Stage IIIC
1A1	Stage IA1	3C1	Stage IIIC1
1A2	Stage IA2	3C2	Stage IIIC2
1B	Stage IB	4	Stage IV
1B1	Stage IB1	4A	Stage IVA
1B2	Stage IB2	4A1	Stage IVA1
1C	Stage IC	4A2	Stage IVA2
1S	Stage IS	4B	Stage IVB
2	Stage II	4C	Stage IVC
2A	Stage IIA	OC	Occult
2A1	Stage IIA1	88	Not applicable
2A2	Stage IIA2	99	Unknown
2B	Stage IIB		

Pathologic Staged By

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	930	1	09/04, 09/06, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the person who recorded the pathologic AJCC staging elements.

Rationale
Data captured in this field can be used to evaluate the accuracy and completeness of staging and form the basis for quality management and improvement studies.

Instructions for Coding
- Record the person who documented the pathologic AJCC staging elements and the stage group.
- If code 1, 2, or 5 is used, then all of the staging elements (T, N, and M) and stage group must be recorded by the same person.
- The staging elements (T, N, M) and the stage group must be recorded.

Code	Label	Definition
0	Not staged	Pathologic staging was not assigned.
1	Managing physician	Pathologic staging was assigned by the managing physician.
2	Pathologist	Pathologic staging was assigned by the pathologist only.
3	Pathologist and managing physician	Pathologic staging was assigned by the pathologist and the managing physician.
4	Cancer Committee chair, cancer liaison physician, or registry physician advisor	Pathologic staging was assigned by the Cancer Committee chair, cancer liaison physician, or the registry physician advisor during a quality control review.
5	Cancer registrar	Pathologic staging was assigned by the cancer registrar only.
6	Cancer registrar and physician	Pathologic staging was assigned by the cancer registrar and any of the physicians specified in codes 1-4.
7	Staging assigned at another facility	Pathologic staging was assigned by a physician at another facility.
8	Case is not eligible for staging	An AJCC staging scheme has not been developed for this site. The histology is excluded from an AJCC site scheme.
9	Unknown; not stated in the patient record	It is unknown whether or not the case was staged.

Note: Staging assigned by residents or fellows and co-signed by a faculty or attending physician meets the requirement for physician staging. Staging assigned by medical students, cancer registrars, or other non-physician professionals does not meet the requirement for physician staging

.

Collaborative Staging

Collaborative Staging (CS) is to be used for cases diagnosed on or after January 1, 2004. It is not to be used for cases diagnosed prior to that date.

How Collaborative Staging Works

Collaborative Staging was designed for registrar use. It relieves registrars from the necessity of staging a single case according to more than one staging system. It avoids the problems that can occur when it is necessary to consider multiple pieces of information simultaneously to assign a single code. For Collaborative Staging, registrars code discrete pieces of information once and the CS computer algorithm derives the values for AJCC 6th and 7th editions of the **AJCC Cancer Staging Manual** T, N, M, and Stage Group, Summary Stage 1977, and Summary Stage 2000. The derived stage codes are ideally suited for data analysis because of the consistency that can be obtained with objectively-recorded, identically-processed data items.

The timing rule for CS coding was designed to make use of the most complete information possible to yield the "best stage" information for the tumor at the time of diagnosis— "use all information gathered through completion of surgery(ies) in first course of treatment or all information available within four months of the date of diagnosis in the absence of disease progression, whichever is *longer*." Disease progression is defined as further direct extension or distant metastasis known to have developed after the diagnosis was established. Information about tumor extension, lymph node involvement, or distant metastasis obtained after disease progression is documented should be excluded from the CS coding.

The following CS data items are coded by the registrar. Items with an asterisk (*) have site-specific variations for some codes.

- *CS Tumor Size**
- *CS Extension**
- *CS Tumor Size/Ext Eval*
- *CS Lymph Nodes**
- *CS Reg Lymph Nodes Eval*
- *Regional Lymph Nodes Examined*
- *Regional Lymph Nodes Positive*
- *CS Mets at DX **
- *CS Mets at DX – Bone*
- *CS Mets at DX – Brain*
- *CS Mets at DX – Liver*
- *CS Mets at DX – Lung*
- *CS Mets Eval*
- *CS Site-Specific Factors 1-25*, for some sites*

The CS algorithm produces the output items listed below. The derived AJCC items are separate from the physician-coded items; and the derived Summary Stage items are separate from the manually-coded items collected by the CoC in the past. The derived items must never be manually altered.

- *Derived AJCC-6 and AJCC-7 T*
- *Derived AJCC-6 and AJCC-7 T Descriptor*
- *Derived AJCC-6 and AJCC-7 N*
- *Derived AJCC-6 and AJCC-7 N Descriptor*
- *Derived AJCC-6 and AJCC-7 M*
- *Derived AJCC-6 and AJCC-7 M Descriptor*
- *Derived AJCC-6 and AJCC-7 Stage Group*
- *Derived SS1977*
- *Derived SS2000*

All derived items are assigned a "storage value", which is stored in the computer and used for data transmission and analysis, and an associated "display value" which is displayed on the computer screen or in printed reports. The display values (for example, "N3c") were designed to be familiar and readily interpretable to registrars and physicians.

Like the AJCC and Summary Stage codes that are derived from it, CS is a site-specific staging system. The CS algorithm uses tumor site and histology to determine which CS schema to apply. Collaborative Staging codes are defined for every site and histology combination. The *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual* does not cover all sites, and some histologies are excluded from sites with an AJCC coding scheme. When the CS algorithm processes a site-histology combination that does not have an applicable AJCC code, it assigns the display string "NA" for "Not applicable." A blank display string for a derived item means the CS algorithm was not run for the case.

Coding CS Items

The complete instructions and site-histology defined codes are available in the current version of **Collaborative Stage Data Collection System**.

See the definitions for the Site Specific Factors in this manual for the requirements for staging for cases diagnosed in 2010. This list is likely to change in future years.

Using CS Derived Values

Some differences in the ways that the CS algorithm operates and how the AJCC stage assignment rules are made can result in differences between the derived values for some patients and the direct-coded stages. The differences of most interest to registrars are those that might explain discrepancies between the derived AJCC T, N, M and Stage Group values and the values recorded for the same cases by physicians.

As a "best stage" system, CS makes use of the most complete information available to stage the tumor. The *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual* distinguishes between clinical staging, based on information available prior to primary treatment, and pathologic staging, based on information gathered as a product of the treatment process (particularly surgery). It also has specific rules governing how the components gathered at different times in the process may be combined. The CS algorithm derives a clinical (c) or pathologic (p) descriptor for each of the T, N and M stage components based on the source of information used to validate the most extensive spread of the tumor, and uses the components to derive a stage group without reference to the value of the descriptors. Some derived stage groups may involve combinations that are neither clinical nor pathologic according to AJCC rules, so a case that is unstageable for a physician applying AJCC rules may be assigned a Derived AJCC Stage Group value by the CS algorithm. Other cases may involve combinations that do not match either the physician-assigned clinical stage or the pathologic stage.

CS Tumor Size

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2800	3	09/06, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Records the largest dimension or diameter of the **primary tumor** in millimeters.

Rationale
Tumor size at diagnosis is an independent prognostic indicator for many tumors and it is used by Collaborative Staging to derive some TNM-T codes.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

CS Extension

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2810	3	09/06, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies contiguous growth (extension) of the primary tumor within the organ of origin or its direct extension into neighboring organs. For certain sites such as ovary, discontinuous metastasis is coded in *CS Extension*.

Rationale
Tumor extension at diagnosis is a prognostic indicator used by Collaborative Staging to derive some TNM-T codes and some SEER Summary Stage codes.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

CS Tumor Size/Extension Evaluation

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2820	1	09/06, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Records how the codes for the two items *CS Tumor Size* and *CS Extension* were determined, based on the diagnostic methods employed.

Rationale
This item is used by Collaborative Staging to describe whether the staging basis for the TNM-T code is clinical or pathological and to record applicable prefix and suffix descriptors used with TNM staging.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

CS Lymph Nodes

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2830	3	09/06, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the regional lymph nodes involved with cancer at the time of diagnosis.

Rationale
The involvement of specific regional lymph nodes is a prognostic indicator used by Collaborative Staging to derive some TNM-N codes and SEER Summary Stage codes.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

CS Regional Nodes Evaluation

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2840	1	09/06, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Records how the code for *CS Lymph Nodes* was determined, based on the diagnostic methods employed.

Rationale
This data item is used by Collaborative Staging to describe whether the staging basis for the TNM-N code is clinical or pathological and to record applicable prefix and suffix descriptors used with TNM staging.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

Regional Lymph Nodes Positive

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	820	2	01/04, 09/06, 01/10	Required

Description
Records the exact number of regional lymph nodes examined by the pathologist and found to contain metastases. Beginning with cases diagnosed on or after January 1, 2004, this item is a component of the Collaborative Staging System (CS).

Rationale
This data item is necessary for pathologic staging, and it serves as a quality measure for pathology reports and the extent of the surgical evaluation and treatment of the patient.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site/histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for codes and instructions for coding.

Regional Lymph Nodes Examined

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	830	2	01/04, 09/06, 01/10	Required

Description
Records the total number of regional lymph nodes that were removed and examined by the pathologist. Beginning with cases diagnosed on or after January 1, 2004, this item is a component of the Collaborative Staging System (CS).

Rationale
This data item is a quality measure of the pathologic and surgical evaluation and treatment of the patient.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site/histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for codes and instructions for coding.

Lymph-Vascular Invasion

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	1182	1	New 01/10	Optional

Description
Indicates the presence or absence of tumor cells in the lymphatic channels (not lymph nodes) or blood vessels within the primary tumor as noted microscopically by the pathologist.

Rationale
Lymph-vascular invasion is an indicator of prognosis. This field is used by CS algorithm to map AJCC T for some primary sites.

Instructions for Coding
- This item may be left blank for cases diagnosed prior to 2010.
- The primary source of this information is the College of American Pathologists (CAP) synoptic report or checklist. If that is not available, code from the pathology report or a physician's statement, in that order of priority.
- Use code 1 if lymph-vascular is identified anywhere in a primary tumor specimen.
- Use code 0 if the pathology report indicates no lymph-vascular invasion was found.
- Use code 8 if no pathologic examination of primary site tissue was performed.
- Use code 8 for histologies 9590-9992.
- Use code 9 if primary site tissue was sent to pathology, but no report based on it is available (the report cannot be found or surgery was at a different facility and the information was not provided to the reporting facility).
- Use code 9 if the pathology report indicates that the presence of lymph-vascular invasion could not be determined.

Code	Definition
0	Lymph-vascular invasion is not present (absent) or is not identified
1	Lymph-vascular invasion is present or identified
8	Not applicable
9	Unknown or indeterminate

CS Metastasis at Diagnosis

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2850	2	09/06, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the distant site(s) of metastatic involvement at time of diagnosis.

Rationale
The presence of metastatic disease at diagnosis is an independent prognostic indicator, and it is used by Collaborative Staging to derive TNM-M codes and SEER Summary Stage codes.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

CS Metastasis Evaluation

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2860	1	09/06, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Records how the code for *CS Mets at DX* was determined based on the diagnostic methods employed.

Rationale
This data item is used by Collaborative Staging to describe whether the staging basis for the TNM-M code is clinical or pathological and to record applicable prefix and suffix descriptors used with TNM staging.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

CS Metastasis at Diagnosis - Bone

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2851	1	New 01/10	Recommended

Description
Identifies the presence of distant metastatic involvement of bone at time of diagnosis.

Rationale
The presence of metastatic bone disease at diagnosis is an independent prognostic indicator, and it is used by Collaborative Staging to derive TNM-M codes and SEER Summary Stage codes.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

CS Metastasis at Diagnosis – Brain

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2852	1	New 01/10	Recommended

Description
Identifies the presence of distant metastatic involvement of the brain at time of diagnosis.

Rationale
The presence of metastatic brain disease at diagnosis is an independent prognostic indicator, and it is used by Collaborative Staging to derive TNM-M codes and SEER Summary Stage codes.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

CS Metastasis at Diagnosis - Liver

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
`	2853	1	New 01/10	Recommended

Description
Identifies the presence of distant metastatic involvement of the liver at time of diagnosis.

Rationale
The presence of metastatic liver disease at diagnosis is an independent prognostic indicator, and it is used by Collaborative Staging to derive TNM-M codes and SEER Summary Stage codes.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

CS Metastasis at Diagnosis - Lung

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2854	1	New 01/10	Recommended

Description
Identifies the presence of distant metastatic involvement of the lung at time of diagnosis.

Rationale
The presence of metastatic lung disease at diagnosis is an independent prognostic indicator, and it is used by Collaborative Staging to derive TNM-M codes and SEER Summary Stage codes.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

CS Site-Specific Factor 1

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2880	3	09/06, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies additional information needed to generate stage or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Rationale
Site-specific factors are used to record additional staging information needed by Collaborative Staging to derive TNM and/or SEER Summary Stage codes for particular site-histology schema.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

For tumors diagnosed in 2010, the following Site-Specific Factor 1 (SSF1) items are *required* by CoC to be coded. Registries are *encouraged* to code any other prognostic SSF1s used by the facility.

CS Schema	Sites	Histologies	Site-Specific Factor 1
Head and Neck*	See note after this table	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Size of Lymph Nodes
Mucosal Melanoma**	See note after this table	8720-8790	Size of Lymph Nodes
Esophagus	C15.0-5,8,9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Clinical Assessment of Regional Lymph Nodes
Esophagus GE Junction	C16.0-2	8000-8152, 8154-8231, 8243-8245, 8247-8248, 8250-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Clinical Assessment of Regional Lymph Nodes
Stomach	C16.1-6,8-9	8000-8152, 8154-8231, 8243-8245, 8247-8248, 8250-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8990	Clinical Assessment of Regional Lymph Nodes
NET Stomach	C16.0-6,8-9	8153, 8240-8242, 8246, 8249	Clinical Assessment of Regional Lymph Nodes
Small Intestine	C17.0-3,8-9	8000-8152, 8154-8231, 8243-8245, 8247-8248, 8250-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Carcinoembryonic Antigen (CEA)
Colon	C18.0,2-9	8000-8152, 8154-8231, 8243-8245, 8247-8248, 8250-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Carcinoembryonic Antigen (CEA)
Appendix	C18.1	8000-8152, 8154-8231, 8243-8245, 8247-8248, 8250-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Carcinoembryonic Antigen (CEA)
Rectum	C19.9; C20.9	8000-8152, 8154-8231, 8243-8245, 8247-8248, 8250-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Carcinoembryonic Antigen (CEA)
Liver	C22.0-1	8170-8175	Alpha Fetoprotein (AFP) Interpretation
Lung	C34.0-3,8-9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Separate Tumor Nodules / Ipsilateral Lung
Heart Mediastinum	C38.0-3,8	8800-8936, 8940-9136, 9141-9582	Grade for Sarcomas
Pleura	C38.4	9050-9053	Pleural Effusion
Skin	C44.0,2-9	8000-8246, 8248-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Measured Thickness (Depth)
Melanoma Skin	C44.0-9; C51.0-2,8-9; C60.0-2,8-9; C63.2	8270-8290	Measured Thickness (Depth, Breslow's Measurement
Merkel Cell Skin	C44.0,2-9	8247	Measured Thickness (Depth)
Merkel Cell Vulva	C51.0-2,8-9	8247	Measured Thickness (Depth)
Merkel Cell Penis	C60.0-2,8-9	8247	Measured Thickness (Depth)

Merkel Cell Scrotum	C63.2	8247	Measured Thickness (Depth)
Soft Tissue	C47.0-6,8-9; C49.0-6,8-9	8800-8936, 8940-9136, 9141-9582	Grade for Sarcomas
Retroperitoneum	C48.0	8800-8921, 8940-9136, 9141-9582	Grade for Sarcomas
Peritoneum	C48.0-2,8	8800-8921, 8940-9055, 9120-9136, 9141-9582	Grade for Sarcomas
Peritoneum Female Genital	C48.0-2,8 (Females only)	8000-8576, 8590-8671, 8930-8934, 8940-9110	Carbohydrate Antigen 125 (CA 125)
Breast	C50.0-6,8-9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981, 9020	Estrogen Receptor Assay (ERA)
Vagina	C52.9	8000-8576, 8800-8801, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	FIGO Stage
Cervix	C53.0-1,8-9	80000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	FIGO Stage
Corpus Adenosarcoma	C54.0-3,8-9; C55.9	8933	FIGO Stage
Corpus Carcinoma	C54.0-3,8-9; C55.9	8000-8790, 8980-8981, 9700-9701	FIGO Stage
Corpus Sarcoma	C54.0-3,8-9; C55.9	8890-8898, 8930-8931	FIGO Stage
Ovary	C56.9	8000-8576, 8590-8671, 8930-9110	Carbohydrate Antigen 125 (CA 125)
Fallopian Tube	C57.0	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	FIGO Stage
Placenta	C58.9	9100-9105	Prognostic Scoring Index
Prostate	C61.9	8000-8110, 8140-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Prostate Specific Antigen (PSA) Lab Value
Scrotum	C63.2	8000-8246, 8248-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Measured Thickness (Depth)
Kidney Parenchyma	C64.9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Invasion Beyond Capsule
Kidney Renal Pelvis	C65.9; C66.9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	WHO/ISUP Grade
Bladder	C67.0-9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	WHO/ISUP Grade
Urethra	C68.0	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	WHO/ISUP Grade
Retinoblastoma	C69.0-5,8-9	9510-9514	Extension Evaluated at Enucleation
Lymphoma Ocular Adnexa	C44.1; C69.0,5,6	9590-9699, 9702-9738, 9811-9818, 9820-9837	Associated with HIV/AIDS
Conjunctiva	C69.0	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Tumor Size
Melanoma Conjunctiva	C69.0	8720-8790	Measured Thickness (Depth)
Brain	C70.0; C71.0-9	8000, 8680-9136, 9141-9582	WHO Grade Classification
CNS Other	C70.1,9; C72.0-5,8-9	8000, 8680-9136, 9141-9582	WHO Grade Classification
Thyroid	C73.9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Solitary vs. Multifocal Tumor
Intracranial Gland	C75.1-3	8000, 8680-9136, 9141-9582	WHO Grade Classification
Lymphoma	C00.0-C68.9; C70.0-C80.9	9590-9699, 9702-9729, 9735, 9737-9738	Associated with HIV/AIDS
Mycosis Fungoides	C44.0-C44.9; C51.0-C51.2; C51.8-C51.9; C60.0-C60.2; C60.8-C60.9; C63.2	9700-9701	Peripheral Blood Involvement
Heme Retic	M-9731-9734, 9740-9742, 9750-9758, 9760-9762, 9764-9769, 9800-9801, 9805, 9820, 9826, 9831-9837, 9840, 9860-9861, 9863, 9866-9867, 9870-9876, 9891, 9895-9897, 9910, 9920, 9930-9931, 9940, 9945-9946, 9948, 9950, 9960-9964, 9970, 9975, 9980, 9982-9987, 9989. M-9823 and 9827 for C42.0, C42.1, or C42.4 *only*. See *Collaborative Stage* for site detail.		JAK-2

* Head and Neck: C00.0-6,8,9; C01.9; C02.0-4,8,9; C03.0-1,9; C04.0-1,8,9; C05.0-2,8,9; C06.0-2,8,9; C07.9; C08.0-1,8,9; C09.0-1,8,9;C10.0-4,8,9; C11.0; C30.0; C31.0-3,8-9; C32.0-3,8,9

** Mucosal Melanoma: C00.0-6,8-9; C01.9; C02.0-4,8-9; C03.0-1,9; C04.0-1,8-9; C05.0-2,8-9; C06.0-2,8-9; C09.0-1,8-9; C10.0-4,8-9; C11.0-3,8-9; C12.9; C13.2,8-9; C14.0,2,8; C30.0-2,8-9; C31.0-3,8-9; C32.0-3,8-9

CS Site-Specific Factor 2

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2890	3	09/06, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies additional information needed to generate stage or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Rationale
Site-specific factors are used to record additional staging information needed by Collaborative Staging to derive TNM and/or SEER Summary Stage codes for particular site-histology schema.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

For tumors diagnosed in 2010, the following Site-Specific Factor 2 (SSF2) items are *required* by CoC to be coded. Registries are *encouraged* to code any other prognostic SSF2s used by the facility.

CS Schema	Sites	Histologies	Site-Specific Factor 2
Colon	C18.0,2-9	8000-8152, 8154-8231, 8243-8245, 8247-8248, 8250-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Clinical Assessment of Regional Lymph Nodes
NET Colon	C18.0,2-9	8153, 8240-8242, 8246, 8249	Clinical Assessment of Regional Lymph Nodes
Appendix	C18.1	8000-8152, 8154-8231, 8243-8245, 8247-8248, 8250-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Clinical Assessment of Regional Lymph Nodes
Carcinoid Appendix	C18.1	8153, 8240-8242, 8246, 8249	Clinical Assessment of Regional Lymph Nodes
Rectum	C19.9; C20.9	8000-8152, 8154-8231, 8243-8245, 8247-8248, 8250-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Clinical Assessment of Regional Lymph Nodes
NET Rectum	C19.9; C20.9	8153, 8240-8242, 8246, 8249	Clinical Assessment of Regional Lymph Nodes
Small Intestine	C17.0-3,8-9	8000-8152, 8154-8231, 8243-8245, 8247-8248, 8250-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Clinical Assessment of Regional Lymph Nodes
Liver	C22.0-1	8170-8175	Fibrosis Score
Lung	C34.0-3,8-9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Visceral Pleural Invasion (VPI) / Elastic Layer
Pleura	C38.4	9050-9053	Histologic Subtype
Melanoma Skin	C44.0-9; C51.0-2,8-9; C60.0-2,8-9; C63.2	8270-8290	Ulceration
Peritoneum Female Genital	C48.0-2,8 (Females only)	8000-8576, 8590-8671, 8930-8934, 8940-9110	FIGO Stage
Breast	C50.0-6,8-9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981, 9020	Progesterone Receptor Assay (PRA)
Vulva	C51.0-2,8-9	8000-8246, 8248-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	FIGO Stage
Vagina	C52.9	8000-8576, 8800-8801, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Pelvic Nodal Status
Corpus Adenosarcoma	C54.0-3,8-9; C55.9	8933	Peritoneal Cytology
Corpus Carcinoma	C54.0-3,8-9; C55.9	8000-8790, 8980-8981, 9700-9701	Peritoneal Cytology
Corpus Sarcoma	C54.0-3,8-9; C55.9	8890-8898, 8930-8931	Peritoneal Cytology
Ovary	C56.9	8000-8576, 8590-8671, 8930-9110	FIGO Stage
Placenta	C58.9	9100-9105	FIGO Stage

Prostate	C61.9	8000-8110, 8140-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Prostatic Specific Antigen (PSA) Interpretation
Kidney Parenchyma	C64.9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Vein Involvement
Kidney Renal Pelvis	C65.9; C66.9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Depth of Renal Parenchymal Invasion
Bladder	C67.0-9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Size of Metastasis in Lymph Nodes
Lymphoma Ocular Adnexa	C44.1; C69.0,5,6	9590-9699, 9702-9738, 9811-9818, 9820-9837	Systemic Symptoms at Diagnosis
Melanoma Conjunctiva	C69.0	8720-8790	Quadrants
Melanoma Choiroid	C69/3	8720-8790	Measured Basal Diameter
Melanoma Ciliary Body	C69.4	8720-8790	Measured Basal Diameter
Lymphoma	C00.0-C68.9; C70.0-C80.9	9590-9699, 9702-9729, 9735, 9737-9738	Systemic Symptoms at Diagnosis

CS Site-Specific Factor 3

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2900	3	09/06, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies additional information needed to generate stage or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Rationale
Site-specific factors are used to record additional staging information needed by Collaborative Staging to derive TNM and/or SEER Summary Stage codes for particular site-histology schema.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

For tumors diagnosed in 2010, the following Site-Specific Factor 3 (SSF3) items are *required* by CoC to be coded. Registries are *encouraged* to code any other prognostic SSF3s used by the facility.

CS Schema	Sites	Histologies	Site-Specific Factor 3
Head and Neck*	See note after this table	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Levels I-III Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck
Mucosal Melanoma**	See note after this table	8720-8790	Levels I-III Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck
Colon	C18.0,2-9	8000-8152, 8154-8231, 8243-8245, 8247-8248, 8250-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Carcinoembryonic Antigen (CEA) Lab Value
Appendix	C18.1	8000-8152, 8154-8231, 8243-8245, 8247-8248, 8250-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Carcinoembryonic Antigen (CEA) Lab Value
Rectum	C19.9; C20.9	8000-8152, 8154-8231, 8243-8245, 8247-8248, 8250-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Carcinoembryonic Antigen (CEA) Lab Value
Small Intestine	C17.0-3,8-9	8000-8152, 8154-8231, 8243-8245, 8247-8248, 8250-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Carcinoembryonic Antigen (CEA) Lab Value
Liver	C22.0-1	8170-8175	Alpha Fetoprotein (AFP) Lab Value
Heart Mediastinum	C38.0-3,8	8800-8936, 8940-9136, 9141-9582	Bone Invasion
Bone	C40.0-3,8-9;C41.0-4,8-9	8800-9136, 9142-9582	% Necrosis Post-Neoadjuvant Chemotherapy
Skin Eyelid	C44.1	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Perineural Invasion
Melanoma Skin	C44.0-9; C51.0-2,8-9; C60.0-2,8-9; C63.2	8270-8290	Clinical Status of Lymph Node Metastasis
Merkel Cell Skin	C44.0,2-9	8247	Clinical Status of Lymph Node Metastasis
Merkel Cell Vulva	C51.0-2,8-9	8247	Clinical Status of Lymph Node Metastasis
Merkel Cell Penis	C60.0-2,8-9	8247	Clinical Status of Lymph Node Metastasis
Merkel Cell Scrotum	C63.2	8247	Clinical Status of Lymph Node Metastasis
Soft Tissue	C47.0-6,8-9; C49.0-6,8-9	8800-8820, 8823-8935, 8940-9136, 9142-9582	Bone Invasion
Peritoneum Female Genital	C48.0-2,8 (Females only)	8000-8576, 8590-8671, 8930-8934, 8940-9110	Residual Tumor Status and Size After Primary Cytoreduction Surgery

Breast	C50.0-6,8-9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981, 9020	Number of Positive Ipsilateral Level I-II Axillary Lymph Nodes
Vagina	C52.9	8000-8576, 8800-8801, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Assessment Method of Nodal Pelvis Status
Corpus Adenosarcoma	C54.0-3,8-9; C55.9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Number of Positive Pelvic Lymph Nodes
Corpus Carcinoma	C54.0-3,8-9; C55.9	8000-8790, 8980-8981, 9700-9701	Number of Positive Pelvic Lymph Nodes
Corpus Sarcoma	C54.0-3,8-9; C55.9	8890-8898, 8930-8931	Number of Positive Pelvic Lymph Nodes
Ovary	C56.9	8000-8576, 8590-8671, 8930-9110	Residual Tumor Status and Size After Primary Cytoreduction Surgery
Prostate	C61.9	8000-8110, 8140-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	CS Extension – Pathologic Extension
Kidney Parenchyma	C64.9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Ipsilateral Adrenal Gland Involvement
Bladder	C67.0-9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Extranodal Extension of Regional Lymph Nodes
Lymphoma Ocular Adnexa	C44.1; C69.0,5,6	9590-9699, 9702-9738, 9811-9818, 9820-9837	International Prognostic Index (IPI)
Melanoma Choroid	C69.3	8720-8790	Measured Thickness (Depth)
Melanoma Ciliary Body	C69.4	8720-8790	Measured Thickness (Depth)
Melanoma Iris	C69.4 (Iris)	8720-8790	Measured Thickness (Depth)
Lymphoma	C00.0-C68.9; C70.0-C80.9	9590-9699, 9702-9729, 9735, 9737-9738	International Prognostic Index (IPI)

* Head and Neck: C00.0-6,8,9; C01.9; C02.0-4,8,9; C03.0-1,9; C04.0-1,8,9; C05.0-2,8,9; C06.0-2,8,9; C07.9; C08.0-1,8,9; C09.0-1,8,9;C10.0-4,8,9; C11.0; C30.0; C31.0-3,8-9; C32.0-3,8,9

** Mucosal Melanoma: C00.0-6,8-9; C01.9; C02.0-4,8-9; C03.0-1,9; C04.0-1,8-9; C05.0-2,8-9; C06.0-2,8-9; C09.0-1,8-9; C10.0-4,8-9; C11.0-3,8-9; C12.9; C13.2,8-9; C14.0,2,8; C30.0-2,8-9; C31.0-3,8-9; C32.0-3,8-9

CS Site-Specific Factor 4

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2910	3	09/06, 01/09, 01/10	Required if available

Description
Identifies additional information needed to generate stage or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Rationale
Site-specific factors are used to record additional staging information needed by Collaborative Staging to derive TNM and/or SEER Summary Stage codes for particular site-histology schema.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

For tumors diagnosed in 2010, the following Site-Specific Factor 4 (SSF4) items are *required* by CoC to be coded. Registries are *encouraged* to code any other prognostic SSF4s used by the facility.

CS Schema	Sites	Histologies	Site-Specific Factor 4
Head and Neck*	See note after this table	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck
Mucosal Melanoma**	See note after this table	8720-8790	Levels IV-V and Retropharyngeal Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck
Colon	C18.0,2-9	8000-8152, 8154-8231, 8243-8245, 8247-8248, 8250-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Tumor Deposits
Rectum	C19,9; C20.9	8000-8152, 8154-8231, 8243-8245, 8247-8248, 8250-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Tumor Deposit
Liver	C22.0-1	8170-8175	Creatinine Value
Melanoma Skin	C44.0-9; C51.0-2,8-9; C60.0-2,8-9; C63.2	8270-8290	LDH
Breast	C50.0-6,8-9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981, 9020	Immunohistochemistry (IHC) of Regional Lymph Nodes
Vagina	C52.9	8000-8576, 8800-8801, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Para-Aortic Nodal Status
Corpus Adenosarcoma	C54.0-3,8-9; C55.9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Number of Examined Pelvic Nodes
Corpus Carcinoma	C54.0-3,8-9; C55.9	8000-8790, 8980-8981, 9700-9701	Number of Examined Pelvic Nodes
Corpus Sarcoma	C54.0-3,8-9; C55.9	8890-8898, 8930-8931	Number of Examined Pelvic Nodes
Fallopian Tube	C57.0	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Number of Positive Pelvic Nodes
Testis	C62.0-1,9	8000-8576, 8590-8593, 8940-8950, 8980-8981, 9060-9090, 9100-9105	Radical Orchiectomy Performed
Kidney Parenchyma	C64.9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Sarcomatoid Features
Melanoma Choroid	C69.3	8720-8790	Size of Largest Metastasis
Melanoma Iris	C69.4	8720-8790	Size of Largest Metastasis
Melanoma Ciliary Body	C69.4	8720-8790	Size of Largest Metastasis
Lacrimal Gland	C69.5	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Perineural Invasion
Brain	C70.0, C71.0-9	8000, 8680-9136, 9141-9282	MGMT – Methylation of MGMT
CNS Other	C70.1,9; C72.0-5,8-9	8000, 8680-9136, 9141-9582	MGMT – Methylation of MGMT

* Head and Neck: C00.0-6,8,9; C01.9; C02.0-4,8,9; C03.0-1,9; C04.0-1,8,9; C05.0-2,8,9; C06.0-2,8,9; C07.9; C08.0-1,8,9; C09.0-1,8,9;C10.0-4,8,9; C11.0; C30.0; C31.0-3,8-9; C32.0-3,8,9
** Mucosal Melanoma: C00.0-6,8-9; C01.9; C02.0-4,8-9; C03.0-1,9; C04.0-1,8-9; C05.0-2,8-9; C06.0-2,8-9; C09.0-1,8-9; C10.0-4,8-9; C11.0-3,8-9; C12.9; C13.2,8-9; C14.0,2,8; C30.0-2,8-9; C31.0-3,8-9; C32.0-3,8-9

CS Site-Specific Factor 5

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2920	3	09/06, 01/09, 01/10	Required if available

Description
Identifies additional information needed to generate stage or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Rationale
Site-specific factors are used to record additional staging information needed by Collaborative Staging to derive TNM and/or SEER Summary Stage codes for particular site-histology schema.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

For tumors diagnosed in 2010, the following Site-Specific Factor 5 (SSF5) items are *required* by CoC to be coded. Registries are *encouraged* to code any other prognostic SSF5s used by the facility.

CS Schema	Sites	Histologies	Site-Specific Factor 5
Head and Neck*	See note after this table	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes of Head and Neck
Mucosal Melanoma**	See note after this table	8720-8790	Levels VI-VII and Facial Lymph Nodes of Head and Neck
Liver	C22.0-1	8170-8175	Creatinine Unit of Measure
NET Ampulla	C24.1	8153, 8240-8242, 8246, 8249	Serum Chromogranin A (CgA) Lab Value
Melanoma Skin	C44.0-9; C51.0-2,8-9; C60.0-2,8-9; C63.2	8270-8290	LDH Value
GIST Peritoneum	C48.0-2,8	8935-8936	Mitotic Count
Breast	C50.0-6,8-9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981, 9020	Molecular Studies of Regional Lymph Nodes
Vagina	C52.9	8000-8576, 8800-8801, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Assessment of Para-Aortic Nodal Status
Corpus Adenosarcoma	C54.0-3,8-9; C55.9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Number of Positive Para-Aortic Lymph Nodes
Corpus Carcinoma	C54.0-3,8-9; C55.9	8000-8790, 8980-8981, 9700-9701	Number of Positive Para-Aortic Lymph Nodes
Corpus Sarcoma	C54.0-3,8-9; C55.9	8890-8898, 8930-8931	Number of Positive Para-Aortic Lymph Nodes
Fallopian Tube	C57.0	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Number of Examined Pelvic Lymph Nodes
Testis	C62.0-1,9	8000-8576, 8590-8593, 8940-8950, 8980-8981, 9060-9090, 9100-9105	Size of Metastasis in Lymph Nodes
Melanoma Iris	C69.4 (Iris)	8720-8790	Chromosome 3 Status
Brain	C70.0, C71.0-9	8000, 8680-9136, 9141-9582	Gene Deletions 1p
CNS Other	C70.1,9; C72.0-5,8-9	8000, 8680-9136, 9141-9582	Gene Deletions 1p

* Head and Neck: C00.0-6,8,9; C01.9; C02.0-4,8,9; C03.0-1,9; C04.0-1,8,9; C05.0-2,8,9; C06.0-2,8,9; C07.9; C08.0-1,8,9; C09.0-1,8,9;C10.0-4,8,9; C11.0; C30.0; C31.0-3,8-9; C32.0-3,8,9
** Mucosal Melanoma: C00.0-6,8-9; C01.9; C02.0-4,8-9; C03.0-1,9; C04.0-1,8-9; C05.0-2,8-9; C06.0-2,8-9; C09.0-1,8-9; C10.0-4,8-9; C11.0-3,8-9; C12.9; C13.2,8-9; C14.0,2,8; C30.0-2,8-9; C31.0-3,8-9; C32.0-3,8-9

CS Site-Specific Factor 6

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2930	3	09/06, 01/09, 01/10	Required if available

Description
Identifies additional information needed to generate stage or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Rationale
Site-specific factors are used to record additional staging information needed by Collaborative Staging to derive TNM and/or SEER Summary Stage codes for particular site-histology schema.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

For tumors diagnosed in 2010, the following Site-Specific Factor 6 (SSF6) items are *required* by CoC to be coded. Registries are *encouraged* to code any other prognostic SSF6s used by the facility.

CS Schema	Sites	Histologies	Site-Specific Factor 6
Head and Neck*	See note after this table	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Parapharyngeal, Parotid, and Suboccipital/Retroauricular Lymph Nodes
Mucosal Melanoma**	See note after this table	8720-8790	Parapharyngeal, Parotid, and Suboccipital/Retroauricular Lymph Nodes
GIST Esophagus	C15.0-5,8-9	8935-8936	Mitotic Count
GIST Stomach	C16.0-6,8-9	8935-8936	Mitotic Count
GIST Small Intestine	C17.0-3,8-9	8935-8936	Mitotic Count
Colon	C18.0,2-9	8000-8152, 8154-8231, 8243-8245, 8247-8248, 8250-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Circumferential Resection Margin (CRM)
Rectum	C19.9; C20.9	8000-8152, 8154-8231, 8243-8245, 8247-8248, 8250-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Circumferential Resection Margin (CRM)
Liver	C22.0-1	8170-8175	Total Bilirubin Value
NET Ampulla	C24.1	8153, 8240-8242, 8246, 8249	Urinary 5-HIAA Lab Value
Melanoma Skin	C44.0-9; C51.0-2,8-9; C60.0-2,8-9; C63.2	8270-8290	LDH Upper Limits of Normal
GIST Peritoneum	#48.0-2,8	8935-8936	KIT Immunohistochemistry (IHC)
Breast	C50.0-6,8-9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981, 9020	Size of Tumor – Invasive Component
Vagina	C52.9	8000-8576, 8800-8801, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Distant (mediastinal, scalene) Node Status
Corpus Adenosarcoma	C54.0-3,8-9; C55.9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Number of Examined Para-Aortic Lymph Nodes
Corpus Carcinoma	C54.0-3,8-9; C55.9	8000-8790, 8980-8981, 9700-9701	Number of Examined Para-Aortic Lymph Nodes
Corpus Sarcoma	C54.0-3,8-9; C55.9	8890-8898, 8930-8931	Number of Examined Para-Aortic Lymph Nodes
Fallopian Tube	C57.0	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Number of Positive Para-Aortic Lymph Nodes
Testis	C62.0-1,9	8000-8576, 8590-8593, 8940-8950, 8980-8981, 9060-9090, 9100-9105	Preorchiectomy Alpha Fetoprotein (AFP) Lab Value
Kidney Parenchyma	C64.9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Fuhrman Grade
Lymphoma Ocular Adnexa	C44.1; C69.0,5,6	9590-9699, 9702-9738, 9811-9818, 9820-9837	LDH Interpretation

Melanoma Iris	C69.4 (Iris)	8720-8790	Chromosome 6p Status
Lacrimal Gland	C69.5	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Adenoid Cystic Carcinoma – Presence of Basaloid Pattern
Brain	C70.0, C71.0-9	8000, 8680-9136, 9141-9582	Gene Deletions 19q
CNS Other	C70.1,9; C72.0-5,8-9	8000, 8680-9136, 9141-9582	Gene Deletions 19q

* Head and Neck: C00.0-6,8,9; C01.9; C02.0-4,8,9; C03.0-1,9; C04.0-1,8,9; C05.0-2,8,9; C06.0-2,8,9; C07.9; C08.0-1,8,9; C09.0-1,8,9;C10.0-4,8,9; C11.0; C30.0; C31.0-3,8-9; C32.0-3,8,9

** Mucosal Melanoma: C00.0-6,8-9; C01.9; C02.0-4,8-9; C03.0-1,9; C04.0-1,8-9; C05.0-2,8-9; C06.0-2,8-9; C09.0-1,8-9; C10.0-4,8-9; C11.0-3,8-9; C12.9; C13.2,8-9; C14.0,2,8; C30.0-2,8-9; C31.0-3,8-9; C32.0-3,8-9

CS Site-Specific Factor 7

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2861	3	New 01/10	Required if available

Description
Identifies additional information needed to generate stage or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Rationale
Site-specific factors are used to record additional staging information needed by Collaborative Staging to derive TNM and/or SEER Summary Stage codes for particular site-histology schema.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

For tumors diagnosed in 2010, the following Site-Specific Factor 7 (SSF7) items are *required* by CoC to be coded. Registries are *encouraged* to code any other prognostic SSF7s used by the facility.

CS Schema	Sites	Histologies	Site-Specific Factor 7
GIST Esophagus	C15.0-5,8-9	8935-8936	KIT Immunohistochemistry (IHC)
GIST Stomach	C16.0-6,8-9	8935-8936	KIT Immunohistochemistry (IHC)
GIST Small Intestine	C17.0-3,8-9	8935-8936	KIT Immunohistochemistry (IHC)
Liver	C22.0-1	8170-8175	Total Bilirubin Unit of Measure
Melanoma of Skin	C44.0-9; C51.0-2,8-9; C60.0-2,8-9; C63.2	8270-8290	Primary Tumor Mitotic Count/Rate
Breast	C50.0-6,8-9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981, 9020	Nottingham or Boom-Richardson Score / Grade
Vagina	C52.9	8000-8576, 8800-8801, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Assessment Method of Distant (mediastinal, scalene) Node Status
Fallopian Tube	C57.0	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Number of Examined Para-Aortic Lymph Nodes
Prostate	C61.9	8000-8110, 8140-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Gleason Primary and Secondary Pattern Value on Needle Core Biopsy / TURP
Testis	C62.0-1,9	8000-8576, 8590-8593, 8940-8950, 8980-8981, 9060-9090, 9100-9105	Preorchiectomy Alpha Fetoprotein (AFP) Interpretation
Melanoma Iris	C69.4	8720-8790	Chromosome 8q Status

CS Site-Specific Factor 8

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2862	3	New 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies additional information needed to generate stage or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Rationale
Site-specific factors are used to record additional staging information needed by Collaborative Staging to derive TNM and/or SEER Summary Stage codes for particular site-histology schema.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

For tumors diagnosed in 2010, the following Site-Specific Factor 8 (SSF8) items are *required* by CoC to be coded. Registries are *encouraged* to code any other prognostic SSF8s used by the facility.

CS Schema	Sites	Histologies	Site-Specific Factor 8
Colon	C18.0,2-9	8000-8152, 8154-8231, 8243-8245, 8247-8248, 8250-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Perineural Invasion
Rectum	C19.9; C20.9	8000-8152, 8154-8231, 8243-8245, 8247-8248, 8250-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Perineural Invasion
Liver	C22.0-1	8170-8175	International Normalized Ratio for Prothrombin Time (INR)
Breast	C50.0-6,8-9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981, 9020	HER2: IHC Test Lab Value
Prostate	C61.9	8000-8110, 8140-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Gleason Score on Needle Core Biopsy / TURP
Testis	C62.0-1,9	8000-8576, 8590-8593, 8940-8950, 8980-8981, 9060-9090, 9100-9105	Preorchiectomy Human Chorionic Gonadotropin (hCG) Lag Value
Kidney Parenchyma	C64.9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Extranodal Extension of Regional Lymph Nodes
Lacrimal Gland	C69.5	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Orbital Bone

CS Site-Specific Factor 9

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2863	3	New 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies additional information needed to generate stage or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Rationale
Site-specific factors are used to record additional staging information needed by Collaborative Staging to derive TNM and/or SEER Summary Stage codes for particular site-histology schema.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

For tumors diagnosed in 2010, the following Site-Specific Factor 9 (SSF9) items are *required* by CoC to be coded. Registries are *encouraged* to code any other prognostic SSF9s used by the facility.

CS Schema	Sites	Histologies	Site-Specific Factor 9
Head and Neck*	See note after this table	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Extracapsular Extension Pathologically, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck
Mucosal Melanoma**	See note after this table	8720-8790	Extracapsular Extension Pathologically, Lymph Nodes for Head and Neck
Colon	C18.0,2-9	8000-8152, 8154-8231, 8243-8245, 8247-8248, 8250-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	KRAS
Rectum	C19,9; C20.9	8000-8152, 8154-8231, 8243-8245, 8247-8248, 8250-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	KRAS
Skin Eyelid	C44.1	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Pagetoid Spread
Breast	C50.0-6,8-9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981, 9020	HER2: IHC Test Interpretation
Prostate	C61.9	8000-8110, 8140-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Gleason Primary Pattern and Secondary Pattern Value on Prostatectomy / Autopsy
Testis	C62.0-1,9	8000-8576, 8590-8593, 8940-8950, 8980-8981, 9060-9090, 9100-9105	Preorchiectomy Human Chrorionic Gonadotropin (hCG) Interpretation
Melanoma Iris	C69.4	8720-8790	Mitotic Count

* Head and Neck: C00.0-6,8,9; C01.9; C02.0-4,8,9; C03.0-1,9; C04.0-1,8,9; C05.0-2,8,9; C06.0-2,8,9; C07.9; C08.0-1,8,9; C09.0-1,8,9;C10.0-4,8,9; C11.0; C30.0; C31.0-3,8-9; C32.0-3,8,9
** Mucosal Melanoma: C00.0-6,8-9; C01.9; C02.0-4,8-9; C03.0-1,9; C04.0-1,8-9; C05.0-2,8-9; C06.0-2,8-9; C09.0-1,8-9; C10.0-4,8-9; C11.0-3,8-9; C12.9; C13.2,8-9; C14.0,2,8; C30.0-2,8-9; C31.0-3,8-9; C32.0-3,8-9

CS Site-Specific Factor 10

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2864	3	New 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies additional information needed to generate stage or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Rationale
Site-specific factors are used to record additional staging information needed by Collaborative Staging to derive TNM and/or SEER Summary Stage codes for particular site-histology schema.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

For tumors diagnosed in 2010, the following Site-Specific Factor 10 (SSF10) items are *required* by CoC to be coded. Registries are *encouraged* to code any other prognostic SSF10s used by the facility.

CS Schema	Sites	Histologies	Site-Specific Factor 10
Oropharynx	C09.0-1,8-9; C10.0,2-4,8-9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	HPV (Human Papilloma Virus) Status
Nasopharynx	C11.0-3,8-9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	HPV (Human Papilloma Virus) Status
Pharyngeal Tonsil	C11.1	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	HPV (Human Papilloma Virus) Status
Hypopharynx	C12.9; C13.0-2,8-9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	HPV (Human Papilloma Virus) Status
Pharynx Other	C14.0-2,8	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	HPV (Human Papilloma Virus) Status
Breast	C50.0-6,8-9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981, 9020	HER2: FISH Test Lab Value
Vulva	C51.0-2,8-9	8000-8246, 8248-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	FIGO Stage
Penis	C60.0-2,8-9	8000-8246, 8248-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981, 9020	Involvement of Corpus Spongiosum/Corpus Cavernosum
Prostate	C61.9	8000-8110, 8140-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Gleason Score on Prostatectomy / Autopsy
Melanoma Iris	C69.4	8720-8790	Mean Diameter Nucleoli (MLN)

CS Site-Specific Factor 11

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2865	3	New 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies additional information needed to generate stage or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Rationale
Site-specific factors are used to record additional staging information needed by Collaborative Staging to derive TNM and/or SEER Summary Stage codes for particular site-histology schema.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

For tumors diagnosed in 2010, the following Site-Specific Factor 11 (SSF11) items are *required* by CoC to be coded. Registries are *encouraged* to code any other prognostic SSF11s used by the facility.

CS Schema	Sites	Histologies	Site-Specific Factor 11
Head and Neck*	See note after this table	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Measured Thickness (Depth)
Mucosal Melanoma**	See note after this table	8720-8790	Measured Thickness (Depth)
NET Stomach	C16.0-6,8-9	8153, 8240-8242, 8246, 8249	Serum Chromogranin A (CgA) Lab Value
GIST Colon	C18.0,2-9	8935-8936	Mitotic Count
Appendix	C18.1	8000-8152, 8154-8231, 8243-8245, 8247-8248, 8250-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Histopathologic Grading
GIST Appendix	C18.1	8935-8936	Mitotic Count
NET Small Intestine	C17.0-3,8-9	8153, 8240-8242, 8246, 8249	Serum Chromogranin A (CgA) Lab Value
GIST Rectum	C19.9; C20.9	8935-8936	Mitotic Count
Bile Ducts Intrahepatic	C22.0-1	8160-8161, 8180	Primary Sclerosing Cholangitis
Bile Ducts Perihilar	C24.0	8000-8152, 8154-8231, 8243-8245, 8250-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Primary Sclerosing Cholangitis
Skin	C44.0,2-9	8000-8246, 8248-8576, 89408950-8980-8981	Perineural Invasion
Breast	C50.0-6,8-9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981, 9020	HER2: FISH Test Interpretation
Vulva	C51.0-2,8-9	8000-8246, 8248-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Regional Lymph Node – Laterality
Prostate	C61.9	8000-8110, 8140-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Gleason Tertiary Pattern Value on Prostatectomy / Autopsy
Testis	C62.0-1,9	8000-8576, 8590-8670, 8940-8950, 8980-8981, 9060-9090, 9100-9105	Persistence of Elevated Serum Tumor Markers
Melanoma Iris	C69.4	8720-8790	Extravascular Matrix Patterns, Loops

* Head and Neck: C00.0-6,8,9; C01.9; C02.0-4,8,9; C03.0-1,9; C04.0-1,8,9; C05.0-2,8,9; C06.0-2,8,9; C07.9; C08.0-1,8,9; C09.0-1,8,9;C10.0-4,8,9; C11.0; C30.0; C31.0-3,8-9; C32.0-3,8,9
** Mucosal Melanoma: C00.0-6,8-9; C01.9; C02.0-4,8-9; C03.0-1,9; C04.0-1,8-9; C05.0-2,8-9; C06.0-2,8-9; C09.0-1,8-9; C10.0-4,8-9; C11.0-3,8-9; C12.9; C13.2,8-9; C14.0,2,8; C30.0-2,8-9; C31.0-3,8-9; C32.0-3,8-9

CS Site-Specific Factor 12

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2866	3	New 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies additional information needed to generate stage or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Rationale
Site-specific factors are used to record additional staging information needed by Collaborative Staging to derive TNM and/or SEER Summary Stage codes for particular site-histology schema.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

For tumors diagnosed in 2010, the following Site-Specific Factor 12 (SSF12) items are *required* by CoC to be coded. Registries are *encouraged* to code any other prognostic SSF12s used by the facility.

CS Schema	Sites	Histologies	Site-Specific Factor 12
NET Stomach	C16.0-6,8-9	8153,8240-8242, 8246, 8249	Urinary 5-HIAA Lab Value Level
NET Small Intestine	C17.0-3,8-9	8153,8240-8242, 8246, 8249	Urinary 5-HIAA Lab Value Level
GIST Colon	C18.0,2-9	8935-8936	KIT Immunohistochemistry (IHC)
GIST Appendix	C18.1	8935-8936	KIT Immunohistochemistry (IHC)
GIST Rectum	C19.9; C20.9	8935-8936	KIT Immunohistochemistry (IHC)
Skin	C44.0,2-9	8000-8246, 8248-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	High Risk Features
Breast	C50.0-6,8-9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981, 9020	HER2: CISH Test Lab Value
Prostate	C61.9	8000-8110, 8140-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Number of Cores Positive
Scrotum	C63.2	8000-8110, 8140-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	High Risk Features
Melanoma Iris	C69.4	8720-8790	Extravascular Matrix Patterns

CS Site-Specific Factor 13

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2867	3	New 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies additional information needed to generate stage or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Rationale
Site-specific factors are used to record additional staging information needed by Collaborative Staging to derive TNM and/or SEER Summary Stage codes for particular site-histology schema.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

For tumors diagnosed in 2010, the following Site-Specific Factor 13 (SSF13) items are *required* by CoC to be coded. Registries are *encouraged* to code any other prognostic SSF13s used by the facility.

CS Schema	Sites	Histologies	Site-Specific Factor 13
Breast	C50.0-6,8-9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981, 9020	HER2: CIST Test Interpretation
Prostate	C61.9	8000-8110, 8140-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Number of Cores Examined
Melanoma Iris	C69.4	8720-8790	Microvascular density (MVD)

CS Site-Specific Factor 14

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2868	3	New 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies additional information needed to generate stage or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Rationale
Site-specific factors are used to record additional staging information needed by Collaborative Staging to derive TNM and/or SEER Summary Stage codes for particular site-histology schema.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

For tumors diagnosed in 2010, the following Site-Specific Factor 14 (SSF14) items are *required* by CoC to be coded. Registries are *encouraged* to code any other prognostic SSF14s used by the facility.

CS Schema	Sites	Histologies	Site-Specific Factor 14
Skin Eyelid	C44.1	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Prior Radiation
Breast	C50.0-6,8-9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981, 9020	HER2: Result of Other or Unknown Test

CS Site-Specific Factor 15

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2869	3	New 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies additional information needed to generate stage or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Rationale
Site-specific factors are used to record additional staging information needed by Collaborative Staging to derive TNM and/or SEER Summary Stage codes for particular site-histology schema.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

For tumors diagnosed in 2010, the following Site-Specific Factor 15 (SSF15) items are *required* by CoC to be coded. Registries are *encouraged* to code any other prognostic SSF15s used by the facility.

CS Site-Specific Factor 16

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2870	3	New 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies additional information needed to generate stage or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Rationale
Site-specific factors are used to record additional staging information needed by Collaborative Staging to derive TNM and/or SEER Summary Stage codes for particular site-histology schema.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

For tumors diagnosed in 2010, the following Site-Specific Factor 16 (SSF16) items are *required* by CoC to be coded. Registries are *encouraged* to code any other prognostic SSF16s used by the facility.

CS Schema	Sites	Histologies	Site-Specific Factor 16
NET Colon	C18.0,2-9	8153, 8240-8242, 8246, 8249	Serum Chromogranin A (CgA) Lab Value
NET Rectum	C19.9; C20.9	8153, 8240-8242, 8246, 8249	Serum Chromogranin A (CgA) Lab Value
Skin	C44.0,2-9	8000-8246, 8248-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Size of Lymph Nodes
Merkel Cell Skin	C44.0,2-9	8247	Size of Metastases in Lymph Nodes
Merkel Cell Vulva	C51.0-2,8-9	8247	Size of Metastases in Lymph Nodes
Merkel Cell Penis	C60.0-2,8-9	8247	Size of Metastases in Lymph Nodes
Merkel Cell Scrotum	C63.2	8247	Size of Metastases in Lymph Nodes
Scrotum	C63.2	8000-8246, 8248-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Size of Lymph Nodes

CS Site-Specific Factor 17

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2871	3	New 01/10	Required if available

Description
Identifies additional information needed to generate stage or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Rationale
Site-specific factors are used to record additional staging information needed by Collaborative Staging to derive TNM and/or SEER Summary Stage codes for particular site-histology schema.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

For tumors diagnosed in 2010, the following Site-Specific Factor 17 (SSF17) items are *required* by CoC to be coded. Registries are *encouraged* to code any other prognostic SSF17s used by the facility.

CS Schema	Sites	Histologies	Site-Specific Factor 17
NET Colon	C18.0,2-9	8153, 8240-8242, 8246, 8249	Urinary 5-HIAA Lab Value Level
NET Rectum	C19.9; C20.9	8153, 8240-8242, 8246, 8249	Urinary 5-HIAA Lab Value Level
Merkel Cell Skin	C44.0,2-9	8247	Extracapsular Extension of Regional Lymph Nodes
Merkel Cell Vulva	C51.0-2,8-9	8247	Extracapsular Extension of Regional Lymph Nodes
Merkel Cell Penis	C60.0-2,8-9	8247	Extracapsular Extension of Regional Lymph Nodes
Merkel Cell Scrotum	C63.2	8247	Extracapsular Extension of Regional Lymph Nodes
Penis	C60.0-2,8-9	8000-8246, 8248-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981, 9020	Extranodal Extension of Regional Lymph Nodes

CS Site-Specific Factor 18

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2872	3	New 01/10	Required if available

Description
Identifies additional information needed to generate stage or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Rationale
Site-specific factors are used to record additional staging information needed by Collaborative Staging to derive TNM and/or SEER Summary Stage codes for particular site-histology schema.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

For tumors diagnosed in 2010, the following Site-Specific Factor 18 (SSF18) items are *required* by CoC to be coded. Registries are *encouraged* to code any other prognostic SSF18s used by the facility.

CS Schema	Sites	Histologies	Site-Specific Factor 18
Merkel Cell Skin	C44.0,2-9	8247	Isolated Tumor Cells (ITCs) in Regional Lymph Node(s)
Merkel Cell Vulva	C51.0-2,8-9	8247	Isolated Tumor Cells (ITCs) in Regional Lymph Node(s)
Merkel Cell Penis	C60.0-2,8-9	8247	Isolated Tumor Cells (ITCs) in Regional Lymph Node(s)
Merkel Cell Scrotum	C63.2	8247	Isolated Tumor Cells (ITCs) in Regional Lymph Node(s)

CS Site-Specific Factor 19

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2873	3	New 01/10	Required if available

Description
Identifies additional information needed to generate stage or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Rationale
Site-specific factors are used to record additional staging information needed by Collaborative Staging to derive TNM and/or SEER Summary Stage codes for particular site-histology schema.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

For tumors diagnosed in 2010, the following Site-Specific Factor 19 (SSF19) items are *required* by CoC to be coded. Registries are *encouraged* to code any other prognostic SSF19s used by the facility.

CS Site-Specific Factor 20

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2874	3	New 01/10	Required if available

Description
Identifies additional information needed to generate stage or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Rationale
Site-specific factors are used to record additional staging information needed by Collaborative Staging to derive TNM and/or SEER Summary Stage codes for particular site-histology schema.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

For tumors diagnosed in 2010, the following Site-Specific Factor 20 (SSF20) items are *required* by CoC to be coded. Registries are *encouraged* to code any other prognostic SSF20s used by the facility.

CS Site-Specific Factor 21

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2875	3	New 01/10	Required if available

Description
Identifies additional information needed to generate stage or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Rationale
Site-specific factors are used to record additional staging information needed by Collaborative Staging to derive TNM and/or SEER Summary Stage codes for particular site-histology schema.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

For tumors diagnosed in 2010, the following Site-Specific Factor 21 (SSF21) items are *required* by CoC to be coded. Registries are *encouraged* to code any other prognostic SSF21s used by the facility.

CS Schema	Sites	Histologies	Site-Specific Factor 21
Breast	C50.0-6,8-9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981, 9020	Response to Neoadjuvant Therapy

CS Site-Specific Factor 22

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2876	3	New 01/10	Required if available

Description
Identifies additional information needed to generate stage or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Rationale
Site-specific factors are used to record additional staging information needed by Collaborative Staging to derive TNM and/or SEER Summary Stage codes for particular site-histology schema.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

For tumors diagnosed in 2010, the following Site-Specific Factor 22 (SSF22) items are *required* by CoC to be coded. Registries are *encouraged* to code any other prognostic SSF22s used by the facility.

CS Schema	Sites	Histologies	Site-Specific Factor 22
Merkel Cell Skin	C44.0,2-9	8247	Profound Immune Suppression
Merkel Cell Vulva	C51.0-2,8-9	8247	Profound Immune Suppression
Merkel Cell Penis	C60.0-2,8-9	8247	Profound Immune Suppression
Merkel Cell Scrotum	C63.2	8247	Profound Immune Suppression
Breast	C50.0-6,8-9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981, 9020	Multigene Signature Method

CS Site-Specific Factor 23

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2877	3	New 01/10	Required if available

Description
Identifies additional information needed to generate stage or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Rationale
Site-specific factors are used to record additional staging information needed by Collaborative Staging to derive TNM and/or SEER Summary Stage codes for particular site-histology schema.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

For tumors diagnosed in 2010, the following Site-Specific Factor 23 (SSF23) items are *required* by CoC to be coded. Registries are *encouraged* to code any other prognostic SSF23s used by the facility.

CS Schema	Sites	Histologies	Site-Specific Factor 22
Breast	C50.0-6,8-9	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981,9020	Result/Score of the Multigene Signature

CS Site-Specific Factor 24

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2878	3	New 01/10	Required if available

Description
Identifies additional information needed to generate stage or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Rationale
Site-specific factors are used to record additional staging information needed by Collaborative Staging to derive TNM and/or SEER Summary Stage codes for particular site-histology schema.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

For tumors diagnosed in 2010, the following Site-Specific Factor 24 (SSF24) items are *required* by CoC to be coded. Registries are *encouraged* to code any other prognostic SSF24s used by the facility.

CS Site-Specific Factor 25

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2879	3	New 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies additional information needed to generate stage or prognostic factors that have an effect on stage or survival.

Rationale
Site-specific factors are used to record additional staging information needed by Collaborative Staging to derive TNM and/or SEER Summary Stage codes for particular site-histology schema.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the site and histology-specific instructions in the current *CS Manual* for coding instructions.
- CoC does not require that registrars report information for this item that is not readily available in the facility's records. However, if that information is obtained along with other material from another source, it may be used.

For tumors diagnosed in 2010, the following Site-Specific Factor 25 (SSF25) items are *required* by CoC to be coded. Registries are *encouraged* to code any other prognostic SSF25s used by the facility.

CS Schema	Sites	Histologies	Site-Specific Factor 22
Nasopharynx	C11.1	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Schema Discriminator
Pharyngeal Tonsil	C11.1	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Schema Discriminator
Esophagus GE Junction	C16.1-2	8000-8152, 8154-8231, 8243-8245, 8247-8248, 8250-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Involvement of Cardia and Distance from Esophagogastric Junction (EGJ)
Stomach	C16.1-2	8000-8152, 8154-8231, 8243-8245, 8247-8248, 8250-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8990	Involvement of Cardia and Distance from Esophagogastric Junction (EGJ)
Cystic Duct	C24.0	8000-8152, 8154-8231, 8243-8245, 8250-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Schema Discriminator: Subsite of Extrahepatic Bile Ducts
Bile Ducts Perihilar	C24.0	8000-8152, 8154-8231, 8243-8245, 8250-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Schema Discriminator: Subsite of Extrahepatic Bile Ducts
Bile Ducts Distal	C24.0	8000-8152, 8154-8231, 8243-8245, 8250-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Schema Discriminator: Subsite of Extrahepatic Bile Ducts
GIST Peritoneum	C48.1	8935-8936	Location of Primary Tumor
Peritoneum	C48.1-2,8	8000-8576, 8590-8671, 8930-8934, 8940-9110	Schema Discriminator
Peritoneum Female Genital	C48.1-2,8	8000-8576, 8590-8671, 8930-8934, 8940-9110	Schema Discriminator
Melanoma Ciliary Body	C69.4	8720-8790	Schema Discriminator: Melanoma Ciliary Body / Melanoma Iris
Melanoma Iris	C69.4	8720-8790	Schema Discriminator: Melanoma Ciliary Body / Melanoma Iris
Lacrimal Gland	C69.5	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Schema Discriminator: Lacrimal Gland / Lacrimal Sac
Lacrimal Sac	C69.5	8000-8576, 8940-8950, 8980-8981	Schema Discriminator: Lacrimal Gland / Lacrimal Sac

Derived AJCC-6 T

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2940	2	01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
This item is the derived AJCC "T" staging element from coded fields using the CS algorithm.

Rationale
Derived AJCC-6 T can be used can be used to evaluate disease spread at diagnosis, plan and track treatment patterns, and analyze outcomes.

Instructions for Coding
- This data item is autocoded and is not recorded by registry staff.
- The two-digit storage codes are designed for analytic purposes.
- Refer to the current *CS Manual* for the display equivalent of the storage codes.
- Refer to the *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, 6th Edition* for site-specific "T" descriptions.

Derived AJCC-6 T Descriptor

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2950	1	09/04, 01/10	Required

Description
This item is the derived AJCC "T Descriptor" from coded fields using the CS algorithm.

Rationale
Derived AJCC-6 T Descriptor can be used in analysis to differentiate the timing of staging with respect to the treatment process.

Instructions for Coding
- This data item is autocoded and is not recorded by registry staff.
- Refer to the *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, 6th Edition* for prefix definitions for codes c, p, a, and y.
- Refer to the current *CS Manual* for the calculation procedures for all codes.

Code	Description
c	Clinical stage
p	Pathologic stage
a	Autopsy stage
y	Surgical resection performed **after** pre-surgical systemic treatment or radiation; tumor size/extension based on pathologic evidence.
N	Not applicable
0	Not derived

Derived AJCC-6 N

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2960	2	01/10	Required

Description
This item is the derived AJCC "N" staging element from coded fields using the CS algorithm.

Rationale
Derived AJCC-6 N can be used to evaluate disease spread at diagnosis, plan and track treatment patterns, and analyze outcomes.

Instructions for Coding
- This data item is autocoded and is not recorded by registry staff.
- The two-digit storage codes are designed for analytic purposes.
- Refer to the current *CS Manual* for the display equivalent of the storage codes.
- Refer to the *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, 6th Edition* for the site-specific "N" descriptions.

Derived AJCC-6 N Descriptor

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2970	1	09/04, 01/10	Required

Description
This item is the derived AJCC "N Descriptor" from coded fields using the CS algorithm.

Rationale
Derived AJCC-6 N Descriptor can be used in analysis to differentiate the timing of staging with respect to the treatment process.

Instructions for Coding
- This data item is autocoded and is not recorded by registry staff.
- Refer to *the AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, 6th Edition* for prefix definitions for codes c, p, a, and y.
- Refer to the current *CS Manual* for the calculation procedures for all codes.

Code	Description
c	Clinical stage
p	Pathologic stage
a	Autopsy stage
y	Lymph nodes removed for examination **after** pre-surgical systemic treatment or radiation and lymph node evaluation based on pathologic evidence.
N	Not applicable
0	Not derived

Derived AJCC-6 M

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2980	2	01/10	Required

Description
This item is the derived AJCC "M" staging element from coded fields using the CS algorithm.

Rationale
Derived AJCC-6 M can be used to evaluate disease spread at diagnosis, plan and track treatment patterns, and analyze outcomes.

Instructions for Coding
- This data item is autocoded and is not recorded by registry staff.
- The two-digit storage codes are designed for analytic purposes.
- Refer to the current *CS Manual* for the display equivalent of the storage codes.
- Refer to the *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, 6th Edition* for the site-specific "M" descriptions.

Derived AJCC-6 M Descriptor

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2990	1	09/04, 01/10	Required

Description
This item is the derived AJCC "M Descriptor" from coded fields using the CS algorithm.

Rationale
Derived AJCC-6 M Descriptor can be used in analysis to differentiate the timing of staging with respect to the treatment process.

Instructions for Coding
- This data item is autocoded and is not recorded by registry staff.
- Refer to *the AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, 6th Edition* for prefix definitions for codes c, p, a, and y.
- Refer to the current *CS Manual* for the calculation procedures for all codes.

Code	Description
c	Clinical stage
p	Pathologic stage
a	Autopsy stage
y	Pathologic examination of metastatic tissue performed **after** pre-surgical systemic treatment or radiation and extension based on pathologic evidence.
N	Not applicable
0	Not derived

Derived AJCC-6 Stage Group

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3000	2	01/10	Required

Description
This item is the derived AJCC "Stage Group" from the detailed site-specific codes using the CS from the CS algorithm.

Rationale
Derived AJCC-6 Stage Group can be used to evaluate disease spread at diagnosis, plan and track treatment patterns, and analyze outcomes.

Instructions for Coding
- This data item is autocoded and is not recorded by registry staff.
- The two-digit storage codes are designed for analytic purposes.
- Refer to the current CS Manual for the display equivalent of the storage codes.
- Refer to the *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, 6th Edition* for site-specific "Stage Group" descriptions.

Derived AJCC-7 T

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3400	2	New 01/10	Required

Description
This item is the derived AJCC "T" staging element from coded fields using the CS algorithm.

Rationale
Derived AJCC-7 T can be used can be used to evaluate disease spread at diagnosis, plan and track treatment patterns, and analyze outcomes.

Instructions for Coding
- This data item is autocoded and is not recorded by registry staff.
- The two-digit storage codes are designed for analytic purposes.
- Refer to the current *CS Manual* for the display equivalent of the storage codes.
- Refer to the *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, 7th Edition* for site-specific "T" descriptions.

Derived AJCC-7 T Descriptor

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3402	1	New 01/10	Required

Description
This item is the derived AJCC "T Descriptor" from coded fields using the CS algorithm.

Rationale
Derived AJCC-7 T Descriptor can be used in analysis to differentiate the timing of staging with respect to the treatment process.

Instructions for Coding
- This data item is autocoded and is not recorded by registry staff.
- Refer to the *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, 7th Edition* for prefix definitions for codes c, p, a, and y.
- Refer to the current *CS Manual* for the calculation procedures for all codes.

Code	Description
c	Clinical stage
p	Pathologic stage
a	Autopsy stage
y	Surgical resection performed **after** pre-surgical systemic treatment or radiation; tumor size/extension based on pathologic evidence.
N	Not applicable
0	Not derived

Derived AJCC-7 N

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3410	2	New 01/10	Required

Description
This item is the derived AJCC "N" staging element from coded fields using the CS algorithm.

Rationale
Derived AJCC-7 N can be used to evaluate disease spread at diagnosis, plan and track treatment patterns, and analyze outcomes.

Instructions for Coding
- This data item is autocoded and is not recorded by registry staff.
- The two-digit storage codes are designed for analytic purposes.
- Refer to the current *CS Manual* for the display equivalent of the storage codes.
- Refer to the *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, 7th Edition* for the site-specific "N" descriptions.

Derived AJCC-7 N Descriptor

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3412	1	New 01/10	Required

Description
This item is the derived AJCC "N Descriptor" from coded fields using the CS algorithm.

Rationale
Derived AJCC-7 N Descriptor can be used in analysis to differentiate the timing of staging with respect to the treatment process.

Instructions for Coding
- This data item is autocoded and is not recorded by registry staff.
- Refer to *the AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, 7th Edition* for prefix definitions for codes c, p, a, and y.
- Refer to the current *CS Manual* for the calculation procedures for all codes.

Code	Description
c	Clinical stage
p	Pathologic stage
a	Autopsy stage
y	Lymph nodes removed for examination **after** pre-surgical systemic treatment or radiation and lymph node evaluation based on pathologic evidence.
N	Not applicable
0	Not derived

Derived AJCC-7 M

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3420	2	New 01/10	Required

Description
This item is the derived AJCC "M" staging element from coded fields using the CS algorithm.

Rationale
Derived AJCC-7 M can be used to evaluate disease spread at diagnosis, plan and track treatment patterns, and analyze outcomes.

Instructions for Coding
- This data item is autocoded and is not recorded by registry staff.
- The two-digit storage codes are designed for analytic purposes.
- Refer to the current *CS Manual* for the display equivalent of the storage codes.
- Refer to the *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, 7th Edition* for the site-specific "M" descriptions.

Derived AJCC-7 M Descriptor

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3422	1	New 01/10	Required

Description
This item is the derived AJCC "M Descriptor" from coded fields using the CS algorithm.

Rationale
Derived AJCC-7 M Descriptor can be used in analysis to differentiate the timing of staging with respect to the treatment process.

Instructions for Coding
- This data item is autocoded and is not recorded by registry staff.
- Refer to *the AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, 7th Edition* for prefix definitions for codes c, p, a, and y.
- Refer to the current *CS Manual* for the calculation procedures for all codes.

Code	Description
c	Clinical stage
p	Pathologic stage
a	Autopsy stage
y	Pathologic examination of metastatic tissue performed **after** pre-surgical systemic treatment or radiation and extension based on pathologic evidence.
N	Not applicable
0	Not derived

Derived AJCC-7 Stage Group

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3430	2	New 01/10	Required

Description
This item is the derived AJCC "Stage Group" from the detailed site-specific codes using the CS from the CS algorithm.

Rationale
Derived AJCC-7 Stage Group can be used to evaluate disease spread at diagnosis, plan and track treatment patterns, and analyze outcomes.

Instructions for Coding
- This data item is autocoded and is not recorded by registry staff.
- The two-digit storage codes are designed for analytic purposes.
- Refer to the current CS Manual for the display equivalent of the storage codes.
- Refer to the *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, 7th Edition* for site-specific "Stage Group" descriptions.

Derived SS1977

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
		3010	01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
This item is the derived "SEER Summary Stage 1977" from the CS algorithm.

Rationale
Derived SS1977 can be used to evaluate patterns of disease spread at diagnosis, track treatment patterns, and analyze outcomes, especially when comparing or combining cases diagnosed prior to 2001 (when an updated version was implemented) with those diagnosed later.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the applicable *SEER Summary Staging Manual, 1977* for site-specific categories.
- Refer to the current *CS Manual* for the calculation procedures for this item.

Code	Description
0	In-situ
1	Localized
2	Regional, direct extension only
3	Regional, regional lymph nodes only
4	Regional, direct extension and regional lymph nodes
5	Regional, NOS
7	Distant metastases/systemic disease
8	Not applicable
9	Unstaged, unknown, or unspecified
(blank)	Not derived

Derived SS2000

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3020	1	01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
This item is the derived "SEER Summary Stage 2000" from the CS algorithm.

Rationale
Derived SS2000 can be used to evaluate patterns of disease spread at diagnosis, track treatment patterns, and analyze outcomes.

Instructions for Coding
- Refer to the applicable *SEER Summary Staging Manual, 2000* for site-specific categories.
- Refer to the current *CS Manual* for the calculation procedures for this item.

Code	Description
0	In-situ
1	Localized
2	Regional, direct extension only
3	Regional, regional lymph nodes only
4	Regional, direct extension and regional lymph nodes
5	Regional, NOS
7	Distant metastases/systemic disease
8	Not applicable
9	Unstaged, unknown, or unspecified
(blank)	Not derived

CS PreRx Tumor Size

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2730			

Description

Rationale

Instructions for Coding

-

CS PreRx Extension

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2735			

Description

Rationale

Instructions for Coding

•

CS PreRx Tumor Size/Ext Eval

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2740			

Description

Rationale

Instructions for Coding

-

CS PreRx Lymph Nodes

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2750			

Description

Rationale

Instructions for Coding

•

CS PreRx Reg Nodes Eval

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2755			

Description

Rationale

Instructions for Coding

-

CS PreRx Mets at Dx

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2760			

Description

Rationale

Instructions for Coding

•

CS PreRx Mets Eval

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2765			

Description

Rationale

Instructions for Coding

-

CS PostRx Tumor Size

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2770			

Description

Rationale

Instructions for Coding

•

CS PostRx Extension

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2775			

Description

Rationale

Instructions for Coding

-

CS PostRx Lymph Nodes

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2780			

Description

Rationale

Instructions for Coding

•

CS PostRx Mets at DX

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2785			

Description

Rationale

Instructions for Coding

-

Derived PreRx-7 T

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3440			

Description

Rationale

Instructions for Coding

•

Derived PreRx-7 T Descriptor

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3442			

Description

Rationale

Instructions for Coding

-

Derived PreRx-7 N

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3450			

Description

Rationale

Instructions for Coding

•

Derived PreRx-7 N Descriptor

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3452			

Description

Rationale

Instructions for Coding

-

Derived PreRx-7 M

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3460			

Description

Rationale

Instructions for Coding

•

Derived PreRx-7 M Descriptor

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3462			

Description

Rationale

Instructions for Coding

-

Derived PreRx-7 Stage Group

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3470			

Description

Rationale

Instructions for Coding

•

Derived PostRx-7 T

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3480			

Description

Rationale

Instructions for Coding

-

Derived PostRx-7 N

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3482			

Description

Rationale

Instructions for Coding

•

Derived PostRx-7 M

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3490			

Description

Rationale

Instructions for Coding

-

Derived PostRx-7 Stage Group

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3492			

Description

Rationale

Instructions for Coding

•

Derived Neoadjuvant Rx Flag

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3600			

Description

Rationale

Instructions for Coding

-

Blank Page

Physical Exam Text

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Text – DX Proc – PE	2520	1,000	01/10	Required

Description
Text area for manual documentation from the history and physical examination about the history of the current tumor and the clinical description of this tumor.

In RMCDS, click on the box "T" on the left of the text line to open entire text box.

Rationale
Text documentation is an essential component of a complete electronic abstract and is heavily utilized for quality control and special studies. Text is needed to justify coded values and to document supplemental information not transmitted with coded values. High-quality text documentation facilitates consolidation of information from multiple reporting sources at the central registry.

The text field must contain a description that has been entered by the abstractor independently from the code(s). If cancer abstraction software generates text automatically from codes, the text cannot be utilized to check coded values. Information documenting the disease process should be entered manually from the medical record and should not be generated electronically from coded values.

Instructions for Coding
- Prioritize entered information in the order of the fields listed below.
- Text automatically generated from coded data is not acceptable.
- Approved abbreviations should be utilized.
- Do not repeat information from other text fields.
- Additional comments can be continued in empty text fields, including *Remarks*. For text documentation that is continued from one text field to another, use asterisks or other symbols to indicate the connection with preceding text.
- If information is missing from the record, state that it is missing.
- Do not include irrelevant information.
- Do not include information that the registry is not authorized to collect.

Suggestions for text:
- Date of physical exam
- Age, sex, race/ethnicity
- History that relates to cancer diagnosis
- Primary Site
- Histology (if diagnosis prior to this admission)
- Tumor location
- Tumor size
- Palpable lymph nodes
- Record positive and negative clinical findings; record positive results first
- Impression
- Treatment plan

Data Item(s) to be verified/validated using the text entered in this field include the *Date of First Contacts*, *Date of Diagnosis*, *Age at Diagnosis*, *Race 1-5*, *Spanish Hispanic Origin*, *Sex*, *Primary Site*, *Laterality*, *Histology*, *Sequence Number*, *Collaborative Stage Variables*, *SEER Summary Stage 1977*, and *SEER Summary Stage 2000* fields. After manual entry of the text field, ensure that the text entered on both agrees with the coded values and clearly justifies the selected codes.

Scopes Text

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Text – DX Proc – Scopes	2540	1,000	01/10	Required

Description
Text area for manual documentation from endoscopic examinations that provide information for staging and treatment.

In RMCDS, click on the box "T" on the left of the text line to open entire text box.

Rationale
Text documentation is an essential component of a complete electronic abstract and is heavily utilized for quality control and special studies. Text is needed to justify coded values and to document supplemental information not transmitted with coded values. High-quality text documentation facilitates consolidation of information from multiple reporting sources at the central registry.

The text field must contain a description that has been entered by the abstractor independently from the code(s). If cancer abstraction software generates text automatically from codes, the text cannot be utilized to check coded values. Information documenting the disease process should be entered manually from the medical record and should not be generated electronically from coded values.

Instructions for Coding
- Prioritize entered information in the order of the fields listed below.
- Text automatically generated from coded data is not acceptable.
- Approved abbreviations should be utilized.
- Do not repeat information from other text fields.
- Additional comments can be continued in empty text fields, including *Text – Remarks*. For text documentation that is continued from one text field to another, use asterisks or other symbols to indicate the connection with preceding text.
- If information is missing from the record, state that it is missing.
- Do not include irrelevant information.
- Do not include information that the registry is not authorized to collect.

Suggestions for text:
- Date(s) of endoscopic exam(s)
- Primary site
- Histology (if given)
- Tumor location
- Tumor size
- Lymph nodes
- Record positive and negative clinical findings; record positive results first

Data Item(s) to be verified/validated using the text entered in this field include the *Date of Diagnosis*, *Dx/Stage Procedure*, *Diagnostic Confirmation*, *Primary Site*, *Laterality*, *Histology*, *Collaborative Stage Variables*, *SEER Summary Stage 1977*, and *SEER Summary Stage 2000* fields. After manual entry of the text field, ensure that the text entered on both agrees with the coded values and clearly justifies the selected codes.

X-Ray/Scan Text

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Text – DX Proc – X-ray/Scan	2530	1,000	01/10	Required

Description
Text area for manual documentation from all X-rays, scans, and/or other imaging examinations that provide information about staging.

In RMCDS, click on the box "T" on the left of the text line to open entire text box.

Rationale
Text documentation is an essential component of a complete electronic abstract and is heavily utilized for quality control and special studies. Text is needed to justify coded values and to document supplemental information not transmitted with coded values. High-quality text documentation facilitates consolidation of information from multiple reporting sources at the central registry.

The text field must contain a description that has been entered by the abstractor independently from the code(s). If cancer abstraction software generates text automatically from codes, the text cannot be utilized to check coded values. Information documenting the disease process should be entered manually from the medical record and should not be generated electronically from coded values.

Instructions for Coding
- Prioritize entered information in the order of the fields listed below.
- Text automatically generated from coded data is not acceptable.
- Approved abbreviations should be utilized.
- Do not repeat information from other text fields.
- Additional comments can be continued in empty text fields, including *Text – Remarks*. For text documentation that is continued from one text field to another, use asterisks or other symbols to indicate the connection with preceding text.
- If information is missing from the record, state that it is missing.
- Do not include irrelevant information.
- Do not include information that the registry is not authorized to collect.

Suggestions for text:
- Date(s) of X-ray/Scan(s)
- Age, sex, race/ethnicity (when given)
- Primary Site
- Histology (if given)
- Tumor location
- Tumor size
- Lymph nodes
- Record positive and negative clinical findings; record positive results first
- Distant disease or metastasis

Data Item(s) to be verified/validated using the text entered in this field include the *Date of Diagnosis*, *Sex*, *Birth Date*, *Dx/Stage Procedure*, *Primary Site*, *Laterality*, *Histology*, *Collaborative Stage Variables*, *SEER Summary Stage 1977*, and *SEER Summary Stage 2000* fields. After manual entry of the text field, ensure that the text entered on both agrees with the coded values and clearly justifies the selected codes.

Lab Tests Text

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Text – DX Proc – Lab Tests	2550	1,000	01/10	Required

Description
Text area for manual documentation of information from laboratory examinations other than cytology or histopathology.

In RMCDS, click on the box "T" on the left of the text line to open entire text box.

Rationale
Text documentation is an essential component of a complete electronic abstract and is heavily utilized for quality control and special studies. Text is needed to justify coded values and to document supplemental information not transmitted with coded values. High-quality text documentation facilitates consolidation of information from multiple reporting sources at the central registry.

The text field must contain a description that has been entered by the abstractor independently from the code(s). If cancer abstraction software generates text automatically from codes, the text cannot be utilized to check coded values. Information documenting the disease process should be entered manually from the medical record and should not be generated electronically from coded values.

Instructions for Coding
- Prioritize entered information in the order of the fields listed below.
- Text automatically generated from coded data is not acceptable.
- Approved abbreviations should be utilized.
- Do not repeat information from other text fields.
- Additional comments can be continued in empty text fields, including *Text – Remarks*. For text documentation that is continued from one text field to another, use asterisks or other symbols to indicate the connection with preceding text.
- If information is missing from the record, state that it is missing.
- Do not include irrelevant information.
- Do not include information that the registry is not authorized to collect.

Suggestions for text:
- Type of laboratory test/tissue specimen(s)
- Record positive and negative clinical findings; record positive results first
- Information can include tumor markers, serum and urine electrophoresis, special studies, etc
- Date(s) of laboratory test(s)
- Tumor markers included, but are not limited to:
  - Breast Cancer: Estrogen Receptor Assay (ERA), Progesterone Receptor Assay (PRA), Her2/neu
  - Prostate Cancer: Prostatic Specific Antigen (PSA)
  - Testicular Cancer: Human Chorionic Gonadotropin (hCG), Alpha Fetoprotein (AFP), Lactate Dehydrogenase (LDH)

Data Item(s) to be verified/validated using the text entered in this field include the *Primary Site*, *Grade*, *Diagnostic Confirmation*, *Laterality*, *Collaborative Stage Variables*, and *Date of Diagnosis* fields. After manual entry of the text field, ensure that the text entered on both agrees with the coded values and clearly justifies the selected codes.

Remarks Text

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Text – Remarks	2680	1,000	01/10	Required

Description
Text area for information that is given only in coded form elsewhere or for which the abstract provides no other place. Overflow data can also be placed here. Problematic coding issues can also be discussed in this section.

In RMCDS, click on the box "T" on the left of the text line to open entire text box.

Rationale
Text documentation is an essential component of a complete electronic abstract and is heavily utilized for quality control and special studies. Text is needed to justify coded values and to document supplemental information not transmitted with coded values. High-quality text documentation facilitates consolidation of information from multiple reporting sources at the central registry.

The text field must contain a description that has been entered by the abstractor independently from the code(s). If cancer abstraction software generates text automatically from codes, the text cannot be utilized to check coded values. Information documenting the disease process should be entered manually from the medical record and should not be generated electronically from coded values.

Instructions for Coding
- Prioritize entered information in the order of the fields listed below.
- Text automatically generated from coded data is not acceptable.
- Approved abbreviations should be utilized.
- Do not repeat information from other text fields.
- If information is missing from the record, state that it is missing.
- Do not include irrelevant information.
- Do not include information that the registry is not authorized to collect.

Suggestions for text:
- Smoking history
- Family and personal history of cancer
- Comorbidities
- Information on sequence numbers if a person was diagnosed with another cancer out-of-state or before the registry's reference date
- Place of birth
- Justification of over-ride flags

Blank Page

Blank Page

Blank Page

Blank Page

Blank Page

Blank Page

Blank Page

Blank Page

Blank Page

Treatment Information

Blank Page

First Course Treatment

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter the screen for recording first course treatment.

The first course of treatment includes all methods of treatment recorded in the treatment plan and administered to the patient before disease progression or recurrence. "Active Surveillance" is a form of planned treatment for some patients; its use is coded in the new *Treatment Status* item. "No therapy" is a treatment option that occurs if the patient refuses treatment, the family or guardian refuses treatment, the patient dies before treatment starts, or the physician recommends no treatment be given. If the patient refuses all treatment, code "patient refused" (code 7 or 87) for all treatment modalities.

Treatment Plan

A treatment plan describes the type(s) of therapies intended to modify, control, remove, or destroy proliferating cancer cells. The documentation confirming a treatment plan may be found in several different sources; for example, medical or clinical records, consultation reports, and outpatient records.

- All therapies specified in the physician(s) treatment plan are a part of the first course of treatment if they are actually administered to the patient.
- A discharge plan must be part of the patient's record in a JCAHO-approved program and may contain part or all of the treatment plan.
- An established protocol or accepted management guidelines for the disease can be considered a treatment plan in the absence of other written documentation.
- If there is no treatment plan, established protocol, or management guidelines, and consultation with a physician advisor is not possible, use the principle: "initial treatment must begin within four months of the date of initial diagnosis".

Time Periods for First Course of Treatment

If first course treatment was provided, the *Date of First Course of Treatment* is the earliest of *Date of First Surgical Procedure*, *Date Radiation Started*, *Date Systemic Therapy Started*, or *Date Other Treatment Started*.

- If no treatment is given, record the date of the decision not to treat, the date of patient refusal, or the date the patient expired.
- If active surveillance ("watchful waiting") was selected, record the date of that decision.
- Additional data items further define the parameters for specific treatments and treatment modalities, as described in the following sections.

A new item, *Treatment Status*, implemented in 2010, summarizes whether the patient received any first course treatment, no treatment, or is being managed by active surveillance.

All Malignancies except Leukemias

The first course of treatment includes all therapy planned and administered by the physician(s) during the first diagnosis of cancer. Planned treatment may include multiple modes of therapy and may encompass intervals of a year or more. Any therapy administered after the discontinuation of first course treatment is subsequent treatment.

Leukemias

The first course of treatment includes all therapies planned and administered by the physician(s) during the first diagnosis of leukemia. Record all remission-inducing or remission-maintaining therapy as the first course of treatment. Treatment regimens may include multiple modes of therapy. The administration of these therapies can span a year or more. A patient may relapse after achieving a first remission. All therapy administered after the relapse is secondary or subsequent treatment.

Surgery

First course surgery items describe the most definitive type of surgical treatment the patient received from any facility, when it was performed, and its efficacy. When no surgical treatment is given, the reason is recorded. Major aspects of surgical care provided by the individual facility are also recorded so that hospital cancer programs can evaluate local patient care.

Relationships among Surgical Items

Date of Surgery is the date that the first *Surgery of Primary Site*, *Scope of Regional Lymph Node Surgery*, or *Surgical Procedure/Other Site* was performed as part of first course treatment.

- If surgery was the only type of first course treatment performed or was the first of multiple treatment modalities, *Date of Surgery* is the same as *Date of First Course of Treatment*. Both dates can be used to describe lag time between diagnosis and initialization of specific aspects of treatment.

Surgery of Primary Site, *Scope of Regional Lymph Node Surgery*, and *Surgical Procedure/Other Site* record three distinct aspects of first course therapeutic surgical procedures that may be performed during one or multiple surgical events. If multiple primaries are treated by a single surgical event, code the appropriate surgical items separately for each primary.

- *Surgery of Primary Site* is a site-specific item that describes the most invasive extent of local tumor destruction or surgical resection of the primary site and of surrounding tissues or organs that are removed in continuity with the primary site.
- *Scope of Regional Lymph Node Surgery* describes the removal, biopsy, or aspiration of sentinel nodes and other regional lymph nodes that drain the primary site and may include surgical procedures that aspirate, biopsy, or remove regional lymph nodes in an effort to diagnose and/or stage disease.

Surgical Procedure/Other Site describes first course resection of distant lymph node(s) and/or regional or distant tissue or organs.

If surgery of the respective type was performed, the code that best describes the surgical procedure is recorded whether or not any cancer was found in the resected portion. Incidental removal of tissue or organs, when it is not performed as part of cancer treatment (for example, incidental removal of an appendix), does not alter code assignment.

The code ranges and corresponding descriptions for most site-specific *Surgery of Primary Site* code are grouped according to the general nature of the procedure:

- Codes 10 through 18 are site-specific descriptions of tumor-destruction procedures that do not produce a pathologic specimen.
- Codes 20 through 80 are site-specific descriptions of resection procedures.
- The special code 98 applies to specific tumors that cannot be clearly defined in terms of primary or nonprimary site. *Surgery* should be coded 98 for any tumor characterized by the specific sites and/or morphologies identified in the site-specific code instructions for *Unknown and Ill-Defined Primary Sites* and *Hematopoietic/Reticuloendothelial/Immunoproliferating/Myeloproliferative Disease*. The item *Surgical Procedure/Other Site* is used to indicate whether surgery was performed for these tumors.

When multiple first course primary site surgical procedures are performed for a single tumor, the most extensive or definitive is the last performed, and the code represents the cumulative effect of the separate procedures.

Response categories are defined in logical sequence. Within groups of codes, procedures are defined with increasing degrees of descriptive precision. Succeeding groups of codes define progressively more extensive forms of resection.

For codes 00 through 79, the descriptions of the surgical procedures are hierarchical. Last-listed responses take precedence over earlier-listed responses (regardless of the code or numeric value).

To the extent possible, codes and their definitions are the same as those previously assigned in *ROADS* to accommodate analysis in registries that maintain unconverted data. As a result of added and modified codes, however, the numeric code sequence may deviate from the order in which the descriptions of the surgical procedures are listed.

Example: A rectosigmoid primary surgically treated by polypectomy with electrocautery, which is listed *after* polypectomy alone, is coded 22.

20 Local tumor excision, NOS
26 Polypectomy
27 Excisional biopsy
Combination of 20 or 26-27 WITH
21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
22 Electrocautery
23 Cryosurgery
24 Laser ablation
25 Laser excision

Scope of Regional Lymph Node Surgery distinguishes between sentinel lymph node biopsy and removal of other regional lymph nodes and distinguishes removal of regional lymph nodes during the same surgical procedure as a sentinel node biopsy from subsequent removal.

- One important use of registry data is the tracking of treatment patterns over time. In order to compare contemporary treatment to previously published treatment based on the former codes, or to data still unmodified from pre-1998 definitions, the ability to differentiate surgeries in which four or more regional lymph nodes are removed is desirable. The compromise incorporated in the *Scope of Regional Lymph Node Surgery* codes separates removal of one to three nodes (code 4) from removal of four or more nodes in the response categories (code 5). It is **very important** to note that this distinction is made to permit comparison of current surgical procedures with procedures coded in the past when the removal of fewer than four nodes was not reflected in surgery codes. The distinction between fewer than four nodes and four or more nodes removed is not intended to reflect clinical significance when applied to a particular procedure.

Surgical Procedure/Other Site describes surgery performed on tissue or organs other than the primary site or regional lymph nodes. It is also used to describe whether surgery was performed for tumors having unknown or ill-defined primary sites or hematopoietic, reticuloendothelial, immunoproliferative, or myeloproliferative disease morphologies. If any surgical treatment was performed on these cancers, *Surgical Procedure/Other Site* is coded 1.

Six surgery items augment the information recorded in *Surgery of Primary Site*. These items apply to the most definitive (most invasive) first course primary site surgery performed, that is, to the event recorded under *Surgery of Primary Site*. When no surgical procedure of the primary site is performed, the reason is recorded in the item *Reason for No Surgery*.

- *Date of Most Definitive Surgical Resection* is the date on which the specific procedure recorded in *Surgery of Primary Site* was performed. If only one first course surgical procedure was performed, then the date will be the same as that for *Date of first Surgical Procedure*.
- *Date of Surgical Discharge* is the date the patient was discharged following the procedure recorded in *Surgical Procedure of Primary Site*. It is on or after the *Date of Most Definitive Surgical Resection*.
- *Surgical Approach 2010* distinguishes among open surgery, laparoscopic surgery, and robotic assisted surgery when it is performed by the reporting facility. If more than one surgical procedure is performed by the facility, this item refers to the most definitive (most invasive) first course primary site surgery performed.
- *Surgical Margins* records the pathologist's determination of the presence of microscopic or macroscopic involvement of cancer at the margins of resection following the surgical resection described by *Surgery of Primary Site*.
- *Readmission to the Same Hospital Within 30 Days of Surgical Discharge* distinguishes planned from an unplanned hospital admission and is used as a quality of care indicator.
- *Reason for No Surgery* identifies why surgical therapy was not provided to the patient and distinguishes a physician's not recommending surgical therapy due to contraindicating conditions from a patient's refusal of a recommended treatment plan.

Radiation

The radiation items in *FORDS* are clinically relevant and reflect contemporary practice. These items record regional and boost treatment information.

Relationships among Radiation Items

Date of Radiation is the date that the first radiation therapy was delivered to the patient as part of all the first course of therapy. This item in combination with *Date Radiation Ended* allows the duration of treatment to be calculated.

- If radiation was the only type of first course treatment performed or was the first of multiple treatment modalities, *Date of Radiation* is the same as *Date of First Course of Treatment*. Both dates can be used to describe lag time between diagnosis and initialization of specific aspects of treatment.

Location of Radiation Treatment can be used to assess where therapy was provided. This item allows for the distinction between summary treatment and treatment given at the accessioning facility. Codes are provided that allow the description of where regional and boost dose therapy were provided, whether all the therapy was provided at the accessioning facility or if all or some of the radiation therapy was referred out to another treatment location.

The targeted anatomic region is described by *Radiation Treatment Volume*. The treatment volume may be the same as the primary site of disease; however, the available code values provide descriptions of anatomic regions that may extend beyond the primary site of disease and may be used to describe the treatment of metastatic disease.

The type of regional dose therapy and its concomitant dose are captured by the items *Regional Treatment Modality* and *Regional Dose (cGy)*. These two items describe the type of radiation delivered to the patient and the most significant therapeutic dose delivered.

- Codes 20 through 32 of *Regional Treatment Modality* apply to the delivery of beam radiation. If the patient record does not specify the specific modality employed, then code the most general description of the modality, code 20.
- Codes 40 through 43 describe proton radiation (code 40) and specific type of stereotactic radiotherapy (codes 41-43). If stereotactic radiotherapy is delivered to a patient but the exact modality is not recorded, use code 41 (Stereotactic radiosurgery, NOS).
- Codes 50 through 55 are used to record different types of brachytherapy administration, also known as radioactive seed implants. Code 50 should be used to record the application of radioactive materials not otherwise specified.
- Codes 60 through 62 provide codes to describe the administration of specific radioisotopes. Code 60 (Radioisotopes, NOS) should be used when specific details of the radioisotope administration is not available.
- Code 98 is reserved for cases where it is known that radiation therapy was delivered but the modality is not recorded in the patient record.
- The unit of measure for radiologic dosing is the centiGray (cGy), which has replaced the use of “rads” to describe radiation dose.
- If only one radiation treatment modality is delivered to a patient and it is not specified as either regional or boost treatment, assume it is regional treatment and code the items *Regional Treatment Modality* and *Regional Dose (cGy)* accordingly.

A boost treatment is provided to a smaller volume within the same volume as regional radiation in order to enhance the effect of the regional treatment.

- The boost dose may or may not employ the same treatment modality. For example, external beam radiation may be used for regional treatment and is followed by brachytherapy to provide the boost dose.
- Not all patients who receive radiation therapy receive a boost dose radiation. In these cases, the modality and dose should be coded as 00 and 00000, respectively.

In addition to knowing the duration of treatment and the modalities and doses involved, it is critical to know the number of treatments to be able to gauge the intensity of the dose delivered to the patient. The data item *Number of Treatments to This Volume* describes the total number of therapeutic treatments (regional and boost combined) delivered to the anatomic volume coded in *Radiation Treatment Volume*.

Two items augment the information recorded in the radiation modality, dose, volume, and number of treatment items.

- *Radiation/Surgery Sequence* identifies those instances where radiation therapy and the surgical management of the patient are not discrete and overlap with respect to time. Radiation therapy can precede the surgical resection of a tumor and then be continued after the patient's surgery, or radiation can be administered intraoperatively.
- *Reason for No Radiation* identifies why radiation therapy was not provided to the patient and distinguishes a physician's not recommending this therapy due to contraindicating conditions from a patient's refusal of a recommended treatment plan.

Systemic Therapy

Systemic therapy encompasses the treatment modalities captured by the items chemotherapy, hormone therapy, and immunotherapy. The systemic therapy items separate the administration of system agents or drugs from medical procedures which affect the hormonal or immunologic balance of the patient.

Clarification of Systemic Therapy Terms	
Term	**Definition**
Chemotherapy	Cancer therapy that achieves its anti-tumor effect through the use of antineoplastic drugs that inhibit the reproduction of cancer cells by interfering with DNA synthesis and mitosis.
Hormone Therapy	Cancer therapy that achieves its anti-tumor effect through changes in hormonal balance. This includes the administration of hormones, agents acting via hormonal mechanisms, antihormones, and steroids.
Immunotherapy	Cancer therapy that achieves its anti-tumor effect by altering the immune system or changing the host's response to the tumor cells.
Endocrine Therapy	Cancer therapy that achieves its anti-tumor effect through the use of radiation or surgical procedures that suppress the naturally occurring hormonal activity of the patient and, therefore, alter or affect the long-term control of the cancer's growth.
Hematologic Transplants	Bone marrow or stem cell transplants performed to protect patients from myelosuppression or bone marrow ablation associated with the administration of high-dose chemotherapy or radiation therapy.

Use SEER*Rx to look up chemotherapeutic agents. The program is FREE and can be downloaded from http://www.seer.cancer.gov/seerrx. SEER*Rx has replaced the *Self-Instructional Manual for Tumor Registrars: Book 8 – Antineoplastic Drugs*, Third Edition.

Chemotherapy agents are administered in treatment cycles, either singly or in a combination regimen of two or more chemotherapy drugs. If a patient has an adverse reaction, the managing physician may change one of the agents in a combination regimen. If the replacement agent belongs to the same group (chemotherapeutic agents are grouped as alkylating agents, antimetabolites, natural products, or other miscellaneous) as the original agent, there is no change in the regimen. However, if the replacement agent is of a different group than the original agent, the new regimen represents the start of subsequent therapy, *only the original agent or regimen is recorded as first course therapy*.

Systemic agents may be administered by intravenous infusion or given orally. Other methods of administration include the following:

Method	Administration
Intrathecal	Administered directly into the cerebrospinal fluid through a lumbar puncture needle into an implanted access device (Ommaya reservoir).
Pleural/pericardial	Injected directly into pleural or pericardial space to control malignant effusions.
Intraperitoneal	Injected into the peritoneal cavity.
Hepatic artery	Injected into a catheter inserted into the artery that supplies blood to the liver.

Relationships among Systemic Therapy Items

The data item *Date Systemic Therapy* describes the first date on which any first course systemic treatment was administered to the patient. Nine out of 10 patients treated with systemic therapy receive only a single class of drugs (chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or immunotherapy). Of the remaining patients who receive a combined regimen of systemic therapies, two-thirds begin these combined regimens simultaneously. For the purposes of clinical surveillance, the collection of multiple dates to describe the sequence of systemic therapy administration is not necessary.

The data items *Chemotherapy*, *Hormone Therapy*, and *BRM/Immunotherapy* describe whether or not each respective class of agent(s) or drug(s) were administered to the patient as part of first course therapy based on *SEER*Rx*. In the case of chemotherapy, additional distinction is allowed for instances where single or multiagent regimens were administered. Each of these three items includes code values that describe the reason a particular class of drugs is not administered to the patient and distinguishes a physician's not recommending systemic therapy due to contraindicating conditions from a patient's refusal of a recommended treatment plan. The associated date items were previously defined by CoC, though discontinued in *FORDS* from 2003 through 2009 and the same fields may be used to collect them now, if allowed by the registry software.

Transplant and Endocrine captures those infrequent instances in which a medical, surgical, or radiation procedure is performed on a patient that has an effect on the hormonal or immunologic balance of the patient. Hematologic procedures, such as bone marrow transplants or stem cell harvests, are typically employed in conjunction with administration of systemic agent(s), usually chemotherapy.

- Endocrine procedures, either radiologic or surgical, may be administered in combination with systemic agent(s), typically hormonal therapeutic agents.
- As first course of therapy, hematologic procedures will rarely be administered in conjunction with endocrine radiation or surgery. The use of code 40 in response to this data item should be reviewed and confirmed with the managing physician(s).

Other Treatment

Other treatment encompasses first course treatment that cannot be described as surgery, radiation, or systemic therapy according to the defined data items found in this manual.

This item is also used for supportive care treatment for reportable hematopoietic diseases that do not meet the usual definition in which treatment "modifies, controls, removes, or destroys proliferating cancer tissue." Treatments such as phlebotomy, transfusions, and aspirin are recorded in *Other Treatment* data item for certain hematopoietic diseases, and should be coded 1.

- Phlebotomy may be called blood removal, blood letting, or venisection.
- Transfusions may include whole blood, RBCs, platelets, plateletpheresis, fresh frozen plasma (FFP), plasmapheresis, and cryoprecipitate.
- Aspirin (also known as ASA, acetylsalicylic acid, or by a brand name) is used as a treatment for essential thrombocythemia. Record ONLY aspirin therapy to thin the blood for symptomatic control of thrombocythemia. To determine whether aspirin is administered for pain, cardiovascular protection, or thinning of platelets in the blood, use the following general guideline:

  - Pain control is approximately 325–1000 mg every 3–4 hours.
  - Cardiovascular protection starts at about 160 mg/day.
  - Aspirin treatment for essential thrombocythemia is low dose, approximately 70–100 mg/day.

Palliative Care

Palliative care is provided to prolong the patient's life by controlling symptoms, to alleviate persistent pain, or to make the patient more comfortable. Palliative care provided to relieve symptoms may include surgery, radiation therapy, systemic therapy (chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or other systemic drugs), and/or other pain management therapy. Palliative care is not used to diagnose or stage the primary tumor.

Any surgical procedure, radiation therapy, and/or systemic therapy that is provided to modify, control, remove, or destroy primary or metastatic cancer tissue, is coded in the respective first course treatment fields and also identified in the *Palliative Care* items. Refer to the preceding discussion of the surgery, radiation, and systemic therapy data items for specific coding guidelines. Because these treatments are less aggressive when given for palliation than for treatment, the treatment plan or treatment notes will indicate when they are performed for palliative purposes.

- Record as palliative care any of the treatment recorded in the first course therapy items that was provided to prolong the patient's life by managing the patient's symptoms, alleviating pain, or making the patient more comfortable.
- Palliative care can involve pain management that may not include surgery, radiation, or systemic treatment.
- It is possible for a patient to receive one or a combination of treatment modalities in conjunction with palliative care intended to reduce the burden of pain. For example, a patient with metastatic prostate cancer may receive an orchiectomy and systemic hormone therapy in combination with palliative radiation for bone metastasis.

TREATMENT, PALLIATIVE, AND PROPHYLACTIC CARE

Any first course radiation or systemic treatment that acts to kill cancer cells is to be reported as treatment. For example, when total body irradiation (TBI) is given to prepare the patient for a bone marrow transplant (BMT), the TBI acts in two ways. First, it suppresses the immune system to reduce the body's ability to reject the BMT. Second, it contributes to the patient's treatment by destroying cancer cells in the bone marrow, though its use alone would generally not be sufficient to produce a cure. Both the TBI and the BMT should be coded as treatment. The situation is analogous to the use of breast-conserving surgery and adjuvant radiation when the surgery or radiation alone may not be sufficient to produce a cure, though together they are more effective.

When first course surgery, systemic treatment, or radiation is undertaken to reduce the patient's symptoms, that treatment should be coded as palliative care. An example is radiation to bone metastasis for prostate cancer to reduce bone pain, which is palliative when there is no expectation that the radiation will effectively reduce the cancer burden. Palliative care involving surgery, systemic treatment, or radiation is also coded as treatment. This treatment qualifies the patient as analytic.

The term "prophylactic" is used in medical practice in a variety of ways. An action taken to prevent cancer from developing (such as double mastectomy for a healthy woman who has several relatives diagnosed with breasdt cancer when they were young) is not reportable; there is no cancer to report. Actions taken as part of planned first course treatment to prevent spread or recurrence of the cancer are sometimes characterized as "prophylactic" (for example, performing an oophorectomy or providing Tamoxifen to a breast cancer mastectomy patient). These treatments are to be coded as treatment.

Blank Page

Operative Text

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Text – DX Proc – OP	2570	1,000	01/10	Required

Description
Text area for manual documentation of all surgical procedures that provide information for staging.

In RMCDS, click on the box "T" on the left of the text line to open entire text box.

Rationale
Text documentation is an essential component of a complete electronic abstract and is heavily utilized for quality control and special studies. Text is needed to justify coded values and to document supplemental information not transmitted with coded values. High-quality text documentation facilitates consolidation of information from multiple reporting sources at the central registry.

The text field must contain a description that has been entered by the abstractor independently from the code(s). If cancer abstraction software generates text automatically from codes, the text cannot be utilized to check coded values. Information documenting the disease process should be entered manually from the medical record and should not be generated electronically from coded values.

Instructions for Coding
- Prioritize entered information in the order of the fields listed below.
- Text automatically generated from coded data is not acceptable.
- Approved abbreviations should be utilized.
- Do not repeat information from other text fields.
- Additional comments can be continued in empty text fields, including *Text – Remarks*. For text documentation that is continued from one text field to another, use asterisks or other symbols to indicate the connection with preceding text.
- If information is missing from the record, state that it is missing.
- Do not include irrelevant information.
- Do not include information that the registry is not authorized to collect.

Suggestions for text:
- Dates and descriptions of biopsies and all other surgical procedures from which staging information was derived
- Number of lymph nodes removed
- Size of tumor removed
- Documentation of residual tumor
- Evidence of invasion of surrounding areas

Data Item(s) to be verified/validated using the text entered in this field include the *Date of Diagnosis, Dx/Stage Procedure*, *Diagnostic Confirmation*, *Primary Site*, *Surgery of Primary Site*, *Collaborative Stage Variables*, *SEER Summary Stage 1977*, and *SEER Summary Stage 2000* fields. After manual entry of the text field, ensure that the text entered on both agrees with the coded values and clearly justifies the selected codes.

Surgery Text

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Text – Surgery	2610	1,000	01/10	Required

Description
Text area for information describing all surgical procedures performed as part of treatment.

In RMCDS, click on the box "T" on the left of the text line to open entire text box.

Rationale
Text documentation is an essential component of a complete electronic abstract and is heavily utilized for quality control and special studies. Text is needed to justify coded values and to document supplemental information not transmitted with coded values. High-quality text documentation facilitates consolidation of information from multiple reporting sources at the central registry.

The text field must contain a description that has been entered by the abstractor independently from the code(s). If cancer abstraction software generates text automatically from codes, the text cannot be utilized to check coded values. Information documenting the disease process should be entered manually from the medical record and should not be generated electronically from coded values.

Instructions for Coding
- Prioritize entered information in the order of the fields listed below.
- Text automatically generated from coded data is not acceptable.
- Approved abbreviations should be utilized.
- Do not repeat information from other text fields.
- Additional comments can be continued in empty text fields, including *Remarks*. For text documentation that is continued from one text field to another, use asterisks or other symbols to indicate the connection with preceding text.
- If information is missing from the record, state that it is missing.
- Do not include irrelevant information.
- Do not include information that the registry is not authorized to collect.

Suggestions for text:
- Date of each procedure
- Type(s) of surgical procedure(s), including excisional biopsies and surgery to other and distant sites
- Lymph nodes removed
- Regional tissues removed
- Metastatic sites
- Facility where each procedure was performed
- Record positive and negative findings; record positive findings first

Data Item(s) to be verified/validated using the text entered in this field include the *Date of Surgery*, *Surgery of Primary Site*, *Scope Regional LN Surgery*, *Surgery Other Reg/Dis*, *Date of First Course of Treatment*, *Reason for No Surgery*, *Surgical Margins*, *Palliative Care*, and *Place of Diagnosis* fields. After manual entry of the text field, ensure that the text entered on both agrees with the coded values and clearly justifies the selected codes.

Radiation (Beam) Text

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Text – Radiation (Beam)	2620	1,000	01/10	Required

Description
Text area for manual documentation of information regarding treatment of the tumor being reported with beam radiation.

In RMCDS, click on the box "T" on the left of the text line to open entire text box.

Rationale
Text documentation is an essential component of a complete electronic abstract and is heavily utilized for quality control and special studies. Text is needed to justify coded values and to document supplemental information not transmitted with coded values. High-quality text documentation facilitates consolidation of information from multiple reporting sources at the central registry.

The text field must contain a description that has been entered by the abstractor independently from the code(s). If cancer abstraction software generates text automatically from codes, the text cannot be utilized to check coded values. Information documenting the disease process should be entered manually from the medical record and should not be generated electronically from coded values.

Instructions for Coding
- Prioritize entered information in the order of the fields listed below.
- Text automatically generated from coded data is not acceptable.
- Approved abbreviations should be utilized.
- Do not repeat information from other text fields.
- Additional comments can be continued in empty text fields, including *Remarks*. For text documentation that is continued from one text field to another, use asterisks or other symbols to indicate the connection with preceding text.
- If information is missing from the record, state that it is missing.
- Do not include irrelevant information.
- Do not include information that the registry is not authorized to collect.

Suggestions for text:
- Date when radiation treatment began
- Where treatment was given (e.g., at this facility, at another facility)
- Type(s) of beam radiation (e.g., Orthovoltage, Cobalt 60, MV X-rays, Electrons, Mixed modalities)
- Other treatment information (e.g., patient discontinued after five treatments; unknown if radiation was given)

Data Item(s) to be verified/validated using the text entered in this field include the *Date of First Course of Treatment*, *Radiation*, *Surgery/Radiation Sequence*, *Reason for No Radiation*, *Date of Radiation*, *Regional Radiation Modality*, *Date Radiation Ended*, *No of Treatment Volume*, *Regional Dose cGy*, *Treatment Volume*, *Location of Radiation*, *Boost Radiation Modality*, and *Boost Dose cGy* fields. After manual entry of the text field, ensure that the text entered on both agrees with the coded values and clearly justifies the selected codes.

Radiation (Other) Text

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Text – Radiation Other	2630	1,000	01/10	Required

Description
Text area for manual documentation of information regarding treatment of the tumor being reported with radiation other than beam radiation. This includes brachytherapy and systemic radiation therapy.

In RMCDS, click on the box "T" on the left of the text line to open entire text box.

Rationale
Text documentation is an essential component of a complete electronic abstract and is heavily utilized for quality control and special studies. Text is needed to justify coded values and to document supplemental information not transmitted with coded values. High-quality text documentation facilitates consolidation of information from multiple reporting sources at the central registry.

The text field must contain a description that has been entered by the abstractor independently from the code(s). If cancer abstraction software generates text automatically from codes, the text cannot be utilized to check coded values. Information documenting the disease process should be entered manually from the medical record and should not be generated electronically from coded values.

Instructions for Coding
- Prioritize entered information in the order of the fields listed below.
- Text automatically generated from coded data is not acceptable.
- Approved abbreviations should be utilized.
- Do not repeat information from other text fields.
- Additional comments can be continued in empty text fields, including *Remarks*. For text documentation that is continued from one text field to another, use asterisks or other symbols to indicate the connection with preceding text.
- If information is missing from the record, state that it is missing.
- Do not include irrelevant information.
- Do not include information that the registry is not authorized to collect.

Suggestions for text:
- Date treatment was started
- Where treatment was given (e.g., at this facility, at another facility)
- Type(s) of non-beam radiation (e.g., High Dose rate brachytherapy, seed implant, Radioisotopes (I-131))
- Other treatment information (e.g., unknown if radiation was given)

Data Item(s) to be verified/validated using the text entered in this field include the *Date of First Course of Treatment*, *Radiation*, *Surgery/Radiation Sequence*, *Reason for No Radiation*, *Date of Radiation*, *Regional RX Modality*, *Date Radiation Ended*, *No of Treatment Volume*, *Regional Dose cGy*, *Treatment Volume*, *Location of Radiation*, *Boost RX Modality*, and *Boost Dose cGy* fields. After manual entry of the text field, ensure that the text entered on both agrees with the coded values and clearly justifies the selected codes.

Chemotherapy Text

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Text – Chemotherapy	2640	1,000	01/10	Required

Description
Text area for manual documentation of information regarding chemotherapy treatment of the reported tumor.

In RMCDS, click on the box "T" on the left of the text line to open entire text box.

Rationale
Text documentation is an essential component of a complete electronic abstract and is heavily utilized for quality control and special studies. Text is needed to justify coded values and to document supplemental information not transmitted with coded values. High-quality text documentation facilitates consolidation of information from multiple reporting sources at the central registry.

The text field must contain a description that has been entered by the abstractor independently from the code(s). If cancer abstraction software generates text automatically from codes, the text cannot be utilized to check coded values. Information documenting the disease process should be entered manually from the medical record and should not be generated electronically from coded values.

Instructions for Coding
- Prioritize entered information in the order of the fields listed below.
- Text automatically generated from coded data is not acceptable.
- Approved abbreviations should be utilized.
- Do not repeat information from other text fields.
- Additional comments can be continued in empty text fields, including *Remarks*. For text documentation that is continued from one text field to another, use asterisks or other symbols to indicate the connection with preceding text.
- If information is missing from the record, state that it is missing.
- Do not include irrelevant information.
- Do not include information that the registry is not authorized to collect.

Suggestions for text:
- Date chemotherapy began
- Where treatment was given (e.g., at this facility, at another facility)
- Type(s) of chemotherapy (e.g., name of agent(s) or protocol)
- Other treatment information (e.g., treatment cycle incomplete, unknown if chemotherapy was given)

Data Item(s) to be verified/validated using the text entered in this field include the *Date of First Course of Treatment*, *Chemotherapy*, *Date of Systemic Therapy*, and *Date of Chemotherapy* fields. After manual entry of the text field, ensure that the text entered on both agrees with the coded values and clearly justifies the selected codes.

Hormone Therapy Text

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Text – Hormone	2650	1,000	01/10	Required

Description
Text area for information about hormonal cancer-directed treatment.

In RMCDS, click on the box "T" on the left of the text line to open entire text box.

Rationale
Text documentation is an essential component of a complete electronic abstract and is heavily utilized for quality control and special studies. Text is needed to justify coded values and to document supplemental information not transmitted with coded values. High-quality text documentation facilitates consolidation of information from multiple reporting sources at the central registry.

The text field must contain a description that has been entered by the abstractor independently from the code(s). If cancer abstraction software generates text automatically from codes, the text cannot be utilized to check coded values. Information documenting the disease process should be entered manually from the medical record and should not be generated electronically from coded values.

Instructions for Coding
- Prioritize entered information in the order of the fields listed below.
- Text automatically generated from coded data is not acceptable.
- Approved abbreviations should be utilized.
- Do not repeat information from other text fields.
- Additional comments can be continued in empty text fields, including *Remarks*. For text documentation that is continued from one text field to another, use asterisks or other symbols to indicate the connection with preceding text.
- If information is missing from the record, state that it is missing.
- Do not include irrelevant information.
- Do not include information that the registry is not authorized to collect.

Suggestions for text:
- Date treatment was started
- Where treatment was given (e.g., at this facility, at another facility)
- Type of hormone or anti-hormone (e.g., Tamoxifen)
- Type of endocrine surgery or radiation (e.g., orchiectomy)
- Other treatment information (e.g., treatment cycle incomplete, unknown if hormones were given)

Data Item(s) to be verified/validated using the text entered in this field include the *Date of First Course of Treatment*, *Hormone*, *Date of Systemic Therapy*, and *Date of Hormone* fields. After manual entry of the text field, ensure that the text entered on both agrees with the coded values and clearly justifies the selected codes.

BRM/Immunotherapy Text

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Text – BRM	2660	1,000	01/10	Required

Description
Text area for manual documentation of information regarding the treatment of the tumor being reported with biological response modifiers or immunotherapy.

In RMCDS, click on the box "T" on the left of the text line to open entire text box.

Rationale
Text documentation is an essential component of a complete electronic abstract and is heavily utilized for quality control and special studies. Text is needed to justify coded values and to document supplemental information not transmitted with coded values. High-quality text documentation facilitates consolidation of information from multiple reporting sources at the central registry.

The text field must contain a description that has been entered by the abstractor independently from the code(s). If cancer abstraction software generates text automatically from codes, the text cannot be utilized to check coded values. Information documenting the disease process should be entered manually from the medical record and should not be generated electronically from coded values.

Instructions for Coding
- Prioritize entered information in the order of the fields listed below.
- Text automatically generated from coded data is not acceptable.
- Approved abbreviations should be utilized.
- Do not repeat information from other text fields.
- Additional comments can be continued in empty text fields, including *Remarks*. For text documentation that is continued from one text field to another, use asterisks or other symbols to indicate the connection with preceding text.
- If information is missing from the record, state that it is missing.
- Do not include irrelevant information.
- Do not include information that the registry is not authorized to collect.

Suggestions for text:
- Date treatment was started
- Where treatment was given (e.g., at this facility, at another facility)
- Type of BRM agent (e.g., Interferon, BCG)
- BRM procedures (e.g., bone marrow transplant, stem cell transplant)
- Other treatment information (e.g., treatment cycle incomplete, unknown if BRM was given)

Data Item(s) to be verified/validated using the text entered in this field include the *Date of First Course of Treatment*, *Transplant/Endocrine*, *Date of Systemic Therapy*, *BRM/Immunotherapy*, and *Date of BRM/Immunotherapy* fields. After manual entry of the text field, ensure that the text entered on both agrees with the coded values and clearly justifies the selected codes.

Other Treatment Text

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Text – Other	2670	1,000	01/10	Required

Description
Text area for manual documentation of information regarding the treatment of the tumor being reported with treatment that cannot be defined as surgery, radiation, or systemic therapy. This includes experimental treatments (when the mechanism of action for a drug is unknown) and blinded clinical trials. If the mechanism of action for the experimental drug is known, code to the appropriate treatment field.

In RMCDS, click on the box "T" on the left of the text line to open entire text box.

Rationale
Text documentation is an essential component of a complete electronic abstract and is heavily utilized for quality control and special studies. Text is needed to justify coded values and to document supplemental information not transmitted with coded values. High-quality text documentation facilitates consolidation of information from multiple reporting sources at the central registry.

The text field must contain a description that has been entered by the abstractor independently from the code(s). If cancer abstraction software generates text automatically from codes, the text cannot be utilized to check coded values. Information documenting the disease process should be entered manually from the medical record and should not be generated electronically from coded values.

Instructions for Coding
- Prioritize entered information in the order of the fields listed below.
- Text automatically generated from coded data is not acceptable.
- Approved abbreviations should be utilized.
- Do not repeat information from other text fields.
- Additional comments can be continued in empty text fields, including *Remarks*. For text documentation that is continued from one text field to another, use asterisks or other symbols to indicate the connection with preceding text.
- If information is missing from the record, state that it is missing.
- Do not include irrelevant information.
- Do not include information that the registry is not authorized to collect.

Suggestions for text:
- Date treatment was started
- Where treatment was given (e.g., at this facility, at another facility)
- Type of other treatment (e.g., blinded clinical trial, hyperthermia)
- Other treatment information (e.g., treatment cycle incomplete, unknown if other treatment was given)

Data Item(s) to be verified/validated using the text entered in this field include the *Date of First Course of Treatment*, *Other Treatment*, and *Date of Other Treatment* fields. After manual entry of the text field, ensure that the text entered on both agrees with the coded values and clearly justifies the selected codes.

Blank Page

Local Hospital

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Local Hospital (Facility)	540	3	04/07	Required

Description
Identifies the facility providing this treatment. Each facility providing treatment for this case should be recorded on a separate treatment page.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Local Hospital.

Rationale
The number is essential to monitor where treatment is being performed, ensuring the accuracy of data, and for identifying areas for special studies.

Instructions for Coding
- Record the facility number from the list below where the treatment was performed.
- Record each facility's treatment on a separate treatment page.
- Record 999 if the treatment was performed elsewhere in Montana and facility is unknown.
- Record 888 if the treatment was performed out-of-state.
- Record 111 if the treatment was performed in an in-state physician's office or free-standing surgical center.
- Click the Next button in the First Course Treatment screen in the RMCDS system to open another treatment page.

Montana Reporting Facilities

Hospitals

Number	NPI Number	ACoS Number	Facility Name	City
403	1568629764	6810010	Community Hospital of Anaconda	Anaconda
411	1316965346	6810013	Fallon Medical Complex	Baker
458	1730129305	6810005	Big Sandy Medical Center	Big Sandy
412	1265478291	6810020	Billings Clinic	Billings
413	1083655997	6810030	St. Vincent Healthcare	Billings
407	1720079619	6810040	Bozeman Deaconess Hospital	Bozeman
400	1528037215	6810055	St. James Healthcare	Butte
414	1497754782	6810085	Liberty Medical Center	Chester
415	1083602205	6810095	Teton Medical Center	Choteau
409	1054388387	6810100	Stillwater Community Hospital	Columbus
416	1467445049	6810110	Pondera Medical Center	Conrad
417	1598874232	6810123	Roosevelt Memorial Medical Center	Culbertson
418	1831143080	6810125	Northern Rockies Medical Center	Cut Bank
419	1275560617	6810129	Powell County Memorial Hospital	Deer Lodge
420	1326042078	6810135	Barrett Hospital and Healthcare	Dillon
421	1760531404	6810150	Dahl Memorial Healthcare Association	Ekalaka
405	1740223882	6810155	Madison Valley Hospital Association	Ennis
422	1023066081	6810160	Rosebud Healthcare Center	Forsyth
423	1356332266	6810170	Missouri River Medical Center	Fort Benton
424	1689685323	6810190	Frances Mahon Deaconess Hospital	Glasgow
425	1376552893	6810220	Glendive Medical Center	Glendive
427	1881650737	6810245	Benefis Hospital/Sletten Cancer Institute	Great Falls
480	1801897780	10000701	Great Falls Clinic	Great Falls
429	1659475846	6810260	Marcus Daly Memorial Hospital	Hamilton
430	1891713533	6810272	Big Horn County Memorial Hospital	Hardin
431	1073687406	6810285	Wheatland Memorial Healthcare	Harlowton
432	1427059070	6810290	Northern Montana Hospital	Havre
434	1710152277	6810330	St. Peter's Hospital	Helena
477	1417945627	6810360	Kalispell Regional Medical Center	Kalispell
438	1790798387	6810380	Central Montana Medical Center	Lewistown
439	1952312050	6810390	St. John's Lutheran Hospital	Libby
408	1245222306	6810395	Livingston Memorial Hospital	Livingston

Number	NPI Number	ACoS Number	Facility Name	City
440	1255476388	6810405	Phillips County Hospital	Malta
441	1548292220	6810410	Holy Rosary Healthcare	Miles City
443	1396711396	6810415	Community Medical Center	Missoula
445	1023032588	6810225	St. Patrick Hospital	Missoula
402	1922073907	6810440	Granite County Medical Center	Philipsburg
471	1265547939	6810445	Clark Fork Valley Hospital	Plains
446	1467452102	6810450	Sheridan Memorial Hospital Association	Plentywood
447	1821184888	6810460	St. Joseph Medical Center	Polson
448	1396766903	6810465	Northeast Montana Health Services	Poplar
410	1336119338	6810477	Beartooth Hospital & Health Center	Red Lodge
467	1336213446	6810481	St. Luke Community Hospital	Ronan
449	1386751196	6810485	Roundup Memorial Healthcare	Roundup
451	1346224391	6810505	Daniels Memorial Hospital	Scobey
468	1497742415	6819070	Marias Medical Center	Shelby
469	1083710651	6819075	Ruby Valley Hospital	Sheridan
452	1285719161	6810510	Sidney Health Center	Sidney
470	1093809196	6819080	Mineral Community Hospital	Superior
404	1447245857	6810530	Broadwater Health Center	Townsend
454	1396710851	6810550	North Valley Hospital	Whitefish
457	1811102270	6819100	Mountainview Medical Center	White Sulphur Springs
455	1821016536	6810560	Northeast Montana Health Services	Wolf Point

VA Hospitals

Number	NPI Number	ACoS Number	Facility Name	City
463	1457546384	6810180	Montana VAMC	Fort Harrison

Indian Health Services

Number	NPI Number	ACoS Number	Facility Name	City
478	1861409955	6810050	Blackfeet Indian Health Services	Browning
462	1235302142	6810120	Crow IHS Hospital	Crow Agency
464	1942367842	6810280	Fort Belknap IHS Hospital	Harlem
474	1972694602	9999999	Fort Peck IHS Poplar Health Services	Poplar

Radiation Centers

Number	NPI Number	ACoS Number	Facility Name	City
490	1902871544	6813498	Northern Rockies Radiation Oncology Center	Billings

Pathology Laboratories

Number	NPI Number	ACoS Number	Facility Name	City
498	1790787935	9999999	Yellowstone Pathology Institute	Billings
493	1669597266	9999999	Northern Plains Pathology	Great Falls
495	1740364017	9999999	Western Montana Clinic	Missoula

Physicians

Number	NPI Number	ACoS Number	Facility Name	City
200	1760485619	9999999	Tallman Dermatology	Billings
202	1003900457	9999999	Advanced Dermatology	Butte
208	1720073596	9999999	Dermatology Office of Great Falls	Great Falls
210	1003902909	9999999	Helena Dermatology	Helena
212	1497896229	9999999	Associated Dermatology of Helena	Helena
204	1114093846	9999999	Dermatology Associates of Kalispell	Kalispell

DX/Stage Procedure

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Summ – DX/Stage Proc	1350	2	01/04, 09/06, 01/09	Required

Description
Identifies the surgical procedure(s) performed in an effort to diagnose and/or stage disease.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Dx/Stage Procedure.

Rationale
This data item is used to track the use of surgical procedure resources that are not considered treatment.

Instructions for Coding

- Record the type of procedure performed as part of the initial diagnosis and workup, whether this is done at your institution or another facility.
- If both an incisional biopsy of the primary site and an incisional biopsy of a metastatic site are done, use code 02 (incisional biopsy of primary site).
- If a lymph node is biopsied or removed to diagnose or stage *lymphoma*, and that node is NOT the only node involved with the lymphoma, use code 02. If there is only a single lymph node involved with lymphoma, use the data item *Surgery of Primary Site* to code these procedures.
- Do not code surgical procedures which aspirate, biopsy, or remove *regional lymph nodes* in an effort to diagnose and/or stage disease in this data item. Use the data item *Scope of Regional Lymph Node Surgery* to code these procedures. Do not record the date of surgical procedures which aspirate, biopsy or remove regional lymph nodes in the data item *Date of DX/Stage Procedure*. See instructions for *Scope of Regional Lymph Node Surgery*.
- Code brushings, washings, cell aspiration, and hematologic findings (peripheral blood smears) as positive cytologic diagnostic confirmation in the data item *Diagnostic Confirmation*. These are not considered surgical procedures and should not be coded in this item.
- Do not code excisional biopsies with clear or microscopic margins in this data item. Use the data item *Surgery of Primary Site* to code these procedures.
- Do not code palliative surgical procedures in this data item. Use the data item *Palliative Care* to code these procedures.

Code	Definition
00	No surgical diagnostic or staging procedure was performed.
01	A biopsy (incisional, needle, or aspiration) was done to a site other than the primary. No exploratory procedure was done.
02	A biopsy (incisional, needle, or aspiration) was done to the primary site; or biopsy or removal of a lymph node to diagnose or stage lymphoma.
03	A surgical exploration only. The patient was not biopsied or treated.
04	A surgical procedure with a bypass was performed, but no biopsy was done.
05	An exploratory procedure was performed, and a biopsy of either the primary site or another site was done.
06	A bypass procedure was performed, and a biopsy of either the primary site or another site was done.
07	A procedure was done, but the type or procedure is unknown.
09	No information of whether a diagnostic or staging procedure was performed.

DX/Stage Procedure refers solely to surgical procedures performed specifically for diagnosis and staging of the tumor and do not apply to surgical treatment. *Date of DX/Stage Procedure* refers to the date on which the surgical diagnostic and/or staging procedure was performed at any facility.

EXCEPTION: Do not code surgical procedures that aspirate, biopsy, or remove regional lymph nodes in an effort to diagnose and/or stage disease in the data item *DX/Stage Procedure*. Use the data item *Scope of Regional Lymph Node Surgery* to code these procedures. Additionally, do not record the date of surgical procedures that aspirate, biopsy, or remove regional lymph nodes in the data item *Date of DX/Stage Procedure*. Record the date of this surgical procedure in the data item *Date of First Course of Treatment*.

Examples:

Code	Reason
00	A lung cancer primary was diagnosed by CT scan. The patient expired. No surgical diagnostic or staging surgical procedure was performed.
00	A sputum sample is examined cytologically to confirm a diagnosis of suspected lung cancer. The procedure is not surgical.
01	A needle biopsy of a liver metastasis in a patient with suspected widespread colon cancer was done. Gross residual tumor is left at the biopsy site.
01	A thoracentesis is performed on a patient with suspected lung primary, and the withdrawn sample is cytologically examined for confirmation of malignant pleural effusion.
02	During a colonoscopy, a biopsy of a primary rectal mass was done. Gross residual tumor is left at the biopsy site.
03	During abdominal exploratory surgery, a gastric lesion and suspicious retroperitoneal lymph nodes were observed. No biopsy or treatment was done.
04	An abdominal exploration of a patient revealed pancreatic carcinoma with extension into surrounding organs and arteries. No attempt to treat. A bypass was performed to alleviate symptoms.
05	An exploratory procedure was performed to primary colon carcinoma with biopsy of suspicious liver lesions.
06	Esophagogastrostomy was performed for infiltrating gastric tumor following a biopsy of the primary site.
07	Stage III lung carcinoma was diagnosed and staged prior to admission.
09	A patient expires in the emergency room with recently diagnosed metastatic melanoma. It is unknown whether a diagnostic or staging procedure was done.

Date of DX/Stage Procedure

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Date – DX/Stage Proc	1280	8	01/10	Required

Description
Records the date on which the surgical diagnostic and/or staging procedure was performed.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Date of Dx/Stage Procedure.

Rationale
This data item is used to track the use of surgical procedure resources that are not considered treatment.

Instructions for Coding

- Record the date on which the surgical diagnostic and/or staging procedure described in *DX/Stage Procedure* was performed at this or any facility.
- Beginning in 2010, the way dates are transmitted has changed. In order that the registry data can be interoperable with other data sources, dates are transmitted in a format widely accepted outside of the registry setting. However, this does not necessarily mean that the way dates are entered in any particular registry software product has changed. Software providers can provide the best information about date entry in their own systems. The traditional format for *Date of DX/Stage Procedure* is MMDDCCYY, with 99 identifying unknown month or day, and 99999999 representing an entirely unknown date. The interoperable form of *Date of DX/Stage Procedure* transmits in CCYYMMDD form, where blank spaces are used for unknown trailing portions of the date. The *Date of DX/Stage Procedure Flag* is used to explain why *Date of DX/Stage Procedure* is not a known date. See *Date of DX/Stage Procedure Flag* for an illustration of the relationships among these items.

Date of DX/Stage Procedure Flag

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Date – DX/Stage Proc Flag	281	2	New 01/10	Required

Description
This flag explains why there is no appropriate value in the corresponding date field, *Date of DX/Stage Procedure*.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Date of Dx/Stage Procedure Flag.

Rationale
As part of an initiative to standardize date fields, date flag fields were introduced to accommodate non-date information that had previously been transmitted in date fields.

Instructions for Coding
- Leave this item blank if *Date of DX/Stage Procedure* has a full or partial date recorded.
- Code 10 if it is unknown whether a surgical diagnostic or staging procedure was performed.
- Code 11 if no surgical diagnostic or staging procedure was performed.
- Code 12 if the *Date of DX/Stage Procedure* cannot be determined, but a surgical diagnostic or staging procedure was performed for the patient.
- Registrars should enter this data item directly (when appropriate) even if the traditional form of date entry is used in the software.

Code	Definition
10	No information whatsoever can be inferred from this exceptional value (that is, unknown if any diagnostic or staging procedure performed).
11	No proper value is applicable in this context (for example, no diagnostic or staging procedure performed; autopsy only case).
12	A proper value is applicable but not known. This event occurred, but the date is unknown (for example, diagnostic or staging procedure performed but date is unknown).
(Blank)	A valid date is provided in item *Date of DX/Stage Procedure*. Case was diagnosed prior to January 1, 2007.

The following table illustrates the use of the date flag and the traditional and interoperable date formats for coding *Date of DX/Stage Procedure* and *Date of DX/Stage Procedure Flag.* ***In the table below, the lowercase letter "b" is used to represent each blank space***.

Description	Traditional Date	Interoperable Date	Date Flag
	Date entered in MMDDCCYY sequence; unknown portions represented by 99 or 9999	**Date entered in CCYYMMDD sequence, leaving unknown portions blank (spaces);omit the date if the date is completely unknown**	
Full date known	MMDDYYCC (example: 02182007)	CCYYMMDD (example: 20070218)	bb
Month and year known	MM99CCYY (example: 02992007)	CCYYMMbb (example: 200702bb)	bb
Year only known	9999CCYY (example: 99992007)	CCYYbbbb (example: 2007bbbb)	bb
Unknown if procedure done	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	10
Procedure not done	00000000 (example: 00000000)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	11
Date is unknown, procedure done	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	12

Surgery of Primary Site

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Summ – Surg Primary Site	1290	2	09/04, 06/05, 01/10	Required

Description
Records the surgical procedure(s) performed to the primary site.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Surgery of Primary Site.

Rationale
This data item can be used to compare the efficacy of treatment options.

Instructions for Coding
- Site-specific codes for this data item are founding Appendix B.
- If registry software allows only one procedure to be collected, document the most invasive surgical procedure for the primary site.
- If registry software allows multiple procedures to be recorded, this item refers to the most invasive surgical procedure of the primary site.
- For codes 00 through 79, the response positions are hierarchical. Last-listed responses take precedence over responses written above. Code 98 takes precedence over code 00. Use codes 80 and 90 only if more precise information about the surgery is not available.
- Excisional biopsies (those that remove the entire tumor and/or leave only microscopic margins) are to be coded in this item.
- Surgery to remove regional tissue or organs is coded in this item only if the tissue/organs are removed in continuity with the primary site, except where noted in Appendix B.
- If a previous surgical procedure to remove a portion of the primary site is followed by surgery to remove the remainder of the primary site, then code the total or final results.
- If the procedure coded in this item was provided to prolong a patient's life by controlling symptoms, to alleviate pain, or to make the patient more comfortable, then also record this surgery in the item *Palliative Care*.
- There may be times when the first course of treatment information is incomplete. Therefore, it is important to continue follow-up efforts to be certain the complete treatment information is collected.

Code	Label	Definition
00	None	No surgical procedure of primary site. Diagnosed at autopsy.
10-19	Site-specific codes; tumor destruction	Tumor destruction, no pathologic specimen produced. Refer to Appendix B for the correct site-specific code for the procedure.
20-80	Site-specific codes; resection	Refer to Appendix B for the correct site-specific code for the procedure.
90	Surgery, NOS	A surgical procedure to the primary site was done, but no information on the type of surgical procedure is provided.
98	Site-specific codes; special	Special code. Refer to Appendix B for the correct site-specific code for the procedure.
99	Unknown	Patient record does not state whether a surgical procedure of the primary site was performed and no information is available. Death certificate only.

Date of Surgery

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Date – Surgery Date of 1st Surgical Procedure	1200	8	01/10	Required

Description
Records the earliest date on which any first course surgical procedure was performed. Formerly called "Date of Cancer-Directed Surgery".

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Date of Surgery.

Rationale
This data item can be used to sequence multiple treatment modalities and to evaluate the time intervals between treatments.

Instructions for Coding

- Record the date of the first surgical procedure of the types coded as *Surgery of Primary Site*, *Scope of Regional Lymph Node Surgery*, or *Surgical Procedure/Other Site* performed at this or any other facility.
- This date in this item may be the same as that in *Date of Surgery*, if the patient received only one surgical procedure and it was a resection of the primary site.
- If surgery is the first or only treatment administered to the patient, then the date of surgery should be the same as the date entered into the item *Date of First Course Treatment*.
- Beginning in 2010, the way dates are transmitted has changed. In order that the registry data can be interoperable with other data sources, dates are transmitted in a format widely accepted outside of the registry setting. However, this does not necessarily mean that the way dates are entered in any particular registry software product has changed. Software providers can provide the best information about date entry in their own systems. The traditional format for *Date of Surgery* is MMDDCCYY, with 99 identifying unknown month or day, and 99999999 representing an entirely unknown date. The interoperable form of *Date of Surgery* transmits in CCYYMMDD form, where blank spaces are used for unknown trailing portions of the date. The *Date of Surgery Flag* is used to explain why *Date of Surgery* is not a known date. See *Date of Surgery Flag* for an illustration of the relationships among these items.

Examples:

Code	Definition
03232008	A melanoma patient had an excisional biopsy on March 23, 2008, then a wide excision on March 28, 2008.
11162009	The patient had a small (0.5 cm) lump removed from her breast on November 16, 2009
03272007	The patient's primary tumor was treated with radiation beginning on April 16, 2007, after a distant metastasis was moved surgically on March 27, 2007.

Date of Surgery Flag

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Date – Surgery Flag	1201	2	New 01/10	Required

Description
This flag explains why there is no appropriate value in the corresponding date field, *Date of Surgery*.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Date of Surgery Flag.

Rationale
As part of an initiative to standardize date fields, date flag fields were introduced to accommodate non-date information that had previously been transmitted in date fields.

Instructions for Coding
- Leave this item blank if *Date of Surgery* has a full or partial date recorded.
- Code 12 if the *Date of Surgery* cannot be determined, but the patient did receive first course surgery.
- Code 10 if it is unknown whether any surgery was performed.
- Code 11 if no surgical procedure was performed.
- Registrars should enter this data item directly (when appropriate) even if the traditional form of date entry is used in the software.

Code	Definition
10	No information whatsoever can be inferred from this exceptional value (that is, unknown if any surgery performed).
11	No proper value is applicable in this context (for example, no surgery performed; autopsy only case).
12	A proper value is applicable but not known. This event occurred, but the date is unknown (for example, surgery was performed but date is unknown).
(Blank)	A valid date is provided in item *Date of Surgery*.

The following table illustrates the use of the date flag and the traditional and interoperable date formats for coding *Date of Surgery* and *Date of Surgery Flag*. ***In the table below, the lowercase letter "b" is used to represent each blank space***.

Description	Traditional Date	Interoperable Date	Date Flag
	Date entered in MMDDCCYY sequence; unknown portions represented by 99 or 9999	**Date entered in CCYYMMDD sequence, leaving unknown portions blank (spaces);omit the date if the date is completely unknown**	
Full date known	MMDDYYCC (example: 02182007)	CCYYMMDD (example: 20070218)	bb
Month and year known	MM99CCYY (example: 02992007)	CCYYMMbb (example: 200702bb)	bb
Year only known	9999CCYY (example: 99992007)	CCYYbbbb (example: 2007bbbb)	bb
Unknown if any surgery performed	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	10
No surgery performed	00000000 (example: 00000000)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	11
Date is unknown, surgery performed	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	12

Date of Surgical Discharge

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Date – Surgical Discharge	3180	8	01/10	Optional

Description
Records the date the patient was discharged following primary site surgery. The date corresponds to the event recorded in *Surgery of Primary Site* and *Date of Surgery*.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Date of Surgical Discharge.

Rationale
Length of stay is an important quality of care and financial measure among hospital administrations, those who fund public and private health care, and public health users. This date, in conjunction with the data item *Date of Surgery*, will allow for the calculation of a patient's length of hospitalization associated with primary site surgery.

Instructions for Coding

- Record the date the patient was discharged from the hospital following the event recorded in *Surgery of Primary Site*.
- If the patient died following the event recorded in *Surgery of Primary Site*, but before being discharged from the treating facility, then the *Date of Surgical Discharge* is the same as the date recorded in the data item *Date of Last Contact or Death*.
- If the patient received out-patient surgery, then the date of surgical discharge is the same as the date recorded in the data item *Date of Surgery*.
- Beginning in 2010, the way dates are transmitted has changed. In order that the registry data can be interoperable with other data sources, dates are transmitted in a format widely accepted outside of the registry setting. However, this does not necessarily mean that the way dates are entered in any particular registry software product has changed. Software providers can provide the best information about date entry in their own systems. The traditional format for *Date of Surgical Discharge* is MMDDCCYY, with 99 identifying unknown month or day, and 99999999 representing an entirely unknown date. The interoperable form of *Date of Surgical Discharge* transmits in CCYYMMDD form, where blank spaces are used for unknown trailing portions of the date. The *Date of Surgical Discharge Flag* is used to explain why *Date of Surgical Discharge* is not a known date. See *Date of Surgical Discharge Flag* for an illustration of the relationships among these items.

Date of Surgical Discharge Flag

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Date – Surg Disch Flag	3181	2	New 01/10	Optional

Description
This flag explains why there is no appropriate value in the corresponding date field, *Date of Surgical Discharge*.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Date of Surgical Discharge Flag.

Rationale
As part of an initiative to standardize date fields, date flag fields were introduced to accommodate non-date information that had previously been transmitted in date fields.

Instructions for Coding
- Leave this item blank if *Date of Surgical Discharge* has a full or partial date recorded.
- Code 12 if the *Date of Surgical Discharge* cannot be determined, but the patient did receive first course surgery.
- Code 10 if it is unknown whether any surgery was performed.
- Code 11 if no surgical procedure was performed.
- Registrars should enter this data item directly (when appropriate) even if the traditional form of date entry is used in the software.
- Leave blank for cases diagnosed prior to January 1, 2003.

Code	Definition
10	No information whatsoever can be inferred from this exceptional value (that is, unknown if any surgery performed).
11	No proper value is applicable in this context (for example, no surgery performed; autopsy only case).
12	A proper value is applicable but not known. This event occurred, but the date is unknown (for example, surgery was performed but date is unknown).
(Blank)	A valid date is provided in item *Date of Surgical Discharge*. The case was diagnosed prior to January 1, 2003.

The following table illustrates the use of the date flag and the traditional and interoperable date formats for coding *Date of Surgical Discharge* and *Date of Surgical Discharge Flag*. ***In the table below, the lowercase letter "b" is used to represent each blank space***.

Description	Traditional Date	Interoperable Date	Date Flag
	Date entered in MMDDCCYY sequence; unknown portions represented by 99 or 9999	**Date entered in CCYYMMDD sequence, leaving unknown portions blank (spaces);omit the date if the date is completely unknown**	
Full date known	MMDDYYCC (example: 02182007)	CCYYMMDD (example: 20070218)	bb
Month and year known	MM99CCYY (example: 02992007)	CCYYMMbb (example: 200702bb)	bb
Year only known	9999CCYY (example: 99992007)	CCYYbbbb (example: 2007bbbb)	bb
Unknown if any surgery performed	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	10
No primary site surgery performed	00000000 (example: 00000000)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	11
Date is unknown, primary site surgery performed	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	12

Radiation

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Summ – Radiation	1360	1		Required

Description
Records the type of radiation therapy administered as first course treatment at this and all other facilities. This field is replaced with Radiation Treatment Modality but is available for entry for historical purposes.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Radiation.

Rationale
This data item allows for the evaluation of the administration of radiation therapy as part of the first course of therapy. In addition, when evaluating the quality of care, it is useful to know the reason if radiation therapy was not administered.

Instructions for Coding
- Radiation to brain and central nervous system for leukemia and lung cases is coded as radiation in this field.

Code	Definition
0	None
1	Beam radiation
2	Radioactive implants
3	Radioisotopes
4	Combination of 1 with 2 or 3
5	Radiation, NOS – method or source not specified
9	Unknown if radiation administered

Date Radiation Started

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Date – Radiation	1210	8	06/05, 01/10	Required

Description
Records the date on which radiation therapy began at any facility that is part of the first course of treatment.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Date Radiation Started.

Rationale
It is important to be able to sequence the use of multiple treatment modalities and to evaluate the time intervals between the treatments. For some diseases, the sequence of radiation and surgical therapy is important when determining the analytic utility of pathologic stage information.

Instructions for Coding

- If radiation therapy is the first or only treatment administered to the patient, then the date radiation started should be the same as the date entered into the item *Date of First Course of Treatment*.
- The date when treatment started will typically be found in the radiation oncologist's summary letter for the first course of treatment.
- There may be times when the first course of treatment information is incomplete. Therefore, it is important to continue follow-up efforts to be certain the complete treatment information is collected.
- Beginning in 2010, the way dates are transmitted has changed. In order that the registry data can be interoperable with other data sources, dates are transmitted in a format widely accepted outside of the registry setting. However, this does not necessarily mean that the way dates are entered in any particular registry software product has changed. Software providers can provide the best information about date entry in their own systems. The traditional format for *Date Radiation Started* is MMDDCCYY, with 99 identifying unknown month or day, and 99999999 representing an entirely unknown date. The interoperable form of *Date Radiation Started* transmits in CCYYMMDD form, where blank spaces are used for unknown trailing portions of the date. The *Date Radiation Started Flag* is used to explain why *Date Radiation Started* is not a known date. See *Date Radiation Started Flag* for an illustration of the relationships among these items.

Examples:

Code	Definition
12152003	A patient has external beam radiation on December 15, 2003.
10122003	A patient with a primary tumor of the brain undergoes stereotactic radiosurgery using a Gamma Knife on October 12, 2003.
06022003	A patient enters the facility for interstitial radiation boost for prostate cancer that is performed on August 6, 2003. Just prior to this, the patient had external beam therapy to the lower pelvis that was started on June 2, 2003 at another facility.

Date Radiation Started Flag

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Date – Radiation Flag	1211	2	New 01/10	Required

Description
This flag explains why there is no appropriate value in the corresponding date field, *Date Radiation Started*.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Date Radiation Started Flag.

Rationale
As part of an initiative to standardize date fields, date flag fields were introduced to accommodate non-date information that had previously been transmitted in date fields.

Instructions for Coding
- Leave this item blank if *Date Radiation Started* has a full or partial date recorded.
- Code 12 if the *Date Radiation Started* cannot be determined, but the patient did receive first course radiation.
- Code 10 if it is unknown whether any radiation was performed.
- Code 11 if no radiation is planned or given.
- Code 15 if radiation is planned, but has not yet started and the start date is not yet available. Follow this patient for radiation treatment and update this item, *Date Radiation Started*, and all other radiation items.
- Registrars should enter this data item directly (when appropriate) even if the traditional form of date entry is used in the software.

Code	Definition
10	No information whatsoever can be inferred from this exceptional value (that is, unknown if any radiation was given).
11	No proper value is applicable in this context (for example, no radiation given).
12	A proper value is applicable but not known. This event occurred, but the date is unknown (for example, radiation was given but date is unknown).
15	If information is not available at this time, but it is expected that it will be available later (for example, radiation therapy is planned as part of first course of therapy, but had not been started at the time of the most recent follow-up).
(Blank)	A valid date is provided in item *Date Radiation Started*.

The following table illustrates the use of the date flag and the traditional and interoperable date formats for coding *Date Radiation Started* and *Date Radiation Started Flag.* ***In the table below, the lowercase letter "b" is used to represent each blank space***.

Description	**Traditional Date**	**Interoperable Date**	**Date Flag**
	Date entered in MMDDCCYY sequence; unknown portions represented by 99 or 9999	**Date entered in CCYYMMDD sequence, leaving unknown portions blank (spaces);omit the date if the date is completely unknown**	
Full date known	MMDDYYCC (example: 02182007)	CCYYMMDD (example: 20070218)	bb
Month and year known	MM99CCYY (example: 02992007)	CCYYMMbb (example: 200702bb)	bb
Year only known	9999CCYY (example: 99992007)	CCYYbbbb (example: 2007bbbb)	bb
Unknown if any radiation given	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	10
No radiation given	00000000 (example: 00000000)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	11
Date is unknown, radiation given	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	12
Radiation not started yet	88888888 (example: 88888888)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	15

Date Radiation Ended

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Date – Radiation Ended	3220	8	06/05, 01/10	Recommended

Description
Records the date on which patient completes or receives the last radiation treatment at any facility.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Date Radiation Ended.

Rationale
The length of time over which radiation therapy is administered to a patient is a factor in tumor control and treatment morbidity. It is useful to evaluate the quality of care and the success of patient support programs designed to maintain continuity of treatment.

Instructions for Coding

- The date when treatment ended will typically be found in the radiation oncologist's summary letter for the first course of treatment.
- For brachytherapy if the treatment is applied only once, this date will be the same as *Date Radiation Started*.
- There may be times when the first course of treatment information is incomplete. Therefore, it is important to continue follow-up efforts to be certain the complete treatment information is collected.
- Beginning in 2010, the way dates are transmitted has changed. In order that the registry data can be interoperable with other data sources, dates are transmitted in a format widely accepted outside of the registry setting. However, this does not necessarily mean that the way dates are entered in any particular registry software product has changed. Software providers can provide the best information about date entry in their own systems. The traditional format for *Date Radiation Ended* is MMDDCCYY, with 99 identifying unknown month or day, and 99999999 representing an entirely unknown date. The interoperable form of *Date Radiation Ended* transmits in CCYYMMDD form, where blank spaces are used for unknown trailing portions of the date. The *Date Radiation Ended Flag* is used to explain why *Date Radiation Ended* is not a known date. See *Date Radiation Ended Flag* for an illustration of the relationships among these items.

Examples:

Code	Definition
01042005	A patient starts IMRT radiation treatment on December 15, 2004 and treatment continues until January 4, 2005.
10022009	A patient receives one radiation treatment on October 2, 2009, then refuses further treatments.
04042006	A patient with a primary tumor of the brain undergoes stereotactic radiosurgery using a Gamma Knife on April 4, 2006.

Date Radiation Ended Flag

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Date – Rad Ended Flag	3221	2	New 01/10	Optional

Description
This flag explains why there is no appropriate value in the corresponding date field, *Date Radiation Ended*.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Date Radiation Ended Flag.

Rationale
As part of an initiative to standardize date fields, date flag fields were introduced to accommodate non-date information that had previously been transmitted in date fields.

Instructions for Coding
- Leave this item blank if *Date Radiation Ended* has a full or partial date recorded.
- Code 12 if the *Date Radiation Ended* cannot be determined, but the patient did receive first course radiation.
- Code 10 if it is unknown whether any radiation was performed.
- Code 11 if no radiation is planned or given.
- Code 15 if radiation is ongoing. Follow this patient for radiation treatment and update this item, *Date Radiation Ended*, and all other radiation items.
- Registrars should enter this data item directly (when appropriate) even if the traditional form of date entry is used in the software.

Code	Definition
10	No information whatsoever can be inferred from this exceptional value (that is, unknown if any radiation was given).
11	No proper value is applicable in this context (for example, no radiation given).
12	A proper value is applicable but not known. This event occurred, but the date is unknown (for example, radiation was given but date is unknown).
15	If information is not available at this time, but it is expected that it will be available later (for example, radiation therapy had begun at the time of the most recent follow-up but was not yet completed).
(Blank)	A valid date is provided in item *Date Radiation Ended*.

The following table illustrates the use of the date flag and the traditional and interoperable date formats for coding *Date Radiation Ended* and *Date Radiation Ended Flag.* ***In the table below, the lowercase letter "b" is used to represent each blank space***.

Description	**Traditional Date**	**Interoperable Date**	**Date Flag**
	Date entered in MMDDCCYY sequence; unknown portions represented by 99 or 9999	**Date entered in CCYYMMDD sequence, leaving unknown portions blank (spaces);omit the date if the date is completely unknown**	
Full date known	MMDDYYCC (example: 02182007)	CCYYMMDD (example: 20070218)	bb
Month and year known	MM99CCYY (example: 02992007)	CCYYMMbb (example: 200702bb)	bb
Year only known	9999CCYY (example: 99992007)	CCYYbbbb (example: 2007bbbb)	bb
Unknown if any radiation given	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	10
No radiation given	00000000 (example: 00000000)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	11
Date is unknown, radiation given	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	12
Radiation is ongoing	88888888 (example: 88888888)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	15

Regional Treatment Modality

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	1570	2	09/04, 09/06, 01/09	Required

Description
Records the dominant modality of radiation therapy used to deliver the most clinically significant regional dose to the primary volume of interest during the first course of treatment.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Regional Treatment Modality.

Rationale
Radiation treatment is frequently delivered in two or more phases which can be summarized as "regional" and "boost" treatments. To evaluate patterns of radiation oncology care, it is necessary to know which radiation resources were employed in the delivery of therapy. For outcomes analysis, the modalities used for each of these phases can be very important.

Instructions for Coding
- Radiation treatment modality will typically be found in the radiation oncologist's summary letter for the first course of treatment. Segregation of treatment components into regional and boost and determination of the respective treatment modality may require assistance from the radiation oncologist to ensure consistent coding.
- In the event multiple radiation therapy modalities were employed in the treatment of the patient, record only the dominant modality.
- Note that in some circumstances the boost treatment may precede the regional treatment.
- For purposes of this data item, photons and x-rays are equivalent.
- Code IMRT or conformal 3D whenever either is explicitly mentioned.
- Code radioembolization as brachytherapy.

Code	Label	Definition
00	No radiation treatment	Radiation therapy was not administered to the patient. Diagnosed at autopsy.
20	External beam, NOS	The treatment is known to be by external beam, but there is insufficient information to determine the specific modality.
21	Orthovoltage	External beam therapy administered using equipment with a maximum energy of less than one (1) million volts (MV). Orthovoltage energies are typically expressed in units of kilovolts (kV).
22	Cobalt-60, Cesium-137	External beam therapy using a machine containing either a Cobalt-60 or Cesium-137 source. Intracavitary use of these sources is coded either 50 or 51.
23	Photons (2-5 MV)	External beam therapy using a photon producing machine with a beam energy in the range of 2-5 MV.
24	Photons (6-10 MV)	External beam therapy using a photon producing machine with a beam energy in the range of 6-10 MV.
25	Photons (11-19 MV)	External beam therapy using a photon producing machine with a beam energy in the range of 11-19 MV.
26	Photons (>19 MV)	External beam therapy using a photon producing machine with a beam energy of more than 19 MV.
27	Photons (mixed energies)	External beam therapy using more than one energy over the course of treatment.
28	Electrons	Treatment delivered by electron beam.

Code	Label	Definition
29	Photons and electrons mixed	Treatment delivered using a combination of photon and electron beams.
30	Neutrons, with or without photons/electrons	Treatment delivered using neutron beam.
31	IMRT	Intensity modulated radiation therapy, an external beam technique that should be clearly stated in patient record.
32	Conformal or 3-D therapy	An external beam technique using multiple, fixed portals shaped to conform to a defined target volume. Should be clearly described as conformal or 3-D therapy in patient record.
40	Protons	Treatment delivered using proton therapy.
41	Stereotactic radiosurgery, NOS	Treatment delivered using stereotactic radiosurgery, type not specified in patient record.
42	Linac radiosurgery	Treatment categorized as using stereotactic technique delivered with a linear accelerator.
43	Gamma Knife	Treatment categorized as using stereotactic technique delivered using a Gamma Knife machine.
50	Brachytherapy, NOS	Brachytherapy, interstitial implants, molds, seeds, needles, radioembolization, or intracavitary applicators of radioactive materials not otherwise specified.
51	Brachytherapy, Intracavitary, LDR	Intracavitary (no direct insertion into tissues) radio-isotope treatment using low dose rate applicators and isotopes (Cesium-137, Fletcher applicator).
52	Brachytherapy, Intracavitary, HDR	Intracavitary (no direct insertion into tissues) radioisotope treatment using high dose rate after-loading applicators and isotopes.
53	Brachytherapy, Interstitial, LDR	Interstitial (direct insertion into tissues) radioisotope treatment using low dose rate sources.
54	Brachytherapy, Interstitial, HDR	Interstitial (direct insertion into tissues) radioisotope treatment using high dose rate sources.
55	Radium	Infrequently used for low dose rate (LDR) interstitial and intracavitary therapy.
60	Radioisotopes, NOS	Iodine-131, Phosphorus-32, etc.
61	Strontium-89	Treatment primarily by intravenous routes for bone metastases.
62	Strontium-90	
80*	Combination modality, specified*	Combination of external beam radiation and either radioactive implants or radioisotopes.*
85*	Combination modality, NOS*	Combination of radiation treatment modalities not specified in code 80.*
98	Other, NOS	Other radiation, NOS; Radiation therapy is administered, but the treatment modality is not specified or is unknown.
99	Unknown	It is unknown whether radiation therapy was administered.

* ***Note:*** For cases diagnosed prior to January 1, 2003, the codes reported in this data item describe any radiation administered to the patient as part or all of the first course of therapy. Codes 80 and 85 describe specific converted descriptions of radiation therapy coded according to *Vol. II, ROADS*, and *DAM* rules and **should not** be used to record regional radiation for cases diagnosed on or later than January 1, 2003.

Examples:

Code	Reason
20	A patient with prostate carcinoma receives pelvic irradiation at the reporting facility, and is then referred to a major medical center for experimental proton therapy boost.
24	A patient treated with breast conserving surgery has an interstitial boost at the time of the excisional biopsy. The implant uses Ir-192 and is left in place for three days. This is followed by 6 MV photon treatment of the entire breast. In this case, the "boost" precedes the regional treatment.
25	In an experimental program, a patient with a Stage III carcinoma of the prostate receives 4,500 cGy to the pelvis using 15 MV photons, and then the prostate receives a 600 cGy boost with neutrons.
25	Patient receives 15 MV external pelvis treatment to 4,500 cGy for cervical carcinoma, and then receives two Fletcher intracavitary implants.
29	A patient with carcinoma of the parotid receives daily treatments of which 60% are delivered by 15 MV photons and 40% of the dose is delivered by 16 MV electrons.
99	A patient with a head and neck cancer was referred from another facility for an HDR Brachytherapy boost. Detailed treatment records from the other facility are not available.

Boost Treatment Modality

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3200	2	01/04, 01/09	Optional

Description
Records the dominant modality of radiation therapy used to deliver the most clinically significant boost dose to the primary volume of interest during the first course of treatment. This is accomplished with external beam fields of reduced size (relative to the regional treatment fields), implants, stereotactic radiosurgery, conformal therapy, or IMRT. External beam boosts may consist of two or more successive phases with progressively smaller fields generally coded as a single entity.

In RMCDS, click on the button "Radiation Detail" to enter Modality, cGy, Treatment Volume, and Location of Treatment.

Rationale
Radiation treatment is frequently delivered in two or more phases which can be summarized as "regional" and "boost" treatments. To evaluate patterns of radiation oncology care, it is necessary to know which radiation resources were employed in the delivery of therapy. For outcomes analysis, the modalities used for each of these phases can be very important.

Instructions for Coding
- Radiation boost treatment modalities will typically be found in the radiation oncologist's summary letter for the first course of treatment. Segregation of treatment components into regional and boost and determination of the respective treatment modality may require assistance from the radiation oncologist to ensure consistent coding.
- In the event multiple radiation therapy boost modalities were employed in the treatment of the patient, record only the dominant modality.
- Note that in some circumstances the boost treatment may precede the regional treatment.
- For purposes of this data item, photons and x-rays are equivalent.
- Code radioembolization as brachytherapy.

Code	Label	Definition
00	No boost treatment	A boost dose was not administered to the patient. Diagnosed at autopsy.
20	External beam, NOS	The treatment is known to be by external beam, but there is insufficient information to determine the specific modality.
21	Orthovoltage	External beam therapy administered using equipment with a maximum energy of less than one (1) million volts (MV). Orthovoltage energies are typically expressed in units of kilovolts (kV).
22	Cobalt-60, Cesium-137	External beam therapy using a machine containing either a Cobalt-60 or Cesium-137 source. Intracavitary use of these sources is coded either 50 or 51.
23	Photons (2-5 MV)	External beam therapy using a photon producing machine with a beam energy in the range of 2-5 MV.
24	Photons (6-10 MV)	External beam therapy using a photon producing machine with a beam energy in the range of 6-10 MV.
25	Photons (11-19 MV)	External beam therapy using a photon producing machine with a beam energy in the range of 11-19 MV.
26	Photons (>19 MV)	External beam therapy using a photon producing machine with a beam energy of more than 19 MV.
27	Photons (mixed energies)	External beam therapy using more than one energy over the course of treatment.

Code	Label	Definition
28	Electrons	Treatment delivered by electron beam.
30	Neutrons, with or without photons/electrons	Treatment delivered using neutron beam.
31	IMRT	Intensity modulated radiation therapy, an external beam technique that should be clearly stated in patient record.
32	Conformal or 3-D therapy	An external beam technique using multiple, fixed portals shaped to conform to a defined target volume. Should be clearly described as conformal or 3-D therapy in patient record.
40	Protons	Treatment delivered using proton therapy.
41	Stereotactic radiosurgery, NOS	Treatment delivered using stereotactic radiosurgery, type not specified in patient record.
42	Linac radiosurgery	Treatment categorized as using stereotactic technique delivered with a linear accelerator.
43	Gamma Knife	Treatment categorized as using stereotactic technique delivered using a Gamma Knife machine.
50	Brachytherapy, NOS	Brachytherapy, interstitial implants, molds, seeds, needles, radioembolization, or intracavitary applicators of radioactive materials not otherwise specified.
51	Brachytherapy, Intracavitary, LDR	Intracavitary (no direct insertion into tissues) radio-isotope treatment using low dose rate applicators and isotopes (Cesium-137, Fletcher applicator).
52	Brachytherapy, Intracavitary, HDR	Intracavitary (no direct insertion into tissues) radioisotope treatment using high dose rate after-loading applicators and isotopes.
53	Brachytherapy, Interstitial, LDR	Interstitial (direct insertion into tissues) radioisotope treatment using low dose rate sources.
54	Brachytherapy, Interstitial, HDR	Interstitial (direct insertion into tissues) radioisotope treatment using high dose rate sources.
55	Radium	Infrequently used for low dose rate (LDR) interstitial and intracavitary therapy.
60	Radioisotopes, NOS	Iodine-131, Phosphorus-32, etc.
61	Strontium-89	Treatment primarily by intravenous routes for bone metastases.
62	Strontium-90	
98	Other, NOS	Radiation therapy administered, but the treatment modality is not specified or is unknown.
99	Unknown	It is unknown whether radiation therapy was administered. Death certificate only.

Examples:

Code	Reason
29	A patient with carcinoma of the tonsil receives 4,500 cGy to the head and neck region with 6MV photons. The primary site and involved regional lymph nodes are then boosted, i.e., taken to a maximum dose of 7,400 cGy, using a sequence of beam arrangements involving 6 MV photons, 15 MV photons, and 12 MV electrons.
30	In an experimental program, a patient with Stage III carcinoma of the prostate receives 4,500 cGy to the pelvis using 15 MV photons, and then the prostate receives a 600 cGy boost with neutrons.
40	A patient with prostate carcinoma receives pelvic irradiation at the reporting facility and is referred to a major medical center for experimental proton therapy boost.
51	A patient receives external pelvic treatment to 4,500 cGy for cervical carcinoma, then receives two Fletcher intracavitary implants as boost treatment.
55	A patient treated with breast conserving surgery has an interstitial boost at the time of the excisional biopsy. The implant uses Ir-192 and is left in place for three days.
99	A patient with a head and neck cancer was referred to another facility for an HDR Brachytherapy boost. Detailed treatment records from the other facility are not available.

Boost Dose: cGy

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3210	5	09/04, 06/05	Optional

Description
Records the additional dose delivered to that part of the treatment volume encompassed by the boost fields or devices. The unit of measure is centiGray (cGy).

In RMCDS, click on the button "Radiation Detail" to enter Modality, cGy, Treatment Volume, and Location of Treatment.

Rationale
To evaluate patterns of radiation oncology care, it is necessary to capture information describing the prescribed regional radiation dose. Outcomes are strongly related to the dose delivered.

Instructions for Coding

- The International Council for Radiation Protection (ICRP) recommends recording doses at the axis point where applicable (opposed fields, four field box, wedged pair, and so on). For maximum consistency in this data item, the ICRP recommendations should be followed whenever possible. Where there is no clear axis point, record the dose as indicated in the summary chart. Consult the radiation oncologist for the exact dose, if necessary.
- Radiation boost treatment dose will typically be found in the radiation oncologist's summary letter for the first course treatment. Determination of the additional boost dose of radiation therapy may require assistance from the radiation oncologist for consistent coding.
- Do not include the regional dose. In general, the boost dose will be calculated as the difference between the maximum prescribed dose and the regional dose. Many patients will not have a boost.
- Code 88888 when brachytherapy or radioisotopes – codes 50-62 for *Boost Treatment Modality* – were administered to the patient.
- Note that dose is still occasionally specified in "rads". One rad is equivalent to one centiGray (cGy).
- There may be times when the first course of treatment information is incomplete. Therefore, it is important to continue follow-up efforts to be certain the complete treatment information is collected.

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	Record the actual boost dose delivered.
00000	Boost dose therapy was not administered. Diagnosed at autopsy.
88888	Not applicable, brachytherapy or radioisotopes administered to the patient.
99999	Boost radiation therapy was administered, but the dose is unknown. Death certificate only.

Examples:

Code	Reason
02000	A patient with Stage III prostate carcinoma received pelvic irradiation to 5,000 cGy followed by a conformal prostate boost to 7,000 cGy. Record the prescribed (and delivered) boost dose, 2,000 cGy (7,000 cGy minus 5,000 cGy).
00000	A patient with a left supraclavicular metastasis from a gastric carcinoma received 6,000 cGy to the left supraclavicular region. The dose is calculated at a prescribed depth of 3 cm. A secondary calculation shows a D_{max} dose (dose at depth of maximum dose) of 6,450 cGy. Do not confuse D_{max} doses with boost doses. In this case, there is no planned boost. Record the boost dose as 00000 cGy.
88888	A patient with a Stage II breast carcinoma is treated with the breast intact. Tangent fields are utilized to bring the dose of the breast to 5,040 cGy. The supraclavicular lymph nodes are treated 4,500 cGy, calculated to a depth of 3 cm, and an interstitial boost in the primary tumor bed is delivered to a small volume in the breast. Record the boost dost as 88888. Note that standards for describing an interstitial or intracavitary treatment with a single number are somewhat variable.

Regional Dose: cGy

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	1510	5	01/04	Recommended

Description
Records the dominant or most clinically significant total dose of regional radiation therapy delivered to the patient during the first course of treatment. The unit of measure is centiGray (cGy).

In RMCDS, click on the button "Radiation Detail" to enter Modality, cGy, Treatment Volume, and Location of Treatment.

Rationale
To evaluate patterns of radiation oncology care, it is necessary to capture information describing the prescribed regional radiation dose. Outcomes are strongly related to the dose delivered.

Instructions for Coding

- The International Council for Radiation Protection (ICRP) recommends recording doses at the axis point where applicable (opposed fields, four field box, wedged pair, and so on). For maximum consistency in this data item, the ICRP recommendations should be followed whenever possible. Where there is no clear axis point, record the dose as indicated in the summary chart. Determining the exact dose may be highly subjective and require assistance from the radiation oncologist for consistent coding.
- Regional dose will typically be found in the radiation oncologist's summary letter for the first course treatment. Determination of the total dose of regional radiation therapy may require assistance from the radiation oncologist for consistent coding.
- Do not include the boost dose, if one was administered.
- Code 88888 when Brachytherapy or radioisotopes – codes 50-62 for Regional Treatment Modality – were administered to the patient.
- Note that dose is still occasionally specified in "rads". One rad is equivalent to one centiGray (cGy).

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	Record the actual regional dose delivered.
00000	Radiation therapy was not administered. Diagnosed at autopsy.
88888	Not applicable, brachytherapy or radioisotopes administered to the patient.
99999	Regional radiation therapy was administered, but the dose is unknown; it is unknown whether radiation therapy was administered. Death certificate only.

Examples:

Code	Reason
05000	A patient with Stage III prostate carcinoma received pelvic irradiation to 5,000 cGy followed by a prostate boost to 7,000 cGy. Record the regional dose as 5,000 cGy.
06000	A patient with a left supraclavicular metastasis from a gastric carcinoma received 6,000 cGy to the left supraclavicular region. The dose is calculated at a prescribed depth of 3 cm. A secondary calculation shows a D_{max} dose (dose at depth of maximum dose) of 6,450 cGy. Record the regional dose reflecting the prescribed dose of 6,000 cGy.
05500	A patient with a Stage II breast carcinoma is treated with the breast intact. Tangent fields are utilized to bring the dose of the breast to 5,500 cGy. The supraclavicular lymph nodes are treated 4,500 cGy, calculated to a depth of 3 cm, and an interstitial boost in the primary tumor bed delivers an additional 2,500 cGy to a small volume in the breast. Record the primary target of the breast as 5,500 cGy.

Number of Treatments to this Volume

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	1520	3	09/04, 01/10	Optional

Description
Records the total number of treatment sessions (fractions) administered during the first course of treatment.

In RMCDS, click on the button "Radiation Detail" to enter Modality, cGy, Treatment Volume, and Location of Treatment.

Rationale
This data item is used to evaluate patterns of radiation therapy and the treatment schedules

Instructions for Coding

- The number of treatments or fractions will typically be found in the radiation oncologist's summary letter for the first course of treatment. Determination of the exact number of treatments or fractions delivered to the patient may require assistance from the radiation oncologist for consistent coding.
- Although a treatment session may include several treatment portals delivered within a relatively confined period of time – usually a few minutes – it is still considered one session.
- The total number of treatment sessions (fractions) is the sum of the number of fractions of regional treatment and the number of fractions of boost treatment.
- Count each separate administration of brachytherapy or implants as a single treatment or fraction.

Code	Label	Definition
000	None	Radiation therapy was not administered to the patient. Diagnosed at autopsy.
001-998	Number of Treatments	Total number of treatment sessions administered to the patient.
99	Unknown	Radiation therapy was administered, but the number of treatments is unknown; it is unknown whether radiation therapy was administered. Death certificate only.

Examples:

Code	Reason
025	A patient with breast carcinoma had treatment sessions in which treatment was delivered to the chest wall and separately to the ipsilateral supraclavicular region for a total of three treatment portals. Twenty-five treatment sessions were given. Record 25 treatments.
035	A patient with Stage IIIB bronchogenic carcinoma received 25 treatments to the left hilum and mediastinum, given 25 daily treatments over five weeks. A left hilar boost was then given in 10 additional treatments. Record 35 treatments.
050	A patient with advanced head and neck cancer was treated using "hyperfractionation". Three fields were delivered in each session, two sessions were given each day, six hours apart, with each session delivering a total dose of 150 cGy. Treatment was given for a total of 25 days. Record 50 treatments.

Radiation Treatment Volume

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	1540	2	01/04	Recommended

Description
Identifies the volume or anatomic target of the most clinically significant regional radiation therapy delivered to the patient during the first course of treatment.

In RMCDS, click on the button "Radiation Detail" to enter Modality, cGy, Treatment Volume, and Location of Treatment.

Rationale
This data item provides information describing the anatomical structures targeted by the regional radiation therapy and can be used to determine whether the site of the primary disease was treated with radiation or if other regional or distant sites were targeted. This information is useful in evaluating the patterns of care within a facility (local analysis of physician practices) and on a regional or national basis.

Instructions for Coding
- Radiation treatment volume will typically be found in the radiation oncologist's summary letter for the first course of treatment. Determination of the exact treatment volume may require assistance from the radiation oncologist for consistent coding.

Code	Label	Definition
00	No radiation treatment	Radiation therapy was not administered to the patient. Diagnosed at autopsy.
01	Eye/orbit	The radiation therapy target volume is limited to the eye and/or orbit.
02	Pituitary	The target volume is restricted to the pituitary gland and all adjacent volumes are irradiated incidentally.
03	Brain (NOS)	Treatment is directed at tumors lying within the substance of the brain, or its meninges.
04	Brain (limited)	The treatment volume encompasses less than the total brain, or less than all of the meninges.
05	Head and neck (NOS)	The treatment volume is directed at a primary tumor of the oropharyngeal complex, usually encompassing regional lymph nodes.
06	Head and neck (limited)	Limited volume treatment of a head and neck primary with the exception of glottis (code 7), sinuses (code 8), or parotid (code 9).
07	Glottis	Treatment is limited to a volume in the immediate neighborhood of the vocal cords.
08	Sinuses	The primary target is one or both of the maxillary sinuses or the ethmoidal frontal sinuses. In some cases, the adjacent lymph node regions may be irradiated.
09	Parotid	The primary target is one of the parotid glands. There may be secondary regional lymph node irradiation as well.
10	Chest/lung (NOS)	Radiation therapy is directed to some combination of hilar, mediastinal, and/or supraclavicular lymph nodes, and/or peripheral lung structures.
11	Lung (limited)	Radiation therapy is directed at one region of the lung without nodal irradiation.
12	Esophagus	The primary target is some portion of the esophagus. Regional lymph nodes may or may not be included in the treatment. Include tumors of the gastroesophageal junction.

Code	Label	Definition
13	Stomach	The primary malignancy is in the stomach. Radiation is directed to the stomach and possibly adjacent lymph nodes.
14	Liver	The primary target is all or a portion of the liver, for either primary or metastatic disease.
15	Pancreas	The primary tumor is in the pancreas. The treatment field encompasses the pancreas and possibly adjacent lymph node regions.
16	Kidney	The target is primary or metastatic disease in the kidney or the kidney bed after resection of a primary kidney tumor. Adjacent lymph node regions may be included in the field.
17	Abdomen (NOS)	Include all treatment of abdominal contents that do not fig codes 12-16.
18	Breast	The primary target is the intact breast and no attempt has been made to irradiate the regional lymph nodes. Intact breast includes breast tissue that either was not surgically treated or received a lumpectomy or partial mastectomy (C50.0-C50.9, Surgical Procedure of Primary Site codes 0-24).
19	Breast/lymph nodes	A deliberate attempt has been made to include regional lymph nodes in the treatment of an intact breast. See definition of intact breast above.
20	Chest wall	Treatment encompasses the chest wall (following mastectomy).
21	Chest wall/lymph nodes	Treatment encompasses the chest wall (following mastectomy) plus fields directed at regional lymph nodes.
22	Mantle, Mini-mantle	Treatment consists of a large radiation field designed to encompass all of the regional lymph nodes above the diaphragm, including cervical, supraclavicular, axillary, mediastinal, and hilar nodes (mantle), or most of them (mini-mantle). This code is used exclusively for patients with Hodgkin's or non-Hodgkin's lymphoma.
23	Lower extended field	The target zone includes lymph nodes below the diaphragm along the paraaortic chain. It may include extension to one side of the pelvis. This code includes the "hockey stick" field utilized to treat seminomas.
24	Spine	The primary target relates to the bones of the spine, including the sacrum. Spinal cord malignancies could be coded 40 (spinal cord).
25	Skull	Treatment is directed at the bones of the skull. Any brain irradiation is a secondary consequence.
26	Ribs	Treatment is directed toward metastatic disease in one or more ribs. Fields may be tangential or direct.
27	Hip	The target includes the proximal femur for metastatic disease. In many cases there may be acetabular disease as well.
28	Pelvic bones	The target includes structures of the bones of the pelvis other than the hip or sacrum.
29	Pelvis (NOS)	Irradiation is directed at soft tissues within the pelvic region and codes 34-36 do not apply.
30	Skin	The primary malignancy originates in the skin and the skin is the primary target. So-called skin metastases are usually subcutaneous and should be coded 31 (Soft tissue).

Code	Label	Definition
31	Soft tissue	All treatment of primary or metastatic soft tissue malignancies not fitting other categories.
32	Hemibody	A single treatment volume encompassing either all structures above the diaphragm, or all structures below the diaphragm. This is almost always administered for palliation of widespread bone metastasis in patients with prostate or breast cancer.
33	Whole body	Entire body included in a single treatment.
34	Bladder and pelvis	The primary malignancy originated in the bladder, all or most of the pelvis is treated as part of the plan, typically with a boost to the bladder.
35	Prostate and pelvis	The primary malignancy originated in the prostate, all or most of the pelvis is treated as part of the plan, typically with a boost to the prostate.
36	Uterus and cervix	Treatment is confined to the uterus and cervix or vaginal cuff, usually by intracavitary or interstitial technique.
37	Shoulder	Treatment is directed to the proximal humerus, scapula, clavicle, or other components of the shoulder complex. This is usually administered for control of symptoms for metastases.
38	Extremity bone, NOS	Bones of the arms or legs. This excludes the proximal femur, code 27 (Hip). This excludes the proximal humerus, code 37 (Shoulder).
39	Inverted Y	Treatment has been given to a field that encompasses the paraaortic and bilateral inguinal or inguinofemoral lymph nodes in a single port.
40	Spinal cord	Treatment is directed at the spinal cord or its meninges.
41	Prostate	Treatment is directed at the prostate with or without the seminal vesicles, without regional lymph node treatment.
50	Thyroid	Treatment is directed at the thyroid gland.
60	Lymph node region, NOS	The target is a group of lymph nodes not listed above. Examples include isolated treatment of a cervical, supraclavicular, or inguinofemoral region.
98	Other	Radiation therapy administered, treatment volume other than those previously categorized.
99	Unknown	Radiation therapy administered, treatment volume unknown or not stated in patient record; it is unknown whether radiation therapy was administered. Death certificate only.

Examples:

Code	Reason
01	Lymphoma of the orbit treated with 4 cm x 4 cm portals.
02	Pituitary adenomas receiving small opposed field or rotational treatment.
03	The entire brain is treated for metastatic disease.
04	Limited field irradiation of an oligodendroglioma or glioblastoma.
05	Carcinoma of the left tonsil treated with opposed lateral fields to the neck and an anterior supraclavicular field.
06	Interstitial implant utilized to treat a small carcinoma of the lateral tongue.
07	Small lateral fields utilized to treat a T1 or T2 glottic tumor.
11	Small portal treatment is delivered to the right bronchial/hilar region to stop hemoptysis.
17	Irradiation for hypersplenism due to lymphoma.
19	Tangential fields deliberately arranged in a manner that will encompass internal mammary lymph nodes in a patient with medial primary; breast tangential fields plus supraclavicular and/or axillary field in a patient with five positive lymph nodes.
20	Following mastectomy, a patient has prophylactic chest wall irradiation to prevent local recurrence; a thoracotomy scar is irradiated because of known contamination with tumor.
24	An inverted "T" field is utilized to treat painful metastases in the lumbar vertebrae and sacrum in a patient with prostate cancer.
25	Patient with myeloma receives total skull irradiation for numerous "punched out" lesions that are causing discomfort.
33	Patient with chronic lymphocytic leukemia receives five treatments of 10 cGy each to reduce adenopathy or lymphocyte count.
36	Patient receives intracavitary therapy alone for a high-grade Stage IA carcinoma of the endometrium.
38	The distal forearm is treated for a metastatic lesion involving the radius.
39	Stage IA Hodgkin's disease presenting in an inguinal lymph node.
40	A portion of the spinal cord is treated for a primary ependymoma.
60	Ovarian carcinoma presenting with left supraclavicular lymphadenopathy as the only documented site of metastatic disease. The supraclavicular region is treated to prevent neurologic complications.
98	Anterior neck is treated for a primary thyroid lymphoma.

Location of Radiation Treatment

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	1550	1	01/04	Recommended

Description
Identifies the location of the facility where radiation therapy was administered during the first course of treatment.

In RMCDS, click on the button "Radiation Detail" to enter Modality, cGy, Treatment Volume, and Location of Treatment.

Rationale
This data item provides information useful to understanding the referral patterns for radiation therapy services and for assessing the quality and outcome or radiation therapy by delivery site.

Instructions for Coding
- If the radiation treatment was provided to prolong a patient's life by controlling symptoms, to alleviate pain, or to make the patient more comfortable, then also record the radiation administered in the item *Palliative Care*.

Code	Label	Definition
0	No radiation treatment	No radiation therapy was administered to the patient. Diagnosed at autopsy.
1	All radiation treatment at this facility	All radiation therapy was administered at the reporting facility.
2	Regional treatment at this facility, boost elsewhere	Regional treatment was administered at the reporting facility; a boost dose was administered elsewhere.
3	Boost radiation at this facility, regional elsewhere	Regional treatment was administered elsewhere; a boost dose was administered at the reporting facility.
4	All radiation treatment elsewhere	All radiation therapy was administered elsewhere.
8	Other	Radiation therapy was administered, but the pattern does not fit above the categories.
9	Unknown	Radiation therapy was administered, but the location of the treatment facility is unknown or not stated in patient record; it is unknown whether radiation therapy was administered. Death certificate only.

Examples:

Code	Reason
2	A patient received radiation therapy to the entire head and neck region at the reporting facility and is then referred to another facility for high-dose-rate (HDR) intracavitary boost.
3	A patient was diagnosed with breast cancer at another facility and received surgery and regional radiation therapy at that facility before being referred to the reporting facility for boost dose therapy.
8	Regional treatment was initiated at another facility and midway through treatment the patient was transferred to the reporting facility to complete the treatment regime.
9	Patient is known to have received radiation therapy, but records do not define the facility or facility(s) where the treatment was administered.

Chemotherapy

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Summ – Chemotherapy	1390	2	01/04, 06/05, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Records the type of chemotherapy administered as first course treatment at this and all other facilities. If chemotherapy was not administered, then this item records the reason it was not administered to the patient. Chemotherapy consists of a group of anticancer drugs that inhibit the reproduction of cancer cells by interfering with DNA synthesis and mitosis.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Chemotherapy.

Rationale
Systemic therapy may involve the administration of one or a combination of agents. This data item allows for the evaluation of the administration of chemotherapeutic agents as part of the first course of therapy. In addition, when evaluating the quality of care, it is useful to know the reason if chemotherapy was not administered.

Instructions for Coding
- Code 00 if chemotherapy was not administered to the patient, and it is known that it is not usually administered for this type and stage of cancer.
- Code 00 if the treatment plan offered multiple options, and the patient selected treatment that did not include chemotherapy.
- If it is known that chemotherapy is usually administered for this type and stage of cancer, but was not administered to the patient, use code 82, 85, 86, or 87 to record the reason why it was not administered.
- Code 87 if the patient refused recommended chemotherapy, made a blanket refusal of all recommended treatment, or refused all treatment before any was recommended.
- Code 88 if it is known that a physician recommended the patient receive chemotherapy but no further documentation is available yet to confirm its administration.
- Code 88 to indicate referral was made to medical oncologist and the registry must follow to determine whether it was given. If follow-up with the specified specialist or facility indicates the patient was never there, code 00.
- Cases coded 88 must be followed to determine what kind of chemotherapy was administered or why it was not.
- Code 99 if it is not known whether chemotherapy is usually administered for this type and stage of cancer and there is no mention in the patient record whether it was recommended or administered.
- Code chemoembolization as 01, 02, or 03 depending on the number of chemotherapeutic agents involved.
- If the managing physician changes one of the agents in a combination regimen, and the replacement agent belongs to a different group (chemotherapeutic agents are grouped as alkylating agents, antimetabolites, natural products, or other miscellaneous) than the original agent, the new regimen represents the start of subsequent therapy, and o*nly the original agent or regimen is recorded as first course therapy*.
- Refer to the *SEER*Rx Interactive Drug Database* (http://seer.cancer.gov/) for a list of chemotherapeutic agents.
- If chemotherapy was provided to prolong a patient's life by controlling symptoms, to alleviate pain, or to make the patient more comfortable, then also record the chemotherapy in the item *Palliative Care*.

Code	Definition
00	None, chemotherapy was not part of the planned first course of therapy. Diagnosed at autopsy.
01	Chemotherapy administered as first course therapy, but the type and number of agents is not documented in patient record.
02	Single-agent chemotherapy administered as first course therapy.
03	Multiagent chemotherapy administered as first course therapy.
82	Chemotherapy was not recommended/administered because it was contraindicated due to patient risk factors (i.e., comorbid conditions, advanced age, progression of tumor prior to administration, etc.).
85	Chemotherapy was not administered because the patient died prior to planned or recommended therapy.
86	Chemotherapy was not administered. It was recommended by the patient's physician, but was not administered as part of the first course of therapy. No reason was stated in patient record.
87	Chemotherapy was not administered. It was recommended by the patient's physician, but this treatment was refused by the patient, a patient's family member, or the patient's guardian. The refusal was noted in patient record.
88	Chemotherapy was recommended, but it is unknown if it was administered.
99	It is unknown whether a chemotherapeutic agent(s) was recommended or administered because it is not stated in patient record. Death certificate only.

Examples:

Code	Reason
01	A patient with primary liver cancer is known to have received chemotherapy; however, the name(s) of agent(s) administered is not stated in patient record.
02	A patient with Stage III colon cancer is treated with a combination of fluorouracil and levamisole. Code the administration of fluorouracil as a single agent chemotherapy, and levamisole as an immunotherapeutic agent.
02	A patient with non-Hodgkin's lymphoma is treated with fludarabine.
03	A patient with early stage breast cancer receives chemotherapy. The patient chart indicates that a regimen containing doxorubicin is to be administered.
86	After surgical resection of an ovarian mass the following physician recommends chemotherapy. The patient record states that chemotherapy was not subsequently administered to the patient, but the reason why chemotherapy was not administered is not given.

Date of Chemotherapy

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Date – Chemotherapy	1220	8	01/10	Required

Description
Records the date of initiation of chemotherapy that is part of the first course of treatment.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Date of Chemotherapy.

Rationale
Collecting dates for each treatment modality allows the sequencing of multiple treatments and aids in the evaluation of time intervals from diagnosis to treatment and from treatment to recurrence.

Instructions for Coding

- Record the first or earliest date on which chemotherapy was administered by any facility. This date corresponds to administration of the agents coded in *Chemotherapy*.
- This item was required in the past but discontinued in FORDS as a required item in 2003. If the date was not collected between 2003 and 2009, this field may be left blank. However, if it was collected for cases diagnosed in those years, it should be retained in this field.
- Beginning in 2010, the way dates are transmitted has changed. In order that the registry data can be interoperable with other data sources, dates are transmitted in a format widely accepted outside of the registry setting. However, this does not necessarily mean that the way dates are entered in any particular registry software product has changed. Software providers can provide the best information about date entry in their own systems. The traditional format for *Date of Chemotherapy* is MMDDCCYY, with 99 identifying unknown month or day, and 99999999 representing an entirely unknown date. The interoperable form of *Date of Chemotherapy* transmits in CCYYMMDD form, where blank spaces are used for unknown trailing portions of the date. The *Date of Chemotherapy Flag* is used to explain why *Date of Chemotherapy* is not a known date. See *Date of Chemotherapy Flag* for an illustration of the relationships among these items.

Date of Chemotherapy Flag

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Date – Chemo Flag	1221	2	New 01/10	Required

Description
This flag explains why there is no appropriate value in the corresponding date field, *Date of Chemotherapy*.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Date of Chemotherapy Flag.

Rationale
As part of an initiative to standardize date fields, date flag fields were introduced to accommodate non-date information that had previously been transmitted in date fields.

Instructions for Coding
- Leave this item blank if *Date of Chemotherapy* has a full or partial date recorded.
- Code 12 if the *Date of Chemotherapy* cannot be determined, but the patient did receive first course chemotherapy.
- Code 10 if it is unknown whether any chemotherapy was given.
- Code 11 if no chemotherapy is planned or given.
- Code 15 if chemotherapy is planned, but not yet started. Follow this patient for chemotherapy and update this item, *Date of Chemotherapy*, and all other relevant chemotherapy items.
- Registrars should enter this data item directly (when appropriate) even if the traditional form of date entry is used in the software.
- Leave this item blank for diagnoses between 2003 and 2009 (inclusive) if this facility did not collect *Date of Chemotherapy* at that time.

Code	Definition
10	No information whatsoever can be inferred from this exceptional value (that is, unknown if any chemotherapy was given).
11	No proper value is applicable in this context (for example, no chemotherapy given).
12	A proper value is applicable but not known. This event occurred, but the date is unknown (for example, chemotherapy was given but date is unknown).
15	If information is not available at this time, but it is expected that it will be available later (for example, chemotherapy is planned as part of first course treatment, but had not yet started at the time of the last follow-up).
(Blank)	A valid date is provided in item *Date of Chemotherapy*. Case was diagnosed between 2003 and 2009 and the facility did not record *Date of Chemotherapy* at that time.

The following table illustrates the use of the date flag and the traditional and interoperable date formats for coding *Date of Chemotherapy* and *Date of Chemotherapy Flag.* ***In the table below, the lowercase letter "b" is used to represent each blank space***.

Description	**Traditional Date**	**Interoperable Date**	**Date Flag**
	Date entered in MMDDCCYY sequence; unknown portions represented by 99 or 9999	**Date entered in CCYYMMDD sequence, leaving unknown portions blank (spaces);omit the date if the date is completely unknown**	
Full date known	MMDDYYCC (example: 02182007)	CCYYMMDD (example: 20070218)	bb
Month and year known	MM99CCYY (example: 02992007)	CCYYMMbb (example: 200702bb)	bb
Year only known	9999CCYY (example: 99992007)	CCYYbbbb (example: 2007bbbb)	bb
Unknown if any chemotherapy given	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	10
No chemotherapy given	00000000 (example: 00000000)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	11
Date is unknown, chemotherapy given	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	12
Chemotherapy is planned, not yet begun	88888888 (example: 88888888)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	15

Hormone Therapy

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Summ – Hormone Therapy	1400	2	01/04, 06/05, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Records the type of hormone therapy administered as first course treatment at this and all other facilities. If hormone therapy was not administered, then this item records the reason it was not administered to the patient. Hormone therapy consists of a group of drugs that may affect the long-term control of a cancer's growth. It is not usually used as a curative measure.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Hormone Therapy.

Rationale
Systemic therapy may involve the administration of one or a combination of agents. This data item allows for the evaluation of the administration of hormonal agents as part of the first course of therapy. In addition, when evaluating the quality of care, it is useful to know the reason if hormone therapy was not administered.

Instructions for Coding
- Record prednisone as hormonal therapy when administered in combination with chemotherapy, such as MOPP (mechlorethamine, vincristine, procarbazine, prednisone) or COPP (cyclophosphamide, vincristine, procarbazine, prednisone).
- Do not code prednisone as hormone therapy when it is administered for reasons other than chemotherapeutic treatment.
- Tumor involvement or treatment may destroy hormone-producing tissue. Hormone replacement therapy will be given if the hormone is necessary to maintain normal metabolism and body function. Do not code hormone replacement therapy as part of first course therapy.
- Code 00 if hormone therapy was not administered to the patient, and it is known that it is not usually administered for this type and stage of cancer.
- Code 00 if the treatment plan offered multiple options, and the patient selected treatment that did not include hormone therapy.
- Code 01 for thyroid replacement therapy which inhibits TSH (thyroid-stimulating hormone). TSH is a product of the pituitary gland that can stimulate tumor growth.
- If it is known that hormone therapy is usually administered for this type and stage of cancer, but was not administered to the patient, use code 82, 85, 86, or 87 to record the reason why it was not administered.
- Code 87 if the patient refused recommended hormone therapy, made a blanket refusal of all recommended treatment, or refused all treatment before any was recommended.
- Code 88 if it is known that a physician recommended hormone therapy, but no further documentation is available yet to confirm its administration.
- Code 88 to indicate the patient was referred to a medical oncologist and the registry should follow the case for hormone therapy. If follow-up with the specified specialist or facility indicates the patient was never there, code 00.
- Cases coded 88 should be followed to determine whether they received hormone therapy or why not.
- Code 99 if it is not known whether hormone therapy is usually administered for this type and stage of cancer and there is no mention in the patient record whether it was recommended or administered.
- Refer to the *SEER*Rx Interactive Drug Database* (http://seer.cancer.gov/) for a list of hormonal agents.
- If hormone therapy was provided to prolong a patient's life by controlling symptoms, to alleviate pain, or to make the patient more comfortable, then also record the hormone therapy administered in the item *Palliative Care*.

Code	Definition
00	None, hormone therapy was not part of the planned first course of therapy. Diagnosed at autopsy.
01	Hormone therapy administered as first course therapy.
82	Hormone therapy was not recommended/administered because it was contraindicated due to patient risk factors (i.e., comorbid conditions, advanced age, progression of tumor prior to administration, etc.).
85	Hormone therapy was not administered because the patient died prior to planned or recommended therapy.
86	Hormone therapy was not administered. It was recommended by the patient's physician, but was not administered as part of the first course of therapy. No reason was stated in patient record.
87	Hormone therapy was not administered. It was recommended by the patient's physician, but this treatment was refused by the patient, a patient's family member, or the patient's guardian. The refusal was noted in patient record.
88	Hormone therapy was recommended, but it is unknown if it was administered.
99	It is unknown whether a hormonal agent(s) was recommended or administered because it is not stated in patient record. Death certificate only.

Examples:

Code	Reason
00	A patient has advanced lung cancer with multiple metastases to the brain. The physician orders Decadron to reduce the edema in the brain and relieve the neurological symptoms. Decadron is not coded as hormonal therapy.
00	A patient with breast cancer may be treated with aminoglutethimide (Cytadren, Elipten), which suppresses the production of glucocorticoids and mineralocorticoids. This patient must take glucocorticoid (hydrocortisone) and may also need a mineralocorticoid (florinef) as a replacement therapy.
00	A patient with advanced disease is given prednisone to stimulate the appetite and improve nutritional status. Prednisone is not coded as hormone therapy.
01	A patient with metastatic prostate cancer is administered flutamide (an antiestrogen).
87	A patient with metastatic prostate cancer declines the administration of Megace (a progestational agent) and the refusal is noted in the patient record.

Date of Hormone Therapy

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Date – Hormone Therapy	1230	8	01/10	Required

Description
Records the date of initiation of hormone therapy that is part of the first course of treatment.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Date of Hormone Therapy.

Rationale
Collecting dates for each treatment modality allows the sequencing of multiple treatments and aids in the evaluation of time intervals from diagnosis to treatment and from treatment to recurrence.

Instructions for Coding

- Record the first or earliest date on which hormone therapy was administered by any facility. This date corresponds to administration of the agents coded in *Hormone Therapy*.
- This item was required in the past but discontinued in FORDS as a required item in 2003. If the date was not collected between 2003 and 2009, this field may be left blank. However, if it was collected for cases diagnosed in those years, it should be retained in this field.
- Beginning in 2010, the way dates are transmitted has changed. In order that the registry data can be interoperable with other data sources, dates are transmitted in a format widely accepted outside of the registry setting. However, this does not necessarily mean that the way dates are entered in any particular registry software product has changed. Software providers can provide the best information about date entry in their own systems. The traditional format for *Date of Hormone Therapy* is MMDDCCYY, with 99 identifying unknown month or day, and 99999999 representing an entirely unknown date. The interoperable form of *Date of Hormone Therapy* transmits in CCYYMMDD form, where blank spaces are used for unknown trailing portions of the date. The *Date of Hormone Flag* is used to explain why *Date of Hormone Therapy* is not a known date. See *Date of Hormone Flag* for an illustration of the relationships among these items.

Date of Hormone Flag

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Date – Hormone Flag	1231	2	New 01/10	Required

Description
This flag explains why there is no appropriate value in the corresponding date field, *Date of Hormone Therapy*.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Date of Hormone Flag.

Rationale
As part of an initiative to standardize date fields, date flag fields were introduced to accommodate non-date information that had previously been transmitted in date fields.

Instructions for Coding
- Leave this item blank if *Date of Hormone Therapy* has a full or partial date recorded.
- Code 12 if the *Date of Hormone Therapy* cannot be determined, but the patient did receive first course hormone therapy.
- Code 10 if it is unknown whether any hormone therapy was given.
- Code 11 if no hormone therapy is planned or given.
- Code 15 if hormone therapy is planned, but not yet started. Follow this patient for hormone therapy and update this item, *Date of Hormone Therapy*, and all other relevant hormone therapy items.
- Registrars should enter this data item directly (when appropriate) even if the traditional form of date entry is used in the software.
- Leave this item blank for diagnoses between 2003 and 2009 (inclusive) if this facility did not collect *Date of Hormone Therapy* at that time.

Code	Definition
10	No information whatsoever can be inferred from this exceptional value (that is, unknown if any hormone therapy was given).
11	No proper value is applicable in this context (for example, no hormone therapy given).
12	A proper value is applicable but not known. This event occurred, but the date is unknown (for example, hormone therapy was given but date is unknown).
15	If information is not available at this time, but it is expected that it will be available later (for example, hormone therapy is planned as part of first course treatment, but had not yet started at the time of the last follow-up).
(Blank)	A valid date is provided in item *Date of Hormone Therapy*. Case was diagnosed between 2003 and 2009 and the facility did not record *Date of Hormone Therapy* at that time.

The following table illustrates the use of the date flag and the traditional and interoperable date formats for coding *Date of Hormone Therapy* and *Date of Hormone Flag.* ***In the table below, the lowercase letter "b" is used to represent each blank space***.

Description	**Traditional Date**	**Interoperable Date**	**Date Flag**
	Date entered in MMDDCCYY sequence; unknown portions represented by 99 or 9999	**Date entered in CCYYMMDD sequence, leaving unknown portions blank (spaces);omit the date if the date is completely unknown**	
Full date known	MMDDYYCC (example: 02182007)	CCYYMMDD (example: 20070218)	bb
Month and year known	MM99CCYY (example: 02992007)	CCYYMMbb (example: 200702bb)	bb
Year only known	9999CCYY (example: 99992007)	CCYYbbbb (example: 2007bbbb)	bb
Unknown if any hormone therapy given	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	10
No hormone therapy given	00000000 (example: 00000000)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	11
Date is unknown, hornone therapy given	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	12
Hormone therapy is planned, not yet begun	88888888 (example: 88888888)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	15

BRM/Immunotherapy

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Summ – BRM/Immunotherapy	1410	2	01/04, 06/05, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Records the type of immunotherapy administered as first course treatment at this and all other facilities. If immunotherapy was not administered, then this item records the reason it was not administered to the patient. Immunotherapy consists of biological or chemical agents that alter the immune system or change the host's response to tumor cells.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter BRM/Immunotherapy.

Rationale
Systemic therapy may involve the administration of one or a combination of agents. This data item allows for the evaluation of the administration of immunotherapeutic agents as part of the first course of therapy. In addition, when evaluating the quality of care, it is useful to know the reason if immunotherapy was not administered.

Instructions for Coding
- Code 00 if immunotherapy was not administered to the patient, and it is known that it is not usually administered for this type and stage of cancer.
- Code 00 if the treatment plan offered multiple options, and the patient selected treatment that did not include immunotherapy.
- If it is known that immunotherapy is usually administered for this type and stage of cancer, but was not administered to the patient, use code 82, 85, 86, or 87 to record the reason why it was not administered.
- Code 87 if the patient refused recommended immunotherapy, made a blanket refusal of all recommended treatment, or refused all treatment before any was recommended.
- Code 88 if it is known that a physician recommended immunotherapy but no further documentation is available yet to confirm its administration.
- Code 88 to indicate a referral was made to a medical oncologist about immunotherapy and the registry should follow the case to determine whether it was given or why not. If follow-up to the specialist or facility determines the patient was never there, code 00.
- Cases coded 88 should be followed and the code updated as appropriate.
- Code 99 if it is not known whether immunotherapy is usually administered for this type and stage of cancer and there is no mention in the patient record whether it was recommended or administered.
- Refer to the *SEER*Rx Interactive Drug Database* (http://seer.cancer.gov/) for a list of immunotherapeutic agents.
- If immunotherapy was provided to prolong a patient's life by controlling symptoms, to alleviate pain, or to make the patient more comfortable, then also record the immunotherapy administered in the item *Palliative Care*.

Code	Definition
00	None, immunotherapy was not part of the planned first course of therapy. Diagnosed at autopsy.
01	Immunotherapy administered as first course therapy.
82	Immunotherapy was not recommended/administered because it was contraindicated due to patient risk factors (i.e., comorbid conditions, advanced age, progression of tumor prior to administration, etc.).
85	Immunotherapy was not administered because the patient died prior to planned or recommended therapy.
86	Immunotherapy was not administered. It was recommended by the patient's physician, but was not administered as part of the first course of therapy. No reason was stated in patient record.
87	Immunotherapy was not administered. It was recommended by the patient's physician, but this treatment was refused by the patient, a patient's family member, or the patient's guardian. The refusal was noted in patient record.
88	Immunotherapy was recommended, but it is unknown if it was administered.
99	It is unknown whether an immunotherapeutic agent(s) was recommended or administered because it is not stated in patient record. Death certificate only.

Examples:

Code	Reason
01	A patient with malignant melanoma is treated with interferon.
85	Before recommended immunotherapy could be administered, the patient died from cancer.

Date of BRM/Immunotherapy

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Date – BRM/Immunotherapy	1240	8	01/10	Required

Description
Records the date of initiation of immunotherapy or a biologic response modifier (BRM) that is part of the first course of treatment.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Date of BRM/Immunotherapy.

Rationale
Collecting dates for each treatment modality allows the sequencing of multiple treatments and aids in the evaluation of time intervals from diagnosis to treatment and from treatment to recurrence.

Instructions for Coding

- Record the first or earliest date on which immunotherapy or a biologic response modifier was administered by any facility. This date corresponds to the administration of the agents coded in *BRM/Immunotherapy*.
- This item was required in the past but discontinued in FORDS as a required item in 2003. If the date was not collected between 2003 and 2009, this field may be left blank. However, if it was collected for cases diagnosed in those years, it should be retained in this field.
- Beginning in 2010, the way dates are transmitted has changed. In order that the registry data can be interoperable with other data sources, dates are transmitted in a format widely accepted outside of the registry setting. However, this does not necessarily mean that the way dates are entered in any particular registry software product has changed. Software providers can provide the best information about date entry in their own systems. The traditional format for *Date of BRM/Immunotherapy* is MMDDCCYY, with 99 identifying unknown month or day, and 99999999 representing an entirely unknown date. The interoperable form of *Date of BRM/Immunotherapy* transmits in CCYYMMDD form, where blank spaces are used for unknown trailing portions of the date. The *Date of BRM Flag* is used to explain why *Date of BRM/Immunotherapy* is not a known date. See *Date of BRM Flag* for an illustration of the relationships among these items.

Date of BRM Flag

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Date – BRM Flag	1241	2	New 01/10	Required

Description
This flag explains why there is no appropriate value in the corresponding date field, *Date of BRM/Immunotherapy*.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Date of BRM Flag.

Rationale
As part of an initiative to standardize date fields, date flag fields were introduced to accommodate non-date information that had previously been transmitted in date fields.

Instructions for Coding
- Leave this item blank if *Date of BRM/Immunotherapy* has a full or partial date recorded.
- Code 12 if the *Date of BRM/Immunotherapy* cannot be determined, but the patient did receive first course immunotherapy or a biologic response modifier therapy.
- Code 10 if it is unknown whether any immunotherapy or a biologic response modifier was given.
- Code 11 if no immunotherapy or a biologic response modifier is planned or given.
- Code 15 if immunotherapy or a biologic response modifier is planned, but not yet started. Follow this patient for immunotherapy and update this item, *Date of BRM/Immunotherapy*, and all other relevant immunotherapy items.
- Registrars should enter this data item directly (when appropriate) even if the traditional form of date entry is used in the software.
- Leave this item blank for diagnoses between 2003 and 2009 (inclusive) if this facility did not collect *Date of BRM/Immunotherapy* at that time.

Code	Definition
10	No information whatsoever can be inferred from this exceptional value (that is, unknown if any immunotherapy was given).
11	No proper value is applicable in this context (for example, no immunotherapy given).
12	A proper value is applicable but not known. This event occurred, but the date is unknown (for example, immunotherapy was given but date is unknown).
15	If information is not available at this time, but it is expected that it will be available later (for example, immunotherapy is planned as part of first course treatment, but had not yet started at the time of the last follow-up).
(Blank)	A valid date is provided in item *Date of BRM/Immunotherapy*. Case was diagnosed between 2003 and 2009 and the facility did not record *Date of BRM/Immunotherapy* at that time.

The following table illustrates the use of the date flag and the traditional and interoperable date formats for coding *Date of BRM/Immunotherapy* and *Date of BRM Flag.* ***In the table below, the lowercase letter "b" is used to represent each blank space***.

Description	**Traditional Date**	**Interoperable Date**	**Date Flag**
	Date entered in MMDDCCYY sequence; unknown portions represented by 99 or 9999	**Date entered in CCYYMMDD sequence, leaving unknown portions blank (spaces);omit the date if the date is completely unknown**	
Full date known	MMDDYYCC (example: 02182007)	CCYYMMDD (example: 20070218)	bb
Month and year known	MM99CCYY (example: 02992007)	CCYYMMbb (example: 200702bb)	bb
Year only known	9999CCYY (example: 99992007)	CCYYbbbb (example: 2007bbbb)	bb
Unknown if any immunotherapy given	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	10
No immunetherapy given	00000000 (example: 00000000)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	11
Date is unknown, immunotherapy given	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	12
Immunotherapy is planned, not yet begun	88888888 (example: 88888888)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	15

Other Treatment

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Summ – Other	1420	1	01/04, 06/05, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies other treatment that cannot be defined as surgery, radiation, or systemic therapy according to the defined data items in this manual.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Other Treatment.

Rationale
Information on other treatment is used to describe and evaluate the quality of care and treatment practices.

Instructions for Coding
- The principal treatment for certain reportable hematopoietic diseases could be supportive care that does not meet the usual definition of treatment that "modifies, controls, removes, or destroys" proliferating cancer tissue. Supportive care may include phlebotomy, transfusion, or aspirin as "Other Treatment" (Code 1) for the hematopoietic diseases ONLY (see Notes below).
- Code 1 for embolization using alcohol as an embolizing agent.
- Code 1 for embolization to a site other than the liver where the embolizing agent is unknown.
- Do not code presurgical embolization that is given for a purpose to shrink the tumor.
- A complete description of the treatment plan should be recorded in the text field for "*Other Treatment*" on the abstract.
- If other treatment was provided to prolong a patient's life by controlling symptoms, to alleviate pain, or to make the patient more comfortable, then also record the other treatment administered in the item *Palliative Care*.
- Code 8 if it is known that a physician recommended treatment coded as *Other Treatment*, and no further documentation is available yet to confirm its administration.
- Code 8 to indicate referral to a specialist for *Other Treatment* and the registry should follow. If follow-up with the specialist or facility determines the patient as never there, code 0.

Code	Label	Definition
0	None	All cancer treatment was coded in other treatment fields (surgery, radiation, systemic therapy). Patient received no cancer treatment. Diagnosed at autopsy.
1	Other	Cancer treatment that cannot be appropriately assigned to specified treatment data items (surgery, radiation, systemic).
2	Other-Experimental	This code is not defined. It may be used to record participation in institution-based clinical trials.
3	Other-Double Blind	A patient is involved in a double-blind clinical trial. Code the treatment actually administered when the double-blind trial code is broken.
6	Other-Unproven	Cancer treatments administered by non-medical personnel.
7	Refusal	Other treatment was not administered. It was recommended by the patient's physician, but this treatment (which would have been coded 1, 2, or 3) was refused by the patient, a patient's family member, or the patient's guardian. The refusal was noted in the patient record.
8	Recommended; unknown if administered	Other treatment was recommended, but it is unknown whether it was administered.
9	Unknown	It is unknown whether other treatment was recommended or administered, and there is no information in the medical record to confirm the recommendation or administration of other treatment. Death certificate only.

Notes:

- Phlebotomy may be called blood removal, blood letting, or venisection.
- Transfusions may include whole blood, RBCs, platelets, plateletpheresis, fresh frozen plasma (FFP), plasmapheresis, and cryoprecipitate.
- Aspirin (also known as ASA, acetylsalicylic acid, or by a brand name) is used as a treatment for essential thrombocythemia. Record ONLY aspirin therapy to thin the blood for symptomatic control of thrombocythemia. To determine whether aspirin is administered for pain, cardiovascular protection, or thinning of platelets in the blood, use the following general guideline:
  - Pain control is approximately 325-1000 mg every 3-4 hours.
  - Cardiovascular protection starts at about 160 mg/day.
  - Aspirin treatment for essential thrombocythemia is low dose, approximately 70-100 mg/day.

Date of Other Treatment

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Date – Other	1250	8	01/10	Required

Description
Records the date on which other treatment began at any facility.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Date of Other Treatment.

Rationale
Collecting dates for each treatment modality allows for the sequencing of multiple treatments and aids in the evaluation of time intervals from diagnosis to treatment and from treatment to recurrence.

Instructions for Coding

- Record the date on which the care coded as *Date of Other Treatment* was initiated.
- If other treatment is the first or only treatment administered to the patient, then the date of other treatment started should be the same as the *Date of First Course of Treatment*.
- Beginning in 2010, the way dates are transmitted has changed. In order that the registry data can be interoperable with other data sources, dates are transmitted in a format widely accepted outside of the registry setting. However, this does not necessarily mean that the way dates are entered in any particular registry software product has changed. Software providers can provide the best information about date entry in their own systems. The traditional format for *Date of Other Treatment* is MMDDCCYY, with 99 identifying unknown month or day, and 99999999 representing an entirely unknown date. The interoperable form of *Date of Other Treatment* transmits in CCYYMMDD form, where blank spaces are used for unknown trailing portions of the date. The *Date of Other Treatment Flag* is used to explain why *Date of Other Treatment* is not a known date. See *Date of Other Treatment Flag* for an illustration of the relationships among these items.

Examples:

Code	Reason
03162010	A patient with metastatic disease was started on an experimental therapy on March 16, 2010.
08012009	Alcohol was used as an embolizing agent for a patient on August 1, 2009
09172008	A polycythemia vera patient was given several phlebotomies, the first being on September 17, 2008.

Date of Other Treatment Flag

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Date – Other Flag	1241	2	New 01/10	Required

Description
This flag explains why there is no appropriate value in the corresponding date field, *Date of Other Treatment*.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Date of Other Treatment Flag.

Rationale
As part of an initiative to standardize date fields, date flag fields were introduced to accommodate non-date information that had previously been transmitted in date fields.

Instructions for Coding
- Leave this item blank if *Date of Other Treatment* has a full or partial date recorded.
- Code 12 if the *Date of Other Treatment* cannot be determined, but the patient did receive first course other treatment.
- Code 10 if it is unknown whether any other treatment was given (*Other Treatment* = 9).
- Code 11 if no other treatment is planned or given (*Other Treatment* = 0, 7, or 8).
- Registrars should enter this data item directly (when appropriate) even if the traditional form of date entry is used in the software.

Code	Definition
10	No information whatsoever can be inferred from this exceptional value (that is, unknown if any other treatment was given).
11	No proper value is applicable in this context (for example, no other treatment given).
12	A proper value is applicable but not known. This event occurred, but the date is unknown (for example, other treatment was given but date is unknown).
(Blank)	A valid date is provided in item *Date of Other Treatment*.

The following table illustrates the use of the date flag and the traditional and interoperable date formats for coding *Date of Other Treatment* and *Date of Other Treatment Flag*. ***In the table below, the lowercase letter "b" is used to represent each blank space***.

Description	Traditional Date	Interoperable Date	Date Flag
	Date entered in MMDDCCYY sequence; unknown portions represented by 99 or 9999	**Date entered in CCYYMMDD sequence, leaving unknown portions blank (spaces);omit the date if the date is completely unknown**	
Full date known	MMDDYYCC (example: 02182007)	CCYYMMDD (example: 20070218)	bb
Month and year known	MM99CCYY (example: 02992007)	CCYYMMbb (example: 200702bb)	bb
Year only known	9999CCYY (example: 99992007)	CCYYbbbb (example: 2007bbbb)	bb
Unknown if other treatment given	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	10
No other treatment given	00000000 (example: 00000000)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	11
Date is unknown, other treatment given	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	12

Transplant/Endocrine

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Summ – Transplant/Endocrine	3250	2	01/04, 06/05, 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies systemic therapeutic *procedures* administered as part of the first course of treatment at this and all other facilities. If none of these *procedures* were administered, then this item records the reason they were not performed. These include bone marrow transplants, stem cell harvests, surgical and/or radiation endocrine therapy.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Transplant/Endocrine.

Rationale
This data item allows the evaluation of patterns of treatment which involve the alteration of the immune system or change the patient's response to tumor cells but does not involve the administration of antineoplastic agents. In addition, when evaluating the quality of care, it is useful to know the reason if these *procedures* were not performed.

Instructions for Coding
- Bone marrow transplants should be coded as either autologous (bone marrow originally taken from the patient) or allogeneic (bone marrow donated by a person other than the patient). For cases in which the bone marrow transplant was syngeneic (transplanted marrow from an identical twin), the item is coded as allogenic.
- Stem cell harvests involve the collection of immature blood cells from the patient and the reintroduction by transfusion of the harvested cells following chemotherapy or radiation therapy.
- Endocrine irradiation and/or endocrine surgery are procedures which suppress the naturally occurring hormonal activity of the patient and thus alter or effect the long-term control of the cancer's growth. These procedures must be bilateral to qualify as endocrine surgery or endocrine radiation. If only one gland is intact at the start of treatment, surgery and/or radiation to that remaining gland qualifies as endocrine surgery or endocrine radiation.
- Code 00 if a transplant or endocrine procedure was not administered to the patient, and it is known that these procedures are not usually administered for this type and stage of cancer.
- Code 00 if the treatment plan offered multiple options, and the patient selected treatment that did not include a transplant or endocrine procedure.
- If it is know that a transplant or endocrine procedure is not usually administered for this type and stage of cancer, but was not administered to the patient, use code 82, 85, 86, or 87 to record the reason why it was not administered.
- Code 87 if the patient refused a recommended transplant or endocrine procedure, made a blanket refusal of all recommended treatment, or refused all treatment before any was recommended.
- Code 88 if it is known that a physician recommended a hematologic transplant or endocrine procedure, but no further documentation is available yet to confirm its administration.
- Code 88 to indicate referral to a specialist for hematologic transplant or endocrine procedures and the registry should follow the case. If follow-up to the specified specialist or facility determines the patient was never there, code 00.
- Cases coded 88 should be followed to determine whether they were given a hematologic transplant or endocrine procedure or why not.
- Code 99 if it is not know whether a transplant or endocrine procedure is usually administered for this type and stage of cancer, and there is no mention in the patient record whether it was recommended or administered.
- If the hematologic transplant or endocrine procedure coded in this item was provided to prolong a patient's life by controlling symptoms, to alleviate pain, or to make the patient more comfortable, then also record the hematologic transplant or endocrine procedure provided in the item *Palliative Care*.

Code	Definition
00	No transplant procedure or endocrine therapy was administered as part of the first course of therapy. Diagnosed at autopsy.
10	A bone marrow transplant procedure was administered, but the type was not specified.
11	Bone marrow transplant – autologous.
12	Bone marrow transplant – allogeneic.
20	Stem cell harvest and infusion. Umbilical cord stem cell transplant.
30	Endocrine surgery and/or endocrine radiation therapy.
40	Combination of endocrine surgery and/or radiation with a transplant procedure. (Combination of codes 30 and 10, 11, 12, or 20).
82	Hematologic transplant and/or endocrine surgery/radiation was not recommended/administered because it was contraindicated due to patient risk factors (i.e., comorbid conditions, advanced age, progression of disease prior to administration, etc.).
85	Hematologic transplant and/or endocrine surgery/radiation was not administered because the patient died prior to planned or recommended therapy.
86	Hematologic transplant and/or endocrine surgery/radiation was not administered. It was recommended by the patient's physician, but was not administered as part of the first course of therapy. No reason was stated in patient record.
87	Hematologic transplant and/or endocrine surgery/radiation was not administered. It was recommended by the patient's physician, but this treatment was refused by the patient, a patient's family member, or the patient's guardian. The refusal was noted in patient record.
88	Hematologic transplant and/or endocrine surgery/radiation was recommended, but it is unknown if it was administered.
99	It is unknown whether hematologic transplant and/or endocrine surgery/radiation was recommended or administered because it is not stated in patient record. Death certificate only.

Date of Transplant/Endocrine

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
		8		Required

Description
Records the date on which transplant or endocrine treatment began at any facility.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Date of Transplant/Endocrine.

Rationale
Collecting dates for each treatment modality allows for the sequencing of multiple treatments and aids in the evaluation of time intervals from diagnosis to treatment and from treatment to recurrence.

Instructions for Coding

- Record the date on which the care coded as *Date of Transplant/Endocrine* was initiated.
- If the date of transplant/endocrine treatment is the first or only treatment administered to the patient, then the date of other treatment started should be the same as the *Date of First Course of Treatment*.
- Beginning in 2010, the way dates are transmitted has changed. In order that the registry data can be interoperable with other data sources, dates are transmitted in a format widely accepted outside of the registry setting. However, this does not necessarily mean that the way dates are entered in any particular registry software product has changed. Software providers can provide the best information about date entry in their own systems. The traditional format for *Date of Transplant/Endocrine* is MMDDCCYY, with 99 identifying unknown month or day, and 99999999 representing an entirely unknown date. The interoperable form of *Date of Transplant/Endocrine* transmits in CCYYMMDD form, where blank spaces are used for unknown trailing portions of the date. The *Date of Transplant/Endocrine Flag* is used to explain why *Date of Transplant/Endocrine* is not a known date. See *Date of Transplant/Endocrine Flag* for an illustration of the relationships among these items.

Date of Transplant/Endocrine Flag

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
		2		Optional

Description
This flag explains why there is no appropriate value in the corresponding date field, *Date of Transplant/Endocrine*.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Date of Transplant/Endocrine Flag.

Rationale
As part of an initiative to standardize date fields, date flag fields were introduced to accommodate non-date information that had previously been transmitted in date fields.

Instructions for Coding
- Leave this item blank if *Date of Transplant/Endocrine* has a full or partial date recorded.
- Code 12 if the *Date of Transplant/Endocrine* cannot be determined, but the patient did receive first course other treatment.
- Code 10 if it is unknown whether any other treatment was given.
- Code 11 if no other treatment is planned or given.
- Registrars should enter this data item directly (when appropriate) even if the traditional form of date entry is used in the software.

Code	Definition
10	No information whatsoever can be inferred from this exceptional value (that is, unknown if any transplant/endocrine was given).
11	No proper value is applicable in this context (for example, no transplant/endocrine given).
12	A proper value is applicable but not known. This event occurred, but the date is unknown (for example, transplant/endocrine was given but date is unknown).
(Blank)	A valid date is provided in item *Date of Transplant/Endocrine*.

The following table illustrates the use of the date flag and the traditional and interoperable date formats for coding *Date of Transplant/Endocrine* and *Date of Transplant/Endocrine Flag.* ***In the table below, the lowercase letter "b" is used to represent each blank space***.

Description	Traditional Date	Interoperable Date	Date Flag
	Date entered in MMDDCCYY sequence; unknown portions represented by 99 or 9999	**Date entered in CCYYMMDD sequence, leaving unknown portions blank (spaces);omit the date if the date is completely unknown**	
Full date known	MMDDYYCC (example: 02182007)	CCYYMMDD (example: 20070218)	bb
Month and year known	MM99CCYY (example: 02992007)	CCYYMMbb (example: 200702bb)	bb
Year only known	9999CCYY (example: 99992007)	CCYYbbbb (example: 2007bbbb)	bb
Unknown if transplant/ endocrine given	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	10
No transplant/endocrine given	00000000 (example: 00000000)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	11
Date is unk, transplant/ endocrine given	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	12

Date of Systemic Treatment

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Date – Systemic	3230	8	01/10	Optional

Description
Records the date of initiation for systemic therapy that is part of the first course of treatment. Systemic therapy includes the administration of chemotherapy agents, hormonal agents, biological response modifiers, bone marrow transplants, stem cell harvests, and surgical and/or radiation endocrine surgery.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Date of Systemic Treatment.

Rationale
Collecting dates for each treatment modality allows the sequencing of multiple treatments and aids in the evaluation of time intervals – from diagnosis to treatment and from treatment to recurrence.

Instructions for Coding

- Record the first or earliest date on which systemic therapy was administered. Systemic therapy includes Chemotherapy, Hormone Therapy, Immunotherapy, and Hematologic Transplant and Endocrine Procedures.
- Beginning in 2010, the way dates are transmitted has changed. In order that the registry data can be interoperable with other data sources, dates are transmitted in a format widely accepted outside of the registry setting. However, this does not necessarily mean that the way dates are entered in any particular registry software product has changed. Software providers can provide the best information about date entry in their own systems. The traditional format for *Date of Systemic Treatment* is MMDDCCYY, with 99 identifying unknown month or day, and 99999999 representing an entirely unknown date. The interoperable form of *Date of Systemic Treatment* transmits in CCYYMMDD form, where blank spaces are used for unknown trailing portions of the date. The *Date of Systemic Treatment Flag* is used to explain why *Date of Systemic Treatment* is not a known date. See *Date of Systemic Treatment Flag* for an illustration of the relationships among these items.

Examples:

Code	Reason
12152003	A patient with breast cancer begins her regimen of chemotherapy on December 15, 2003, and is subsequently given Tamoxifen on January 20, 2004.
06022003	A patient with Stage IV prostate cancer has an orchiectomy on June 2, 2003. The patient is then started on a regime of hormonal agents on June 9, 2003.

Date of Systemic Treatment Flag

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Date – Systemic Flag	3231	2	New 01/10	Optional

Description
This flag explains why there is no appropriate value in the corresponding date field, *Date of Systemic Treatment*.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Date of Systemic Treatment Flag.

Rationale
As part of an initiative to standardize date fields, date flag fields were introduced to accommodate non-date information that had previously been transmitted in date fields.

Instructions for Coding
- Leave this item blank if *Date of Systemic Treatment* has a full or partial date recorded.
- Code 12 if the *Date of Systemic Treatment* cannot be determined, but the patient did receive first course systemic therapy.
- Code 10 if it is unknown whether any systemic therapy was performed.
- Code 11 if no systemic therapy is planned or given.
- Code 15 if systemic therapy is planned, but has not yet started and the start date is not yet available. Follow this patient for systemic therapy and update this item, *Date of Systemic Treatment*, and all other radiation items.
- Registrars should enter this data item directly (when appropriate) even if the traditional form of date entry is used in the software.

Code	Definition
10	No information whatsoever can be inferred from this exceptional value (that is, unknown if any systemic therapy was given).
11	No proper value is applicable in this context (for example, no systemic therapy given).
12	A proper value is applicable but not known. This event occurred, but the date is unknown (for example, systemic therapy was given but date is unknown).
15	If information is not available at this time, but it is expected that it will be available later (for example, systemic therapy is planned as part of first course of therapy, but had not been started at the time of the most recent follow-up).
(Blank)	A valid date is provided in item *Date of Systemic Treatment*.

The following table illustrates the use of the date flag and the traditional and interoperable date formats for coding *Date of Systemic Treatment* and *Date of Systemic Treatment Flag.* ***In the table below, the lowercase letter "b" is used to represent each blank space***.

Description	**Traditional Date**	**Interoperable Date**	**Date Flag**
	Date entered in MMDDCCYY sequence; unknown portions represented by 99 or 9999	**Date entered in CCYYMMDD sequence, leaving unknown portions blank (spaces);omit the date if the date is completely unknown**	
Full date known	MMDDYYCC (example: 02182007)	CCYYMMDD (example: 20070218)	bb
Month and year known	MM99CCYY (example: 02992007)	CCYYMMbb (example: 200702bb)	bb
Year only known	9999CCYY (example: 99992007)	CCYYbbbb (example: 2007bbbb)	bb
Unknown if any systemic therapy given	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	10
No systemic therapy given	00000000 (example: 00000000)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	11
Date is unknown, systemic therapy given	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	12
Systemic therapy not started yet	88888888 (example: 88888888)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	15

Scope of Regional Lymph Node Surgery

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Summ – Scope of Reg LN Surg	1292	1	01/04, 01/09	Required

Description
Identifies the removal, biopsy, or aspiration of regional lymph node(s) at the time of surgery of the primary site or during a separate surgical procedure.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Scope of Regional Lymph Node Surgery.

Rationale
This data item can be used to compare and evaluate the extent of surgical treatment.

Instructions for Coding
- The scope of regional lymph node surgery is collected for each surgical event even if surgery of the primary site was not performed.
- Record surgical procedures which aspirate, biopsy, or remove regional lymph nodes in an effort to diagnose or stage disease in this data item. Record the date of this surgical procedure in data item *Date of First Course of Treatment* and/or *Date of Surgery* as appropriate.
- Codes 0-7 are hierarchical. If only one procedure can be recorded, code the procedure that is numerically higher.
- For primaries of the meninges, brain, spinal cord, cranial nerves, and other parts of the central nervous system (C70.0-C70.9, C71.0-C71.9, C72.0-C72.9, C75.1-C75.3), code 9.
- For lymphomas (M-9590-9596, 9650-9719, 9727-9729) with a lymph node primary site (C77.0-C77.9), code 9.
- For an unknown or ill-defined primary (C76.0-C76.8, C80.9) or for hematopoietic, reticuloendothelial, immunoproliferative, or myeloproliferative disease (C42.0, C42.1, C42.3, C42.4 or M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9980-9989), code 9.
- Do not code *distant* lymph nodes removed during surgery to the primary site for this data item. Distant nodes are coded in the data field *Surgical Procedure/Other Site*.
- Refer to the current *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual* for site-specific identification of regional lymph nodes.
- If the procedure coded in this item was provided to prolong a patient's life by controlling symptoms, to alleviate pain, or to make the patient more comfortable, then also record this surgery in the item *Palliative Care*.

Code	Label	Definition
0	None	No regional lymph node surgery. No lymph nodes found in the pathologic specimen. Diagnosed at autopsy.
1	Biopsy or aspiration of regional lymph node, NOS	Biopsy or aspiration of regional lymph node(s) regardless of the extent of involvement of disease.
2	Sentinel lymph node biopsy	Biopsy of the first lymph node or nodes that drain a defined area of tissue within the body. Sentinel node(s) are identified by the injection of a dye or radio label at the site of the primary tumor.
3	Number of regional nodes removed unknown or not stated; regional lymph nodes removed, NOS	Sampling or dissection of regional lymph node(s) and the number of nodes removed is unknown or not stated. The procedure is not specified as sentinel node biopsy.
4	1-3 regional lymph nodes removed	Sampling or dissection of regional lymph node(s) with fewer than four lymph nodes found in the specimen. The procedure is not specified as sentinel node biopsy.

Code	Label	Definition
5	4 or more regional lymph nodes removed	Sampling or dissection of regional lymph nodes with at least four lymph nodes found in the specimen. The procedure is not specified as sentinel node biopsy.
6	Sentinel node biopsy and code 3, 4, or 5 at the same time, or timing not stated	Code 2 was performed in a single surgical event with code 3, 4, or 5. Or, code 2 and 3, 4, or 5 were performed, but timing was not stated in patient record.
7	Sentinel node biopsy and code 3, 4, or 5 at different times	Code 2 was followed in a subsequent surgical event by procedures coded as 3, 4, or 5.
9	Unknown or not applicable	It is unknown whether regional lymph node surgery was performed; death certificate-only; for lymphomas with a lymph node primary site; an unknown or ill-defined primary; or for hematopoietic, reticuloendothelial, immunoproliferative, or myeloproliferative disease.

Examples:

Code	Reason
0	There was an attempt at regional lymph node dissection or sentinel lymph node dissection, but no lymph nodes were found in the pathological specimen.
1	**(C14.0-Pharynx)** Aspiration of regional lymph node to confirm histology of widely metastatic disease.
3	**(C44.5-Skin of Back)** Patient has melanoma of the back. A sentinel lymph node dissection was done with the removal of one lymph node. This node was negative for disease.
4	**(C61.9-Prostate)** Bilateral pelvic lymph node dissection for prostate cancer.
6	**(C50.3-Breast)** Sentinel lymph node biopsy of right axilla, followed by right axillary lymph node dissection during the same surgical event.
9	**(C34.9-Lung)** Patient was admitted for radiation therapy following surgery for lung cancer. There is no documentation on the extent of surgery in patient record.

Note: One important use of registry data is the tracking of treatment patterns over time. In order to compare contemporary treatment with previously published treatment based on former codes, or to data unmodified from pre- 1998 definitions, the ability to differentiate surgeries in which four or more regional lymph nodes are removed is desirable. However, it is *very important* to note that the distinction between codes 4 and 5 is made to permit comparison of current surgical procedures with procedures coded in the past when the removal of fewer than 4 lymph nodes was not reflected in surgery codes. *It is not intended to reflect clinical significance* when applied to a particular surgical procedure. It is important to *avoid inferring, by data presentation or other methods that one category is preferable to another within the intent of these items*.

Surgery of Other Regional/Distant Site

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Summ – Surg Oth Reg/Dist Site	1294	1	01/04, 01/09, 01/10	Required

Description
Records the surgical removal of *distant lymph nodes* or other tissue(s) or organ(s) removed beyond the primary site.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Surgery of Other Regional/Distant Site.

Rationale
The removal of non-primary tissue documents the extent of surgical treatment and is useful in evaluating the extent of metastatic involvement.

Instructions for Coding
- If other tissue organs are removed during primary site surgery that are not specifically defined by the site-specific *Surgery of Primary Site* code, assign the highest numbered code that describes the surgical resection of other tissue or organs beyond the primary site surgical code.
- Assign the highest numbered code that describes the surgical resection of other tissue or organs beyond the primary site surgical code.
- Assign the highest numbered code that describes the surgical resection of *distant lymph node(s).*
- Incidental removal of tissue or organs is not a "*Surgery of Other Regional/Distant Site*".
- *Surgery of Other Regional/Distant* Site is collected for each surgical event even if surgery of the primary site was not performed.
- Code 1 if any surgery is performed to treat tumors of unknown or ill-defined primary sites (C76.0-C76.8, C80.9) or for hematopoietic, reticuloendothelial, immunoproliferative, or myeloproliferative disease (C42.0, C42.1, C42.3, C42.4 or M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992).
- If the procedure coded in this item was provided to prolong a patient's life by controlling symptoms, to alleviate pain, or to make the patient more comfortable, then also record this surgery in the item *Palliative Care*.

Code	Label	Definition
0	None	No surgical procedure of non-primary site was performed. Diagnosed at autopsy.
1	Non-primary surgical procedure performed	Non-primary surgical resection to other site(s), unknown if whether the site(s) is regional or distant.
2	Non-primary surgical procedure to other regional sites	Resection of regional site.
3	Non-primary surgical procedure to *distant lymph node(s)*	Resection of *distant lymph node(s)*.
4	Non-primary surgical procedure to distant site	Resection of distant site.
5	Combination of codes	Any combination of surgical procedures 2, 3, or 4.
9	Unknown	It is unknown whether any surgical procedure of a non-primary site was performed. Death certificate only.

Examples:

Code	Reason
0	(C18.1-Colon) The incidental removal of the appendix during a surgical procedure to remove a primary malignancy in the right colon.
1	Surgical removal of metastatic lesion from liver; unknown primary.
2	(C18.3-Colon) Surgical ablation of solitary liver metastasis, hepatic flexure primary.
4	(C34.9-Lung) Removal of solitary brain metastasis.
5	(C21.0-Anus) Excision of solitary liver metastasis and one large hilar lymph node.

Palliative Care

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Summ – Palliative Care	3270	1	01/04, 01/10	Optional

Description
Identifies any care provided in an effort to palliate or alleviate symptoms. Palliative care is performed to relieve symptoms and may include surgery, radiation therapy, systemic therapy (chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or other systemic drugs), and/or other pain management therapy.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Palliative Care.

Rationale
This data item allows reporting facilities to track care that is considered palliative rather than diagnostic or curative in intent.

Instructions for Coding
- Record the type of palliative care provided.
- Surgical procedures, radiation therapy, or systemic therapy provided to prolong the patient's life by controlling symptoms, to alleviate pain, or to make the patient comfortable should be coded palliative care and as first course therapy if that procedure removes or modifies either primary or secondary malignant tissue.
- Palliative care is not used to diagnose or stage the primary tumor.
- Do not record routine pain management following surgery or other treatment; do code first course pain management for persistent pain.

Code	Definition
0	No palliative care provided. Diagnosed at autopsy.
1	Surgery (which may involve a bypass procedure) to alleviate symptoms, but no attempt to diagnose, stage, or treat the primary tumor is made.
2	Radiation therapy to alleviate symptoms, but no attempt to diagnose, stage, or treat the primary tumor is made.
3	Chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or other systemic drugs to alleviate symptoms, but no attempt to diagnose, stage, or treat the primary tumor is made.
4	Patient received or was referred for pain management therapy with no other palliative care.
5	Any combination of codes 1, 2, and/or 3 without code 4.
6	Any combination of codes 1, 2, and/or 3 with code 4.
7	Palliative care was performed or referred, but no information on the type of procedure is available in patient record. Palliative care was provided that does not fit the descriptions for codes 1-6.
9	It is unknown if palliative care was performed or referred; not stated in patient record.

Examples:

Code	Reason
0	No palliative care was given.
1	A patient undergoes palliative surgical removal of brain metastasis. [Surgery recorded in *Other Treatment*].
1	A patient with unresectable pancreatic carcinoma (no surgical procedure of the primary site is performed) receives bypass surgery to alleviate jaundice and pain.
2	A patient is diagnosed with Stage IV prostate cancer. His only symptoms are painful bony metastases in his right hip and lower spine. XRT is given to those areas. (Record all radiotherapy items also).
2	A patient with lung cancer with a primary tumor extending into the spine is treated with XRT to shrink tumor away from spine/nerves to provide pain relief. Record all radiotherapy items also).
3	A patient is given palliative chemotherapy for Stage IIIB lung cancer. [Chemotherapy is recorded in *Chemotherapy*].
4	A 93-year old patient is diagnosed with multiple myeloma and enters a pain management clinic to treat symptoms. No other treatment is planned due to other medical problems.
5	A patient is diagnosed with widely disseminated small cell lung cancer. A palliative resection of a solitary brain metastasis is performed followed by XRT to the lower spine for painful bony metastasis. There is no known referral for pain management. (Record all surgery and radiotherapy items also).
6	A patient diagnosed with colon cancer receives bypass surgery to alleviate symptoms and XRT to the liver for metastasis, and then enters a pain management clinic for treatment of unremitting abdominal pain. (Record all radiotherapy items also).
7	A patient enters the facility with a clinical diagnosis of unresectable carcinoma of pancreas. A stent was inserted into the bile duct to relieve obstruction and improve the bile duct flow.

Surgical Approach 2010

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	668	1	New 01/10	Recommended

Description
This item is used to describe the surgical method used to approach the primary site for patients undergoing surgery of the primary site at this facility.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Approach – Surgery of Primary Site.

Rationale
This item is used to monitor patterns and trends in the adoption and utilization of minimally-invasive surgical techniques.

Instructions for Coding
- This item may be left blank for cases diagnosed prior to 2010.
- If the patient has multiple surgeries of the primary site, this item describes the approach used for the most invasive, definitive surgery.
- Assign code 2 or 4 if the surgery began as robotic assisted or laparoscopic and was converted to open.
- This item should not be confused with the obsolete item *Surgical Approach*.

Code	Definition
0	No surgical procedure of primary site at this facility; Diagnosed at autopsy
1	Robotic assisted
2	Robotic converted to open
3	Laparoscopic
4	Laparoscopic converted to open
5	Open or approach unspecified
9	Unknown whether surgery was performed at this facility

Examples:

Code	Reason
0	Patient received radiation at this facility after having surgery elsewhere
3	Surgery was performed laparoscopically
5	The surgical report described conventional open surgery, but did not use the term "open"

Treatment Status

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Summ – Treatment Status	1285	1	New 01/10	Required

Description
This data item summarizes whether the patient received any treatment or the tumor was under active surveillance.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Treatment Status.

Rationale
This data item documents active surveillance (watchful waiting) and eliminates searching each treatment modality to determine whether treatment was given. It is used in conjunction with *Date of First Course of Treatment* to document whether treatment was or was not given, it is unknown if treatment was given, or treatment was given on an unknown date.

Instructions for Coding
- This item may be left blank for cases diagnosed prior to 2010.
- Treatment given after a period of active surveillance is considered subsequent treatment and it is not coded in this item.

Code	Definition
0	No treatment given
1	Treatment given
2	Active Surveillance (watchful waiting)
9	Unknown if treatment was given

Examples:

Code	Reason
0	An elderly patient with pancreatic cancer requested no treatment.
0	Patient is expected to receive radiation, but it has not occurred yet (*Reason for No Radiation* = 8).
2	Treatment plan for a lymphoma patient is active surveillance.

Readmission to the Same Hospital Within 30 Days of Surgical Discharge

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	3190	1	01/04, 06/05, 01/10	Optional

Description
Records a readmission to the same hospital, for the same illness, within 30 days of discharge following hospitalization for surgical resection of the primary site.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Readmission within 30 Days.

Rationale
This data item provides information related to the quality of care. A patient may have a readmission related to the primary diagnosis on discharge if the length of stay was too short, and then he/she needed to return due to problems or complications. A patient may also need to be readmitted if discharge planning and/or follow-up instructions were ineffective. It is important to distinguish a planned from an unplanned readmission, since a planned readmission is not an indicator of quality of care problems.

Instructions for Coding
- Consult patient record or information from the billing department to determine if a readmission to the same hospital occurred within 30 days of the date recorded in the item *Date of Surgical Discharge*.
- Only record a readmission related to the treatment of this cancer.
- Review the treatment plan to determine whether the readmission was planned.
- If there was an unplanned admission following surgical discharge, check for an ICD-9-CM "E" code and record it, space allowing, as an additional *Comorbidities and Complications*.
- There may be times when the first course of treatment information is incomplete. Therefore, it is important to continue follow-up efforts to be certain the complete treatment information is collected.

Code	Definition
0	No surgical procedure of the primary site was performed, or the patient was not readmitted to the same hospital within 30 days of discharge.
1	A patient was surgically treated and was readmitted to the same hospital within 30 days of being discharged. This readmission was unplanned.
2	A patient was surgically treated and was then readmitted to the same hospital within 30 days of being discharged. This readmission was planned (chemotherapy port insertion, revision of colostomy, etc.)
3	A patient was surgically treated and, within 30 days of being discharged, the patient had both a planned and an unplanned readmission to the same hospital.
9	It is unknown whether surgery of the primary site was recommended or performed. It is unknown whether the patient was readmitted to the same hospital within 30 days of discharge. Death certificate only.

Examples:

Code	Reason
0	A patient does not return to the hospital following a local excision for a Stage I breast cancer.
0	A patient was surgically treated and, upon discharge from acute hospital care, was admitted/transferred to an extended care ward of the hospital.
1	A patient is readmitted to the hospital three weeks (21 days) following a colon resection due to unexpected perirectal bleeding.
2	Following surgical resection the patient returns to the hospital for the insertion of a chemotherapy port.

Surgical Margins

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Summ – Surgical Margins	1320	1	01/10	Recommended

Description
Records the final status of the surgical margins after resection of the primary tumor.

In RMCDS, click on the box "First Course Treatment" to enter Surgical Margins.

Rationale
This data item serves as a quality measure for pathology reports and is used for staging, and may be a prognostic factor in recurrence.

Instructions for Coding
- Record the margin status as it appears in the pathology report.
- Codes 0-3 are hierarchical; if two codes describe the margin status, use the numerically higher code.
- Code 7 if the pathology report indicates the margins could not be determined.
- If no surgery of the primary site was performed, code 8.
- Code 9 if the pathology report makes no mention of margins.
- For lymphomas (M-9590-9597, 9650-9719, 9724-9738) with a lymph node primary site (C77.0-C77.9), code 9.
- For an unknown or ill-defined primary (C76.0-C76.8, C80.9) or for hematopoietic, reticuloendothelial, immunoproliferative, or myeloproliferative disease (C42.0, C42.1, C42.3, C42.4, or M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992), code 9.

Code	Label	Definition
0	No residual tumor	All margins are grossly and microscopically negative.
1	Residual tumor, NOS	Involvement is indicated, but not otherwise specified.
2	Microscopic residual tumor	Cannot be seen by the naked eye.
3	Macroscopic residual tumor	Gross tumor of the primary site which is visible to the naked eye.
7	Margins not evaluable	Cannot be assessed (indeterminate).
8	No primary site surgery	No surgical procedure of the primary site. Diagnosed at autopsy.
9	Unknown or not applicable	If is unknown whether a surgical procedure to the primary site was performed; death certificate-only; for lymphomas with a lymph node primary site; an unknown or ill-defined primary; or for Hematopoietic, reticuloendothelial, immunoproliferative, or myeloproliferative disease.

Example:

Code	Reason
3	(C18-Colon) The pathology report from a colon resection describes the proximal margin as grossly involved with tumor (code 3) and the distal margin as microscopically involved (code 2). Code macroscopic involvement (code 3).

Date of First Course of Treatment

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	1270	8	01/10	Required

Description
Records the date on which treatment (surgery, radiation, systemic, or other treatment) of the patient began at any facility.

Rationale
It is important to be able to measure the delay between diagnosis and the onset of treatment. A secondary use for this date is as a starting point for survival statistics (rather than using the diagnosis date). This date cannot be calculated from the respective first course treatment dates if no treatment was given. Therefore, providing the date on which active surveillance is chosen, a physician decides not to treat a patient, or a patient's family or guardian declines treatment is important.

Instructions for Coding
- Record the earliest of the following dates: *Date of First Surgical Procedure*, *Date Radiation Started*, *Date Systemic Therapy Started*, or *Date Other Treatment Started*.
- If active surveillance or watchful waiting is selected as the first course of treatment record the date this decision is made.
- In cases of non-treatment, in which a physician decides not to treat a patient or a patient's family or guardian declines all treatment, the date of first course of treatment is the date this decision was made.
- Leave this item blank if the cancer was diagnosed at autopsy and not suspected prior to that.
- Beginning in 2010, the way dates are transmitted has changed. In order that the registry data can be interoperable with other data sources, dates are transmitted in a format widely accepted outside of the registry setting. However, this does not necessarily mean that the way dates are entered in any particular registry software product has changed. Software providers can provide the best information about date entry in their own systems. The traditional format for *Date of First Course of Treatment* is MMDDCCYY, with 99 identifying unknown month or day, and 99999999 representing an entirely unknown date. The interoperable form of *Date of First Course of Treatment* transmits in CCYYMMDD form, where blank spaces are used for unknown trailing portions of the date. The *Date 1st Course RX Flag* is used to explain why *Date of First Course of Treatment* is not a known date. See *Date 1st Course RX Flag* for an illustration of the relationships among these items.

Examples:

Code	Reason
02142004	A patient has a core biopsy on February 12, 2004 and subsequently undergoes an excisional biopsy on February 14, 2004
04212005	A patient begins receiving preoperative radiation therapy elsewhere on April 21, 2005 and subsequent surgical therapy at this facility on June 2, 2005.

Date 1st Course RX Flag

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	1271	2	New 01/10	Required

Description
This flag explains why there is no appropriate value in the corresponding date field, *Date of First Course of Treatment.*

Rationale
As part of an initiative to standardize date fields, date flag fields were introduced to accommodate non-date information that had previously been transmitted in date fields.

Instructions for Coding
- Leave this item blank if *Date of First Course of Treatment* has a full or partial date recorded.
- Code 12 if the *Date of First Course of Treatment* cannot be determined, but the patient did receive first course treatment.
- Code 10 if it is unknown whether any treatment was administered.
- Code 11 if the initial diagnosis was at autopsy.
- Registrars should enter this data item directly (when appropriate) even if the traditional form of date entry is used in the software.

Code	Definition
10	No information whatsoever can be inferred from this exceptional value (that is, unknown if any treatment was given).
11	No proper value is applicable in this context (for example, autopsy only).
12	A proper value is applicable but not known. This event occurred, but the date is unknown (for example, treatment was given but the date is unknown).
(Blank)	A valid date is provided in item *Date of First Course of Treatment*.

The following table illustrates the use of the date flag and the traditional and interoperable date formats for coding *Date of First Course of Treatment* and *Date 1st Course RX Flag.* ***In the table below, the lowercase letter "b" is used to represent each blank space***.

Description	Traditional Date	Interoperable Date	Date Flag
	Date entered in MMDDCCYY sequence; unknown portions represented by 99 or 9999	**Date entered in CCYYMMDD sequence, leaving unknown portions blank (spaces);omit the date if the date is completely unknown**	
Full date known	MMDDYYCC (example: 02182007)	CCYYMMDD (example: 20070218)	bb
Month and year known	MM99CCYY (example: 02992007)	CCYYMMbb (example: 200702bb)	bb
Year only known	9999CCYY (example: 99992007)	CCYYbbbb (example: 2007bbbb)	bb
Unknown if any treatment given	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	10
Diagnosis at autopsy only	00000000 (example: 00000000)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	11
Date is unknown, treatment given	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	12

Reason for No Surgery

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	1340	1	01/04	Required

Description
Records the reason that no surgery was performed on the primary site.

Rationale
This data item provides information related to the quality of care and describes why primary site surgery was not performed.

Instructions for Coding
- If *Surgery of Primary Site* is coded 00, then record the reason based on documentation in the patient record.
- Code 1 if the treatment plan offered multiple options and the patient selected treatment that did not include surgery of the primary site, or if the option of "no treatment" was accepted by the patient.
- Code 1 if *Surgery of Primary Site* is coded 98.
- Code 7 if the patient refused recommended surgical treatment, made a blanket refusal of all recommended treatment, or refused all treatment before any was recommended.
- Cased coded 8 should be followed and updated to a more definitive code as appropriate.
- Code 9 if the treatment plan offered multiple choices, but it is unknown which treatment, if any was provided.

Code	Definition
0	Surgery of the primary site was performed.
1	Surgery of the primary site was not performed because it was not part of the planned first course treatment.
2	Surgery of the primary site was not recommended/performed because it was contraindicated due to patient risk factors (comorbid conditions, advanced age, etc.)
5	Surgery of the primary site was not performed because the patient died prior to planned or recommended surgery.
6	Surgery of the primary site was not performed; it was recommended by the patient's physician, but was not performed as part of the first course of therapy. No reason was noted in patient record.
7	Surgery of the primary site was not performed; it was recommended by the patient's physician, but this treatment was refused by the patient, the patient's family member, or the patient's guardian. The refusal was noted in the patient record.
8	Surgery of the primary site was recommended, but it is unknown if it was performed. Further follow-up is recommended.
9	It is unknown whether surgery of the primary site was recommended or performed. Diagnosed at autopsy or death certificate only.

Examples:

Code	Reason
2	A patient with a primary tumor of the liver is not recommended for surgery due to advanced cirrhosis.
8	A patient is referred to another facility for recommended surgical resection of a gastric carcinoma, but further information from the facility to which the patient was referred is not available.

Reason for No Radiation

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	1430	1	09/04	Required

Description
Records the reason that no regional radiation therapy was administered to the primary site.

Rationale
When evaluating the quality of care, it is useful to know the reason that various methods of therapy were not used, and whether the failure to provide a given type of therapy was due to the physician's failure to recommend that treatment, or due to the refusal of the patient, a family member, or the patient's guardian.

Instructions for Coding

- If *Regional Treatment Modality* is coded 00, then record the reason based on documentation in the patient record.
- Code 1 if the treatment plan offered multiple options and the patient selected treatment that did not include radiation therapy.
- Code 7 if the patient refused recommended radiation therapy, made a blanket refusal of all recommended treatment, or refused all treatment before any was recommended.
- Cased coded 8 should be followed and updated to a more definitive code as appropriate.
- Code 9 if the treatment plan offered multiple choices, but it is unknown which treatment, if any was provided.

Code	Definition
0	Radiation therapy was performed.
1	Radiation therapy was not performed because it was not part of the planned first course treatment.
2	Radiation therapy was not recommended/administered because it was contraindicated due to patient risk factors (comorbid conditions, advanced age, etc.)
5	Radiation therapy was not administered because the patient died prior to planned or recommended surgery.
6	Radiation therapy was not administered; it was recommended by the patient's physician, but was not performed as part of the first course of therapy. No reason was noted in patient record.
7	Radiation therapy was not administered; it was recommended by the patient's physician, but this treatment was refused by the patient, the patient's family member, or the patient's guardian. The refusal was noted in the patient record.
8	Radiation therapy was recommended, but it is unknown if it was administered.
9	It is unknown if radiation therapy was recommended or administered. Death certificate and autopsy cases only.

Examples:

Code	Reason
1	A patient with Stage I prostate cancer is offered either surgery or brachytherapy to treat his disease. The patient elects to be surgically treated.

Surgery/Radiation Sequence

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Summ – Surg/Rad Sequence	1380	1	01/04, 01/10	Required

Description
Records the sequencing of radiation and surgical procedures given as part of the first course of treatment.

Rationale
The sequence of radiation and surgical procedures given as part of the first course of treatment cannot always be determined using the date on which each modality was started or performed. This data item can be used to more precisely evaluate the timing of delivery of treatment to the patient.

Instructions for Coding
- Surgical procedures include the *Surgery of Primary Site*; *Scope of Regional Lymph Node Surgery*; and *Surgical Procedure/Other Site*. If all of these procedures are coded 0, or it is unknown whether the patient received both surgery and radiation, then this item should be coded 0.
- If the patient received both radiation therapy and any one or a combination of the following surgical procedures: *Surgery of Primary Site*; *Scope of Regional Lymph Node Surgery*; or *Surgical Procedure/Other Site*, then code this item 2-9, as appropriate.

Code	Label	Definition
0	No radiation therapy and/or surgical procedures	No radiation therapy given or unknown if radiation given; and/or no surgery of the primary site; no scope of regional lymph node surgery; no surgery to other regional site(s), distant site(s), or distant lymph node(s); or it is unknown whether any surgery given.
2	Radiation therapy before surgery	Radiation therapy given before surgery to primary site; scope of regional lymph node surgery, surgery to other regional site(s), distant site(s), or distant lymph node(s).
3	Radiation therapy after surgery	Radiation therapy given after surgery to primary site; scope of regional lymph node surgery, surgery to other regional site(s), distant site(s), or distant lymph node(s).
4	Radiation therapy both before and after surgery	Radiation therapy given before and after any surgery to primary site; scope of regional lymph node surgery, surgery to other regional site(s), distant site(s), or distant lymph node(s).
5	Intraoperative radiation therapy	Intraoperative therapy given during surgery to primary site; scope of regional lymph node surgery, surgery to other regional site(s), distant site(s), or distant lymph node(s).
6	Intraoperative radiation therapy with other therapy administered before or after surgery	Intraoperative radiation therapy given during surgery to primary site; scope of regional lymph node surgery, surgery to other regional site(s), distant site(s), or distant lymph node(s) with other radiation therapy administered before or after surgery to primary site; scope of regional lymph node surgery, surgery to other regional site(s), distant site(s), or distant lymph node(s).
9	Sequence unknown	Administration of radiation therapy and surgery to primary site; scope of regional lymph node surgery, surgery to other regional site(s), distant site(s), or distant lymph node(s) were performed and the sequence of the treatment is not stated in the patient record.

Examples:

Code	Reason
0	Due to other medical conditions surgery was not performed. The patient received palliative radiation therapy to alleviate pain.
2	A large lung lesion received radiation therapy prior to resection.
3	A patient received a wedge resection of a right breast mass with axillary lymph node dissection followed by radiation to right breast.
4	Preoperative radiation therapy was given to a large, bulky vulvar lesion and was followed by a lymph node dissection. This was then followed by radiation therapy to treat positive lymph nodes.
5	A cone biopsy of the cervix was followed by intracavitary implant for IIIB cervical carcinoma.
6	Stage IV vaginal carcinoma was treated with 5,000 cGy to the pelvis followed by a lymph node dissection and 2,500 cGy of intracavitary brachytherapy.
9	An unknown primary of the head and neck was treated with surgery and radiation prior to admission, but the sequence is unknown. The patient enters for chemotherapy.

Systemic/Surgery Sequence

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
RX Summ – Systemic/Surg Seq	1639	1	01/10	Required

Description
Records the sequencing of systemic therapy and surgical procedures given as part of the first course of treatment.

Rationale
The sequence of systemic therapy and surgical procedures given as part of the first course of treatment cannot always be determined using the date on which each modality was started or performed. This data item can be used to more precisely evaluate the timing of delivery of treatment to the patient.

Instructions for Coding
- *Systemic/Surgery Sequence* is to be used for patients diagnosed on or after January 1, 2006.
- Code the administration of systemic therapy in sequence with the first surgery performed, described in the item *Date of Surgery*.
- If none of the following surgical procedures were performed: *Surgery of Primary Site*; *Scope of Regional Lymph Node Surgery*; and *Surgical Procedure/Other Site* then this item should be coded 0.
- If the patient received both systemic therapy and any one or a combination of the following surgical procedures: *Surgery of Primary Site*, *Scope of Regional Lymph Node Surgery*, or *Surgical Procedure/Other Site*, then code this item 2-9, as appropriate.

Code	Label	Definition
0	No systemic therapy and/or surgical procedures	No systemic therapy was given; and/or no surgical procedure of primary site; no scope of regional lymph node surgery; no surgery to other regional site(s), distant site(s), or distant lymph node(s); or no reconstructive surgery was performed. It is unknown whether both surgery and systemic treatment were provided.
2	Systemic therapy before surgery	Systemic therapy was given before surgical procedure of primary site; scope of regional lymph node surgery; surgery to other regional site(s), distant site(s), or distant lymph node(s) was performed.
3	Systemic therapy after surgery	Systemic therapy was given after surgical procedure of primary site; scope of regional lymph node surgery; surgery to other regional site(s), distant site(s), or distant lymph node(s) was performed.
4	Systemic therapy both before and after surgery	Systemic therapy given before and after any surgical procedure of primary site; scope of regional lymph node surgery; surgery to other regional site(s), distant site(s), or distant lymph node(s) was performed.
5	Intraoperative systemic therapy	Intraoperative systemic therapy was given during surgical procedure of primary site; scope of regional lymph node surgery; surgery to other regional site(s), distant site(s), or distant lymph node(s).
6	Intraoperative systemic therapy with other therapy administered before or after surgery	Intraoperative systemic therapy was given during surgical procedure of primary site; scope of regional lymph node surgery; surgery to other regional site(s), distant site(s), or distant lymph node(s) with other systemic therapy administered before or after surgical procedure of primary site; scope of regional lymph node surgery; surgery to other regional site(s), distant site(s), or distant lymph node(s) was performed.
9	Sequence unknown	Both surgery and systemic therapy were provided, but the sequence is unknown.

Examples:

Code	Reason
0	Due to other medical conditions surgery was not performed. The patient received palliative radiation therapy to alleviate pain.
2	Patient with prostate cancer received hormone therapy prior to a radical prostatectomy.
3	Patient underwent a colon resection followed by a 5-FU based chemotherapy regimen.
4	Patient with breast cancer receives pre-operative chemotherapy followed by post-operative Tamoxifen.
5	Patient with an intracranial primary undergoes surgery at which time a glial wafer is implanted into the resected cavity.
6	Patient with metastatic colon cancer receives intraoperative chemotherapy to the liver.
9	An unknown primary of the head and neck was treated with surgery and chemotherapy prior to admission, but the sequence is unknown. The patient enters for radiation therapy.

Subsequent Treatment

In RMCDS, click on the box “Subsequent Treatment” to enter the screen for recording subsequent treatment.

Record data in the Subsequent Treatment as documented for recording data for First Course of Treatment for:

Blank Page

Blank Page

Blank Page

Blank Page

Blank Page

Blank Page

Outcomes

Blank Page

Date of Last Contact or Death

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Date Last Seen	1750	8	01/10	Required

Description
Records the date of last contact with the patient or the date of death.

Rationale
This information is used for patient follow-up and outcome studies.

Instructions for Coding

- Record the last date on which the patient was known to be alive or the date of death.
- If a patient has multiple primaries, all records should have the same date of last contact.
- Beginning in 2010, the way dates are transmitted has changed. In order that the registry data can be interoperable with other data sources, dates are transmitted in a format widely accepted outside of the registry setting. However, this does not necessarily mean that the way dates are entered in any particular registry software product has changed. Software providers can provide the best information about date entry in their own systems. The traditional format for *Date of Last Contact or Death* is MMDDCCYY, with 99 identifying unknown month or day, and 99999999 representing an entirely unknown date. The interoperable form of *Date of Last Contact or Death* transmits in CCYYMMDD form, where blank spaces are used for unknown trailing portions of the date. The *Date of Last Contact Flag* is used to explain why *Date of Last Contact or Death* is not a known date. See *Date of Last Contact Flag* for an illustration of the relationships among these items.

Date of Last Contact Flag

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	1751	2	New 01/10	Required

Description
This flag explains why there is no appropriate value in the corresponding date field, *Date of Last Contact or Death*.

Rationale
As part of an initiative to standardize date fields, date flag fields were introduced to accommodate non-date information that had previously been transmitted in date fields.

Instructions for Coding
- Leave this item blank if *Date of Last Contact or Death* has a full or partial date recorded.
- Code 12 if the *Date of Last Contact or Death* cannot be determined.
- Registrars should enter this data item directly (when appropriate) even if the traditional form of date entry is used in the software.

Code	Definition
12	A proper value is applicable but not known. This event occurred, but the date is unknown (for example, the date of last contact is unknown).
(Blank)	A valid date is provided in item *Date of Last Contact or Death*.

The following table illustrates the use of the date flag and the traditional and interoperable date formats for coding *Date of Last Contact or Death* and *Date of Last Contact Flag*. ***In the table below, the lowercase letter "b" is used to represent each blank space***.

Description	Traditional Date	Interoperable Date	Date Flag
	Date entered in MMDDCCYY sequence; unknown portions represented by 99 or 9999	**Date entered in CCYYMMDD sequence, leaving unknown portions blank (spaces);omit the date if the date is completely unknown**	
Full date known	MMDDYYCC (example: 02182007)	CCYYMMDD (example: 20070218)	bb
Month and year known	MM99CCYY (example: 02992007)	CCYYMMbb (example: 200702bb)	bb
Year only known	9999CCYY (example: 99992007)	CCYYbbbb (example: 2007bbbb)	bb
Date is unknown	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	12

Vital Status

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Patient Status	1760	1		Required

Description
Records the vital status of the patient as the date entered in *Date of Last Contact or Death*.

Rationale
This information is used for patient follow-up and outcome studies.

Instructions for Coding
- This item is collected during the follow-up process with *Date of Last Contact or Death*.
- If a patient has multiple primaries, all records should have the same vital status.

Code	Label
0	Dead
1	Alive

Examples:

Code	Reason
0	Death clearance information obtained from a state central registry confirms the death of the patient within the past year.
1	In response to a follow-up letter to patient's following physician, it is learned the patient is alive.

Cancer Status

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Tumor Status	1770	1	01/04	Required

Description
Records the presence or absence of clinical evidence of the patient's malignant or non-malignant tumor as the *Date of Last Contact or Death*.

Rationale
This information is used for patient follow-up and outcomes studies.

Instructions for Coding
- Cancer status is based on information from the patient's physician or other official source such as a death certificate.
- The patient's cancer status should be changed **only** if new information is received from the patient's physician or other official source. If information is obtained from the patient, a family member, or other non-physician, then cancer status is not updated.
- Cancer status changes if the patient has a recurrence or relapse.
- If a patient has multiple primaries, each primary could have a different cancer status.

Code	Label
1	No evidence of this tumor
2	Evidence of this tumor
9	Unknown, indeterminate whether this tumor is present; not stated in patient record

Examples:

Code	Reason
1	Patient with hematopoietic disease who is in remission.
1	A patient is seen by the physician on February 2, 2004 with no evidence of this tumor. The patient did not return to the physician. The patient was then called by the registry on August 29, 2005. The *Date of Last Contact or Death* is updated, but the cancer status is not.
2	A patient with prostate cancer is diagnosed with bone metastasis in April 2003. The registrar finds an obituary documenting the patient's death in a nursing home in June 2003.

Letter Frequency

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
		1		Required

Description
Code indicates how many times per year a follow-up inquiry will be generated for each patient.

Rationale
Follow-up for each patient should be conducted once per year. Some registries may opt to follow patients more frequently than once a year.

Instructions for Coding
- RMCDS software program automatically defaults this field to a 3 (annual follow-up).
- No follow-up is generated when a code 0 appears in the *Vital Status* field (patient has died). A patient who has died does not need the letter frequency changed to a 9.
- Letter frequency should be coded to a 9 for cervix in-situ, basal and squamous cell skin cancers, and non-reportable benign tumors.

Code	Definition
1	Quarterly letters
2	Semi-annual letters
3	Annual letters
7	Patient residing out of the country; not required to follow these cases. Letter is not generated and case is eliminated from follow-up rate.
8	Special – generates annual letter, but leaves physician's address blank.
9	Stops follow-up letters (same as 7 above, but these are counted in follow-up rate except as defined in rules, i.e., cervix in-situ, squamous and basal cell carcinoma of skin, and benign tumors.

Describe Place of Death

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Text – Describe Place of Death		25		Recommended

Description
Text to manually describe the facility, place, state, or country where the patient died and where the certificate of death is filed.

Rationale
This field also helps carry out death clearance. When a hospital reports a place of death, the information can help in death certificate matching. It can also signal an out-of-state death for which the death certificate is to be requested.

Instructions for Coding
- Describe in detail the place where the patient died (e.g., Montana Nursing Home, City, MT)

Place of Death

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	1940	3		Required

Description
Describe the state or country where the patient died and where the certificate of death is filed.

Rationale
This field also helps carry out death clearance. When a hospital reports a place of death, the information can help in death certificate matching. It can also signal an out-of-state death for which the death certificate is to be requested.

Instructions for Coding
- Use the most specific code.
- Use the SEER Geocodes for "Place of Birth". These codes include states of the United States as well as foreign countries.
- For SEER Geocodes, see *The SEER Program Code Manual*, Third Edition, (*http://seer.cancer.gov/*) or *NAACCR Volume II: Data Standards and Data Dictionary*, Sixth Edition, (*http://www.naaccr.org*).

Code	Definition
000-750	SEER Geocode
997	Not applicable, patient alive
999	Place of death unknown

Cause of Death

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Underlying Cause of Death	1910	4		Required

Description
Official cause of death as coded from the death certificate in valid ICD-10 codes. Central Registries obtain the official underlying cause of death from the Office of Vital Statistics.

Rationale
Cause of death is used for calculation of adjusted survival rates by the life table method. The adjustment corrects for deaths other than from the diagnosed cancer.

Instructions for Coding
- Code 7777 when death occurred and underlying cause of death from the death certificate is unavailable.

Code	Definition
0000	Patient alive at last contact
7777	State death certificate not available
7797	State death certificate available but underlying cause of death is not coded

Autopsy

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	1930	1		Required

Description
Code indicating whether or not an autopsy was performed.

Rationale
This field indicates if a patient had autopsy at death. Autopsy at death may affect the diagnostic confirmation of the tumor.

Instructions for Coding
- Code 0 if patient is alive.

Code	Definition
0	Not applicable; patient alive
1	Autopsy performed
2	No autopsy performed
9	Patient expired, unknown if autopsy performed

Blank Page

Physician - Primary Surgeon

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Surgeon	2480	5		Required

Description
Records the identification number of the physician who performed the most definitive surgical procedure.

Rationale
Administrative, physician, and service referral reports are based on this data item.

Instructions for Coding
- The registry assigns a unique number to the primary surgeon. Many registries use the physician's state medical license number.
- Contact the MCTR to assign or obtain new numbers.
- Once the registry has designated a primary surgeon for the patient, the information should not be changed or updated even if the patient receives care from another surgeon.
- Do not update this data item.

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	The identification number may include numbers and letters. *Note:* If the patient did not have surgery, use the code for the surgeon who performed any surgery or did a surgical consultation.
00000	If the patient had no surgery and no surgical consultation.
88888	If the physician who performed a surgical procedure was not a surgeon, i.e., radiation oncologist, diagnostic radiologist, or general practitioner.
99999	The primary surgeon is unknown or an identification number is not assigned.

Physician - Follow-Up

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Following Physician	2470	5		Required

Description
Records the identification number of the person currently responsible for the patient's medical care.

Rationale
The following physician is the first contact for obtaining information on a patient's status and subsequent treatment. This information may be used for outcome studies.

Instructions for Coding
- The registry assigns a unique number for the following physician. Many registries use the physician's state medical license number.
- Contact the MCTR to assign or obtain new numbers.
- Change this data item when patient follow-up becomes the responsibility of another physician.

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	The identification number may include numbers and letters.
99999	The following physician is unknown or an identification number is not assigned.

Physician - Managing

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Managing Physician	2460	5		Required

Description
Records the identification number of another physician involved in the care of the patient.

Rationale
Administrative, physician, and service referral reports are based on this data item. It can also be used for follow-up purposes.

Instructions for Coding
- The registry assigns a unique number to this data item. Many registries use the physician's state medical license number.
- Contact the MCTR to assign or obtain new numbers.

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	The identification number may include numbers and letters.
99999	The following physician is unknown or an identification number is not assigned.

Physician - 3

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2490	5	01/04, 01/10	Required

Description
Records the identification number of another physician involved in the care of the patient. The Commission on Cancer recommends that this data item identify the physician who performed the most definitive radiation therapy.

Rationale
Administrative, physician, and service referral reports are based on this data item. It can also be used for follow-up purposes.

Instructions for Coding
- The registry assigns a unique number to this data item. Many registries use the physician's state medical license number.
- If the registry has a designated primary radiation oncologist for this patient, the information in this data item should not be changed or updated even if the patient receives care from another radiation oncologist.
- Contact the MCTR to assign or obtain new numbers.

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	The identification number may include numbers and letters.
00000	None; no additional physician.
99999	Physician is unknown or an identification number is not assigned.

Physician - 4

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2500	5	01/04, 01/10	Required

Description
Records the identification number of another physician involved in the care of the patient. The Commission on Cancer recommends that this data item identify the physician who gives the most definitive systemic therapy.

Rationale
Administrative, physician, and service referral reports are based on this data item. It can also be used for follow-up purposes.

Instructions for Coding
- The registry assigns a unique number to this data item. Many registries use the physician's state medical license number.
- If the registry has designated a primary medical oncologist for the patient, the information in this data item should not be changed or updated even if the patient receives care from another medical oncologist.
- Contact the MCTR to assign or obtain new numbers.

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	The identification number may include numbers and letters.
00000	None; no additional physician.
99999	Physician is unknown or an identification number is not assigned.

NPI-Primary Surgeon

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2485	10	01/09	Optional

Description
Identifies the physician who performed the most definitive surgical procedure.

Rationale
Administrative, physician, and service referral reports are based on this data item.

NPI-Primary Surgeon is the NPI equivalent of *Primary Surgeon*. Both are required during a period of transition.

Instructions for Coding
- Record the 10-digit NPI for the physician who performed the most definitive surgical procedure.
- Check with the billing or health information departments to determine the physician's NPI or search at https://nppes.cms.hhs.gov/NPPES/NPIRegistryHome.do.
- NPI should be recorded as available for cases diagnosed during 2007, and is required to be recorded for all cases diagnosed January 1, 2008, and later.
- NPI may be blank for cases diagnosed on or before December 31, 2006
- Do not update this item. Once the registry has designated a primary surgeon for the patient, the information should not be changed or updated even if the patient receives care from another surgeon.

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	10-digit NPI number for the primary surgeon.
(leave blank)	The patient did not have surgery; NPI for the primary surgeon is unknown or not available; or the physician who performed the surgical procedure was not a surgeon (i.e., general practitioner)

NPI-Following Physician

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2475	10	01/09	Optional

Description
Records the NPI for the physician currently responsible for the patient's medical care.

Rationale
The following physician is the first contact for obtaining information on a patient's status and subsequent treatment. This information may be used for outcomes studies.

NPI-Following Physician is the NPI equivalent of *Following Physician*. Both are required during a period of transition.

Instructions for Coding
- Record the 10-digit NPI for the physician currently responsible for the patient's medical care.
- Check with the billing or health information departments to determine the physician's NPI or search at https://nppes.cms.hhs.gov/NPPES/NPIRegistryHome.do.
- Change this data item when patient follow-up becomes the responsibility of another physician.
- NPI should be recorded as available for cases diagnosed during 2007, and is required to be recorded for all cases diagnosed January 1, 2008, and later.
- NPI may be blank for cases diagnosed on or before December 31, 2006

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	10-digit NPI number for the following physician.
(leave blank)	NPI for the following physician is unknown or not available.

NPI-Managing Physician

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2465	10	01/09	Optional

Description
Identifies the physician who is responsible for the overall management of the patient during diagnosis and/or treatment of this cancer.

Rationale
The managing physician is responsible for the patient's work-up, plans the treatment, and directs the delivery of patient care in accordance with CoC Standards. In most case, the managing physician is responsible for AJCC staging.

NPI-Managing Physician is the NPI equivalent of *Managing Physician*. Both are required during a period of transition.

Instructions for Coding
- Record the 10-digit NPI for the physician responsible for managing the patient's care.
- Check with the billing or health information departments to determine the physician's NPI or search at https://nppes.cms.hhs.gov/NPPES/NPIRegistryHome.do.
- NPI should be recorded as available for cases diagnosed during 2007, and is required to be recorded for all cases diagnosed January 1, 2008, and later.
- NPI may be blank for cases diagnosed on or before December 31, 2006
- Do not update this item. Once the registry has designated a managing physician for the patient, this item should not be changed even if a different managing physician is assigned.

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	10-digit NPI number for the managing physician.
(leave blank)	NPI for the managing physician is unknown or not available.

NPI-Physician 3

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
Radiation Oncologist	2495	10	01/09, 01/10	Optional

Description
Records the NPI for a physician involved in the care of the patient. The Commission on Cancer recommends that this item identify the physician who performed the most definitive radiation therapy.

Rationale
Administrative, physician, and service referral reports are based on this data item. It also can be used for follow-up purposes.

NPI-Physician 3 is the NPI equivalent of *Physician-3*. Both are required during a period of transition.

Instructions for Coding
- Record the 10-digit NPI for the physician.
- Check with the billing or health information departments to determine the physician's NPI or search at https://nppes.cms.hhs.gov/NPPES/NPIRegistryHome.do.
- Do not update this item. If the registry has designated a primary radiation oncologist for the patient, the information in this data item should not be changed or updated even if the patient receives care from another radiation oncologist.
- NPI should be recorded as available for cases diagnosed during 2007, and is required to be recorded for all cases diagnosed January 1, 2008, and later.
- NPI may be blank for cases diagnosed on or before December 31, 2006

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	10-digit NPI number for the physician.
(leave blank)	NPI for the primary radiation oncologist is unknown or not available.

NPI-Physician 4

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2505	10	01/09, 01/10	Optional

Description
Records the NPI for a physician involved in the care of the patient. The Commission on Cancer recommends that this data item identify the physician who gives the most definitive systemic therapy.

Rationale
Administrative, physician, and service referral reports are based on this data item. It also can be used for follow-up purposes.

NPI-Physician 4 is the NPI equivalent of *Physician-4*. Both are required during a period of transition.

Instructions for Coding
- Record the 10-digit NPI for the physician.
- Check with the billing or health information departments to determine the physician's NPI or search at https://nppes.cms.hhs.gov/NPPES/NPIRegistryHome.do.
- Do not update this item. If the registry has designated a primary medical oncologist for the patient, the information in this data item should not be changed or updated even if the patient receives care from another medical oncologist.
- NPI should be recorded as available for cases diagnosed during 2007, and is required to be recorded for all cases diagnosed January 1, 2008, and later.
- NPI may be blank for cases diagnosed on or before December 31, 2006

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	10-digit NPI number for the physician.
(leave blank)	NPI for the primary medical oncologist is unknown or not available.

Follow-up Source

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	1790	1		Optional

Description
Records the source from which the latest follow-up information was obtained.

Rationale
This data item is used by registries to identify the most recent follow-up source.

Instructions for Coding

Code	Label	Definition
0	Reported hospitalization	Hospitalization at another institution/hospital or first admission to the reporting facility.
1	Readmission	Hospitalization or outpatient visit at the reporting facility.
2	Physician	Information from a physician.
3	Patient	Direct contact with the patient.
4	Depart of Motor Vehicles	The Department of Motor Vehicles confirmed the patient has a current license.
5	Medicare/Medicaid file	The Medicare or Medicaid office confirmed the patient is alive.
7	Death Certificate	Information from the death certificate only.
8	Other	Friends, relatives, employers, other registries, or any sources not covered by other codes.
9	Unknown; not stated in patient record	The follow-up source is unknown or not stated in patient record.

Next Follow-up Source

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	1800	1	01/10	Optional

Description
Identifies the method planned for the next follow-up.

Rationale
This data item is used by registries to identify the method planned for the next follow-up.

Instructions for Coding
- Registries in CoC-approved cancer programs are not required to follow foreign residents.
- As of January 1, 2006, the CoC does not require Class of Case 00 cases to be followed.

Code	Definition
0	Chart requisition
1	Physician letter
2	Contact letter
3	Phone call
4	Other hospital contact
5	Other, NOS
8	Foreign residents (not followed)
9	Not followed. Other cases for which follow-up is not required.

Recurrence Date - 1st

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	1860	88	06/05, 01/10	Required

Description
Records the date of the first recurrence.

Rationale
This data item is used to measure the efficacy of the first course of treatment.

Instructions for Coding

- Record the date the physician diagnoses the first progression, metastasis, or recurrence of disease after a disease-free period.
- Reappearance of a tumor of the same histology in the same primary site during the time period defined by the SEER Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules does not constitute a recurrence.
- Beginning in 2010, the way dates are transmitted has changed. In order that the registry data can be interoperable with other data sources, dates are transmitted in a format widely accepted outside of the registry setting. However, this does not necessarily mean that the way dates are entered in any particular registry software product has changed. Software providers can provide the best information about date entry in their own systems. The traditional format for *Recurrence Date – 1st* is MMDDCCYY, with 99 identifying unknown month or day, and 99999999 representing an entirely unknown date. The interoperable form of *Recurrence Date – 1st* transmits in CCYYMMDD form, where blank spaces are used for unknown trailing portions of the date. The *Date of Recurrence Date – 1st Flag* is used to explain why *Recurrence Date – 1st* is not a known date. See *Date of Recurrence Date – 1st Flag* for an illustration of the relationships among these items

Recurrence Date – 1st Flag

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	1861	2	New 01/10	Required

Description
This flag explains why there is no appropriate value in the corresponding date field, *Recurrence Date – 1st*.

Rationale
As part of an initiative to standardize date fields, date flag fields were introduced to accommodate non-date information that had previously been transmitted in date fields.

Instructions for Coding
- Leave this item blank if *Recurrence Date – 1st* has a full or partial date recorded.
- Code 12 if the *Recurrence Date – 1st* cannot be determined, but the patient did have recurrence following a disease-free period.
- Code 10 if it is unknown whether the patient had recurrence.
- Code 11 if the patient was never disease free, became disease free but had no recurrence, or was initially diagnosed at autopsy.
- Registrars should enter this data item directly (when appropriate) even if the traditional form of date entry is used in the software.

Code	Definition
10	No information whatsoever can be inferred from this exceptional value (that is, unknown if the patient was ever disease-free or had a first recurrence).
11	No proper value is applicable in this context (for example, patient became disease-free after treatment and never had a recurrence; or patient was never disease-free; autopsy only case).
12	A proper value is applicable but not known (for example, there was a recurrence, but the date is unknown).
(Blank)	A valid date is provided in item *Recurrence Date – 1st*.

The following table illustrates the use of the date flag and the traditional and interoperable date formats for coding *Recurrence Date – 1st* and *Recurrence Date – 1st Flag*. ***In the table below, the lowercase letter "b" is used to represent each blank space***.

Description	Traditional Date	Interoperable Date	Date Flag
	Date entered in MMDDCCYY sequence; unknown portions represented by 99 or 9999	**Date entered in CCYYMMDD sequence, leaving unknown portions blank (spaces);omit the date if the date is completely unknown**	
Full date known	MMDDYYCC (example: 02182007)	CCYYMMDD (example: 20070218)	bb
Month and year known	MM99CCYY (example: 02992007)	CCYYMMbb (example: 200702bb)	bb
Year only known	9999CCYY (example: 99992007)	CCYYbbbb (example: 2007bbbb)	bb
Unknown if patient had recurrence	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	10
No recurrence; never disease-free	00000000 (example: 00000000)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	11
Date is unknown, but patient had a recurrence	99999999 (example: 99999999)	bbbbbbbb (example: bbbbbbbb)	12

Recurrence Type - 1st

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	1880	2	06/05, 01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the type of first recurrence after a period of documented disease-free intermission or remission.

Rationale
This item is used to evaluate treatment efficacy and as a long-term prognostic factor.

Instructions for Coding
- Code the type of first recurrence. First recurrence may occur well after completion of the first course of treatment or after subsequent treatment.
- Reappearance of a tumor of the same histology in the same primary site during the time period defined by the SEER Multiple Primary and Histology Coding Rules does not constitute a recurrence.
- If the patient has never been disease-free (code 70), continue to track for disease-free status. This may occur after subsequent treatment has been completed.
- If the patient is disease-free (code 00), continue to track until a recurrence occurs. First recurrence may occur well after completion of the first course of treatment.
- Once a recurrence has been recorded (code 04-62 or 88), subsequent recurrences are NOT to be recorded.
- Codes 00 through 70 are hierarchical. Record the highest-numbered applicable response.
- If the tumor was originally diagnosed as in-situ, code recurrence to 06, 16, 17, 26, 27, 36, or 46 only. Do not use those codes for any other tumors. Codes 00, 88, or 99 may apply to any tumor.
- Codes 51-59 (organ or system of distant recurrence) apply only if all first occurrences were in a single category. There may be multiple metastases (or "seeding") within the distant location.
- Code lymphomas or leukemias that are in remission 00. If the patient relapses, then code recurrence status as 59.
- If there is more than one primary tumor and the physician is unable to decide which has recurred, code the recurrent disease for each tumor. If, at a later date, the recurrent primary is identified, revise the codes as appropriate.

Code	Definition
00	Patient became disease-free after treatment and has not had a recurrence.
04	In-situ recurrence of an invasive tumor.
06	In-situ recurrence of an in-situ tumor.
10	Local recurrence, and there is insufficient information available to code 13-17. Local recurrence includes recurrence confined to the remnant of the organ of origin, to the organ of origin, to the anastomosis, or to scar tissue where the organ previously existed.
13	Local recurrence of an invasive tumor.
14	Trocar recurrence of an invasive tumor. Includes recurrence in the trocar path or entrance site following prior surgery.
15	Both local and trocar recurrence of an invasive tumor (both 13 and 14).
16	Local recurrence of an in-situ tumor, NOS
17	Both local and trocar recurrence of an in-situ tumor.
20	Regional recurrence, and there is insufficient information available to code 21-27.
21	Recurrence of an invasive tumor in adjacent tissue or organ(s) only.
22	Recurrence of an invasive tumor in regional lymph nodes only.
25	Recurrence of an invasive tumor in adjacent tissue or organ(s) and in regional lymph nodes (both 21 and 22) at the same time.

Code	Definition
26	Regional recurrence of an in-situ tumor, NOS.
27	Recurrence of an in-situ tumor in adjacent tissue or organ(s) and in regional lymph nodes at the same time.
30	Both regional recurrence of an invasive tumor in adjacent tissue or organ(s) and/or regional lymph nodes (20-25) **and** local and/or trocar recurrence (10, 13, 14, or 15).
36	Both regional recurrence of an in-situ tumor in adjacent tissue or organ(s) and/or regional lymph nodes (26 or 27) **and** local and/or trocar recurrence (16 or 17).
40	Distant recurrence, to a site not listed in 46-62 or there is insufficient information available to code 46-62.
46	Distant recurrence of an in-situ tumor.
51	Distant recurrence of an invasive tumor in the peritoneum only. Peritoneum includes peritoneal surfaces of all structures within the abdominal cavity and/or positive ascitic fluid.
52	Distant recurrence of an invasive tumor in the lung only. Lung includes the visceral pleura.
53	Distant recurrence of an invasive tumor in the pleura only. Pleura includes the pleural surface of all structures within the thoracic cavity and/or positive pleural fluid.
54	Distant recurrence of an invasive tumor in the liver only.
55	Distant recurrence of an invasive tumor in bone only. This includes bones other than the primary site.
56	Distant recurrence of an invasive tumor in the CNS only. This includes the brain and spinal cord, but **not** the external eye.
57	Distant recurrence of an invasive tumor in the skin only. This includes skin other than the primary site.
58	Distant recurrence of an invasive tumor in lymph node only. Refer to the staging scheme for a description of lymph nodes that are distant for a particular site.
59	Distant systemic recurrence of an invasive tumor only. This includes lymphoma, leukemia, bone marrow metastasis, carcinomatosis, generalized disease.
60	Distant recurrence of an invasive tumor in a single distant site (51-58) **and** local, trocar and/or regional recurrence (10-15, 20-25, or 30).
62	Distant recurrence of an invasive tumor in multiple sites (recurrences that can be coded to more than one category 51-59).
70	Since diagnosis, patient has never been disease-free. This includes cases with distant metastasis at diagnosis, systemic disease, unknown primary, or minimal disease that is not treated.
88	Disease has recurred, but the type of recurrence is unknown.
99	It is unknown whether the disease has recurred or if the patient was ever disease-free.

Examples:

Code	Reason
52	Distant recurrence in the lung.
62	Recurrence in liver, lung and bone.

Recurrence Distant Site 1

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	1871	1		Required

Description
Identifies the distant site or sites in which the tumor has recurred.

Rationale
This item is used to evaluate treatment efficacy and as a long-term prognostic factor.

Instructions for Coding
- When carcinomatosis is present, all three fields – Recurrence Distant Site 1, 2, and 3 are coded 9.

Code	Definition
0	None or none known
1	Peritoneum
2	Lung
3	Pleura
4	Liver
5	Bone
6	Central nervous system
7	Skin
8	Lymph nodes (distant)
9	Other, generalized, NOS, carcinomatosis

Recurrence Distant Site 2

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	1872	1		Required

Description
Identifies the distant site or sites in which the tumor has recurred.

Rationale
This item is used to evaluate treatment efficacy and as a long-term prognostic factor.

Instructions for Coding
- When carcinomatosis is present, all three fields – Recurrence Distant Site 1, 2, and 3 are coded 9.

Code	Definition
0	None or none known
1	Peritoneum
2	Lung
3	Pleura
4	Liver
5	Bone
6	Central nervous system
7	Skin
8	Lymph nodes (distant)
9	Other, generalized, NOS, carcinomatosis

Recurrence Distant Site 3

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	1873	1		Required

Description
Identifies the distant site or sites in which the tumor has recurred.

Rationale
This item is used to evaluate treatment efficacy and as a long-term prognostic factor.

Instructions for Coding
- When carcinomatosis is present, all three fields – Recurrence Distant Site 1, 2, and 3 are coded 9.

Code	Definition
0	None or none known
1	Peritoneum
2	Lung
3	Pleura
4	Liver
5	Bone
6	Central nervous system
7	Skin
8	Lymph nodes (distant)
9	Other, generalized, NOS, carcinomatosis

Follow-Up Contact - Name

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2394	60	01/10	Required

Description
Identifies a contact person available for contact if the patient is unavailable. First and last name, in natural order, of a person, other than the patient or a physician, who can be contacted to obtain follow-up information for the patient.

Rationale
Sometimes hospital registries carry out follow-up by contact the patient and other contacts by a letter for a phone call to ascertain their vital status. When a patient's current address is unknown or the patient is for some reason not to be contacted (e.g., patient is a minor child), the most current name, address and phone number of another contact, such as a relative or neighbor are needed. This information may also be useful for conducting epidemiological or research studies.

Instructions for Coding
- Record the name of a contact person other than the patient's spouse or physician.

Follow-Up Contact - Relation

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
		25		Required

Description
Identifies the contact person's relationship to the patient.

Rationale
Sometimes hospital registries carry out follow-up by contact the patient and other contacts by a letter for a phone call to ascertain their vital status. When a patient's current address is unknown or the patient is for some reason not to be contacted (e.g., patient is a minor child), the most current name, address and phone number of another contact, such as a relative or neighbor are needed. This information may also be useful for conducting epidemiological or research studies.

Instructions for Coding
- Record the relationship of the contact person (e.g., son, daughter, friend, mother, father, neighbor).

Follow-Up Contact - No & Street

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2392	60	01/10	Required

Description
Identifies the street address of the contact person.

Rationale
Sometimes hospital registries carry out follow-up by contact the patient and other contacts by a letter for a phone call to ascertain their vital status. When a patient's current address is unknown or the patient is for some reason not to be contacted (e.g., patient is a minor child), the most current name, address and phone number of another contact, such as a relative or neighbor are needed. This information may also be useful for conducting epidemiological or research studies.

Instructions for Coding

- Record the number and street address or the rural mailing address of the contact person's usual residence.
- The address should be fully spelled out with standardized use of abbreviations and punctuation per U.S. Postal Service postal addressing standards. The USPS Postal Addressing Standards, Pub 28, November 2000 can be found on the Internet at *http://pe.usps.gov/cpim/ftp/pubs/pub28/pub28.pdf*.
- Abbreviations should be limited to those recognized by the Postal Service standard abbreviations. They include, but are not limited to:

  - AVE (avenue)
  - BLVD (boulevard)
  - CIR (circle)
  - CT (court)
  - DR (drive)
  - PLZ (plaza)
  - PARK (park)
  - PKWY (parkway)
  - RD (road)
  - SQ (square)
  - ST (street)
  - APT (apartment)
  - BLDG (building)
  - FL (floor)
  - STE (suite)
  - UNIT (unit)
  - RM (room)
  - DEPT (department)
  - N (north)
  - NE (northeast)
  - NW (northwest)
  - S (south)
  - SE (southeast)
  - SW (southwest)
  - E (east)
  - W (west)

  A complete list of recognized street abbreviations is provided in *Appendix C of USPS Pub 28*.
- Punctuation is normally limited to periods (i.e., 39.2 RD), slashes for fractional addresses (i.e., 101 ½ MAIN ST), and hyphens when a hyphen carries meaning (i.e., 289-01 MONTGOMERY AVE). Use of the pound sign (#) to designate address units should be avoided whenever possible. The preferred notation is as follows: 102 MAIN ST APT 101. If a pound sign is used, there must be a space between the pound sign and the secondary number (i.e., 425 FLOWER BLVD # 72).
- See "Residency Rules" on page 54 for further instructions.

Code	Definition
103 FIRST AVE SW APT 102	The use of capital letters is preferred by the USPS; use recognized USPS standardized abbreviations; do not use punctuation unless absolutely necessary to clarify an address; leave blanks between numbers and words.
UNKNOWN	If the contact person's address is unknown, enter UNKNOWN.

Follow-Up Contact - Supplemental

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2393	60	01/10	Optional

Description
This data item provides the ability to store additional address information such as the name of a place or facility, a nursing home, or the name of an apartment complex. It can be used to generate a follow-up inquiry, and must correspond to the other fields in the follow-up contact address. If the patient has multiple tumors, *Follow-Up Contact – Supplemental* should be the same.

Rationale
Sometimes hospital registries carry out follow-up by contact the patient and other contacts by a letter for a phone call to ascertain their vital status. When a patient's current address is unknown or the patient is for some reason not to be contacted (e.g., patient is a minor child), the most current name, address and phone number of another contact, such as a relative or neighbor are needed. This information may also be useful for conducting epidemiological or research studies.

Instructions for Coding
- Record the place or facility (i.e., a nursing home or name of an apartment complex) of the patient's usual residence when the tumor was diagnosed.
- See "Residency Rules" on page 54 for further instructions.

Code	Definition
VALLEYVIEW NURSING HOME	The use of capital letters is preferred by the USPS; use recognized USPS standardized abbreviations; do not use punctuation unless absolutely necessary to clarify an address; leave blanks between numbers and words.
(leave blank)	If this address space is not needed, then leave blank.

Follow-Up Contact - City

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	1842	50	01/10	Required

Description
Name of the city of the follow-up contact's current usual residence. If the patient has multiple tumors, the follow-up contact city of residence should be the same for all tumors.

Rationale
Sometimes hospital registries carry out follow-up by contact the patient and other contacts by a letter for a phone call to ascertain their vital status. When a patient's current address is unknown or the patient is for some reason not to be contacted (e.g., patient is a minor child), the most current name, address and phone number of another contact, such as a relative or neighbor are needed. This information may also be useful for conducting epidemiological or research studies.

Instructions for Coding
- Record the name of the city or town used in the contact person's mailing address.
- See "Residency Rules" in on page 54 for further instructions.

Code	Definition
CITY NAME	Do not use punctuation, special characters, or numbers. The use of capital letters is preferred by the USPS; it also guarantees consistent results in queries and reporting. Abbreviate where necessary.

Follow-Up Contact - State

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	1844	2		Required

Description
USPS abbreviation for the state (including U.S. territories, commonwealths, or possessions), or Canada Post abbreviation for the Canadian province/territory of the follow-up contact's current usual residence. If the patient has multiple tumors, the follow-up contact state should be the same for all tumors.

Rationale
Sometimes hospital registries carry out follow-up by contact the patient and other contacts by a letter for a phone call to ascertain their vital status. When a patient's current address is unknown or the patient is for some reason not to be contacted (e.g., patient is a minor child), the most current name, address and phone number of another contact, such as a relative or neighbor are needed. This information may also be useful for conducting epidemiological or research studies.

Instructions for Coding
- U.S. Postal Service abbreviation for the state, territory, commonwealth, U.S. possession, or Canadian province/territory in which the contact person resides.
- If the contact person is a foreign resident, then code either XX or YY depending on the circumstance.

Code	Definition
MT	If the state in which the contact person resides is Montana, then use the USPS code for the state of Montana.
XX	Resident of country other than the United States (including its territories, commonwealths, or possessions) or Canada, and country is known
YY	Resident of country other than the United States (including its territories, commonwealths, or possessions) or Canada, and country is unknown
ZZ	Resident of the United States, NOS (including its territories, commonwealths, or possessions); Canada, NOS; residence unknown

Common abbreviations (refer to the Zip Code directory for further listings)

State		State		State	
Alabama	AL	Massachusetts	MA	Tennessee	TN
Alaska	AK	Michigan	MI	Texas	TX
Arizona	AZ	Minnesota	MN	Utah	UT
Arkansas	AR	Mississippi	MS	Vermont	VT
California	CA	Missouri	MO	Virginia	VA
Colorado	CO	Montana	MT	Washington	WA
Connecticut	CT	Nebraska	NE	West Virginia	VW
Delaware	DE	Nevada	NV	Wisconsin	WI
District of Columbia	DC	New Hampshire	NH	Wyoming	WY
Florida	FL	New Jersey	NJ	United States	US
Georgia	GA	New Mexico	NM	American Samoa	AS
Hawaii	HI	New York	NY	Guam	GU
Idaho	ID	North Carolina	NC	Puerto Rico	PR
Illinois	IL	North Dakota	ND	Virgin Islands	VI
Indiana	IN	Ohio	OH	Palau	PW
Iowa	IA	Oklahoma	OK	Micronesia	FM
Kansas	KS	Oregon	OR	Marshall Islands	MH
Kentucky	KY	Pennsylvania	PA	Outlying Islands	UM
Louisiana	LA	Rhode Island	RI	APO/FPO Armed Services America	AA
Maine	ME	South Carolina	SC	APO/FPO Armed Services Europe	AE
Maryland	MD	South Dakota	SD	APO/FPO Armed Services Pacific	AP

The following are abbreviations for Canadian provinces and territories:

Province/Territory		Province/Territory	
Alberta	AB	Nunavut	NU
British Columbia	BC	Ontario	ON
Manitoba	MB	Prince Edward Island	PE
New Brunswick	NB	Quebec	QC
Newfoundland and Labrador	NF	Saskatchewan	SK
Northwest Territories	NT	Yukon	YT
Nova Scotia	NS	Canada	CD

Follow-Up Contact – Zip Code

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	1846	9		Required

Description
Postal code for the address of the follow-up contact's current usual residence. If the patient has multiple tumors, the follow-up contact postal codes should be the same for all tumors. For U.S. residents, use either the 5-digit or the extended 9-digit ZIP code. Blanks follow the 5-digit code. For Canadian residents, use the 6-character, alphanumeric postal code. Blanks follow the 6-character code. When available, enter postal code for other countries.

Rationale
Sometimes hospital registries carry out follow-up by contact the patient and other contacts by a letter for a phone call to ascertain their vital status. When a patient's current address is unknown or the patient is for some reason not to be contacted (e.g., patient is a minor child), the most current name, address and phone number of another contact, such as a relative or neighbor are needed. This information may also be useful for conducting epidemiological or research studies.

Instructions for Coding
- For U.S. residents, record the contact person's nine-digit extended postal code.
- For Canadian residents, record the six-character postal code.
- When available, record the postal code for other countries.
- See "Residency Rules" on page 54 for further instructions.

Code	Definition
(fill spaces)	The nine-digit U.S. extended postal code. Do not record hyphens.
59666_ _ _ _	When the nine-digit extended U.S. Zip Code is not available, record the five-digit postal code, left justified, followed by four blanks.
M6G2S8_ _ _	The six-character Canadian postal code left justified, followed by three blanks.
888888888	Resident of country other than the United States (including its possessions, etc.) or Canada **and** postal code unknown
999999999	Resident of the United States (including its possessions, etc.) or Canada, **and** postal code is unknown

Follow-Up Contact - Phone Num

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
		10		Required

Description
Identifies the phone number of the contact person.

Rationale
Sometimes hospital registries carry out follow-up by contact the patient and other contacts by a letter for a phone call to ascertain their vital status. When a patient's current address is unknown or the patient is for some reason not to be contacted (e.g., patient is a minor child), the most current name, address and phone number of another contact, such as a relative or neighbor are needed. This information may also be useful for conducting epidemiological or research studies.

Instructions for Coding
- Record the phone number of the contact person with the area code.

Follow-Up Contact - Phone Type

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
		10		Required

Description
Identifies who the phone number belongs to.

Rationale
This data item may be used to identify who the patient's phone belongs to.

Instructions for Coding
- Record who the phone number belongs to.

Type:

Type	Description
0	Parent
1	Patient
2	Son or daughter
3	Relative, NOS
9	Unknown whose phone number

Blank Page

RMCDS Flag Fields

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
		2		Optional

Description
RMCDS flags are used to flag field errors or inconsistencies that have been detected upon computer edit checks which have reviewed and determined to be correct.

Rationale
Edits in the RMCDS software check for code combinations that are possible, but quite rare. If the code combination generates an error message and review of the case indicates that the codes are correct for the case, then the override flag is used to skip the edit on future runs of the edits.

Instructions for Coding
- Leave blank if the RMCDS edit program does not generate an error message.
- Leave blank and correct the code for any item documented for the edit if, on review, it is discovered to be incorrect.

Code	Description	
10	Age error Date of birth error Age inconsistency error	Age > 109 error Marital status – age error Age – histology error
20	Reporting source – patient status error Patient status – death status error Invalid autopsy code	Invalid patient status Invalid tumor status
30	Bad site number error Site not in book Bad histology number error Histology not in book Site – sex error In-situ with invalid site Illegal in-situ – histology Possible site – age error	Laterality error Stage histology error Possible dup tumors Possible site – histology – age error AJCC stage with invalid histology AJCC stage with invalid site AJCC stage with invalid site – histology Ste histology inconsistency error
40	Site histology inconsistency	
50	Any inconsistency (I)	
60	Follow-up hospital error Class of case – autopsy only error Bad hospital number error Unknown hospital number error Accession # & CTR # different Bad hospital date Class of case error Dx 2 yr < admit	Class of case autopsy only, but not dead Class of case autopsy but no autopsy code Class of case should not have Rx Chart number but no hospital Hospital date but no hospital Class of case but no hospital Duplicate hospital entry
01	Will force the case to appear on the error list	
02	Any warning (W)	
03	Any error (E)	
04	Any ACoS error	
09	Any error warning or inconsistency (no check will be done on the record)	

Override Acsn/Class/Seq

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	1985	1	01/04, 01/09, 01/10	Optional

Description
Used with the EDITS software to override the edit *Accession Number, Class of Case, Seq Number (CoC)*.

Rationale
Some edits in the EDITS software package check for code combinations that are possible, but quite rare. If the code combination generates an error message and review of the case indicates that the codes are correct for the case, then the override flag is used to skip the edit on future runs of the EDITS package.

EDITS Use
The edit, *Accession Number, Class of Case, Seq Number (CoC)*, checks the following:

- If the case is the only case or the first of multiple cases diagnosed at the facility (*Sequence Number* = 00, 01, 60, or 61, and *Class of Case* = 00, 10, 12, 13, or 14), then the first 4 characters of the *Accession Number* must equal the year of the *Date of First Contact*.
- If the case is first diagnosed at autopsy (Class of Case = 38), and the case is the only case or the first of multiple cases for a patient (Sequence Number = 00, 01, 60, or 61), then the first 4 characters of the *Accession Number* must equal the year of the *Date of Last Contact or Death* AND must equal the year of the *Date of First Contact*.
- If the case is first diagnosed at autopsy (Class of Case = 38), and the case is the second or more case for a patient (*Sequence Number* is greater than 01 or greater than 61), then the year of the *Date of First Contact* must equal the year of *Date of Last Contact or Death*.

There are some exceptions to the above rules. *Override Acsn/Class/Seq* may be used to override the edit when the circumstances fit the following situation or one similar to it:

- The case may be the only or the first of multiple malignant cases for a patient (*Sequence Number* = 00 or 01), but there is an earlier benign case (with an earlier year of the *Date of First Contact*) for which the *Accession Number* applies.

Instructions for Coding

- Leave blank if the EDITS program does not generate an error message for the edit *Accession Number, Class of Case, Seq Number (CoC)*.
- Leave blank and correct any errors for the case if an item is discovered to be incorrect.
- Code 1 if a review of all items in the error or warning message confirms that all are correct.

Code	Definition
(leave blank)	Not reviewed; or reviewed and corrected.
1	Reviewed and confirmed as reported.

Override HospSeq/DxConf

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	1986	1	01/04, 01/09	Optional

Description
Used with the EDITS software to override the edit *Diagnostic Confirm, Seq Num – Hosp (CoC)*.

Rationale
Some edits in the EDITS software package check for code combinations that are possible, but quite rare. If the code combination generates an error message and review of the case indicates that the codes are correct for the case, then the override flag is used to skip the edit on future runs of the EDITS package.

EDITS Use
The edit, *Diagnostic Confirm, Seq Num - Hosp (CoC)*, checks the following:

- If any case is one of multiple primaries and is not microscopically confirmed or positive lab test/marker study, i.e., *Diagnostic Confirmation* > 5 and *Sequence Number* > 00 (more than one primary), review is required.
- If *Primary Site* specifies an ill-defined or unknown primary (C76.0-C76.8, C80.9), no further checking is done. If *Sequence Number* is in the range of 60 – 88, this edit is skipped.

It is important to verify that the non-microscopically-confirmed case is indeed a separate primary from any others that may have been reported. This edit forces review of multiple primary cancers when one of the primaries is coded to a site other than ill-defined or unknown and is not microscopically confirmed or confirmed by a positive lab test/marker study.

- If this edit failed and the suspect case is confirmed accurate as coded, and the number of primaries is correct, set the *Override HospSeq/DxConf* to 1. Do not set the override flag on the patient's other primary cancers.
- However, if it turns out that the non-microscopically-confirmed cancer is considered a manifestation of one of the patient's other cancers, delete the non-microscopically-confirmed case. Check the sequence numbers of remaining cases, correcting them if necessary. Also check for other data items on the remaining cases that may need to be changed as a result of the corrections, such as stage and treatment.

Instructions for Coding

- Leave blank if the EDITS program does not generate an error message for the edit *Diagnostic Confirm, Seq Num – Hosp (CoC)*.
- Leave blank and correct any errors for the case if an item is discovered to be incorrect.
- Code 1 if a review of all items in the error or warning message confirms that all are correct.

Code	Definition
(leave blank)	Not reviewed; or reviewed and corrected.
1	Reviewed and confirmed as reported.

Override COC - Site/Type

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	1987	1	01/04, 01/09	Optional

Description
Used with the EDITS software to override the edit *Primary Site, Morphology – Type ICDO2 (CoC)* and/or the edit *Primary Site, Morphology – Type ICDO3 (CoC)*.

Rationale
Some edits in the EDITS software package check for code combinations that are possible, but quite rare. If the code combination generates an error message and review of the case indicates that the codes are correct for the case, then the override flag is used to skip the edit on future runs of the EDITS package.

EDITS Use
There are multiple versions of the edits of the type, *Primary Site, Morphology – Type*, which check for "usual" combinations of site and ICD-O-2 or ICD-O-3 histology. The SEER version of the edit is more restrictive than the CoC edit, and thus uses a different override flag. The CoC version of the edit will accept Override CoC Site/Type or Override Site/Type as equivalent.

- The Site/Histology Validation List (available on the SEER Website) contains those histologies commonly found in the specified primary site. Histologies that occur only rarely or never are not included. These edits require review of all combinations *not* listed.
- Since basal and squamous cell carcinomas of non-genital skin sites are not reportable to SEER, these site/histology combinations do not appear on the SEER validation list. For the CoC version of the edit, if *Primary Site* is in the range C44.0-C44.9 (skin), and the ICD-O-3 histology is in the range 8000-8005 (neoplasms, malignant, NOS), 8010-8046 (epithelial carcinomas), 8050-8084 (papillary and squamous cell carcinomas), or 8090-8110 (basal cell carcinomas), no further editing is done. No override is necessary for these cases in the CoC version of the edit.

Review of these cases requires investigating whether the combination is biologically implausible or there are cancer registry coding conventions that would dictate different codes for the diagnosis. Review of these rare combinations often results in changes to the primary site and/or morphology, rather than a decision that the combination is correct.

Instructions for Coding

- Leave blank if the EDITS program does not generate an error message for the edits of the type *Primary Site, Morphology – Type*.
- Leave blank and correct any errors for the case if an item is discovered to be incorrect.
- Code 1 if a review of all items in the error or warning message confirms they are correct and coded in conformance with coding rules.

Code	Definition
(leave blank)	Not reviewed; or reviewed and corrected.
1	Reviewed and confirmed as reported.

Override HospSeq/Site

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	1988	1	01/04, 01/09	Optional

Description
Used with the EDITS software to override the edit *Seq Num – Hosp, Primary Site, Morph ICDO2 (CoC)* and/or the edit *Seq Num – Hosp, Primary Site, Morph ICDO3 (CoC)*.

Rationale
Some edits in the EDITS software package check for code combinations that are possible, but quite rare. If the code combination generates an error message and review of the case indicates that the codes are correct for the case, then the override flag is used to skip the edit on future runs of the EDITS package.

EDITS Use
Edits of the type, *Seq Num – Hosp, Primary Site, Morph*, differ in the use of ICD-O-2 or ICD-O-3 morphology. They force review of multiple primary cancers when one of the primaries is coded to a site-morphology combination that could indicate a metastatic site rather than a primary site. If *Sequence Number* indicates the person has had more than one primary, then any case with one of the following site-histology combinations requires review:

- C76.0-C76.8 (Ill-defined sites) or C80.9 (unknown primary) and ICD-O-2 or ICD-O-3 histology < 9590. (Look for evidence that the unknown or ill-defined primary is a secondary site from one of the patient's other cancers. For example, a clinical discharge diagnosis of "abdominal carcinomatosis" may be attributable to the patient's primary ovarian cystadenocarcinoma already in the registry, and should not be entered as a second primary.)
- C77.0-C77.9 (lymph nodes) and ICD-O-2 histology not in range 9590-9717 or ICD-O-3 histology not in the range 9590-9729; or C42.0-C42.4 and ICD-O-2 histology not in range 9590-9941 or ICD-O-3 histology not in the range 9590-9989. (That combination is most likely a metastatic lesion. Check whether the lesion could be a manifestation of one of the patient's other cancers.)
- Any site and ICD-O-2 histology in the range 9720-9723, 9740-9741 or ICD-O-3 histology in the range 9740-9758. (Verify that these diagnoses are coded correctly and are indeed separate primaries from the others.)

If it turns out that the suspect tumor is a manifestation of one of the patient's other cancers, delete the metastatic or secondary case, re-sequence remaining cases, and correct the coding on the original case as necessary.

Instructions for Coding

- Leave blank if the EDITS program does not generate an error message for the edit *Seq Num – Hosp, Primary Site, Morph*.
- Leave blank and correct any errors for the case if an item is discovered to be incorrect.
- Code 1 if a review of all items in the error or warning message confirms that all are correct.

Code	Definition
(leave blank)	Not reviewed; or reviewed and corrected.
1	Reviewed and confirmed as reported.

Override Site/TNM-Stage Group

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	1989	1	01/04, 01/09, 01/10	Optional

Description
Used with the EDITS software to override the edit *Primary Site, AJCC Stage Group* - for AJCC staging editions 6 and later.

Rationale
This override flag allows identification of pediatric cancers that were staged according to a system other than the **AJCC** staging manual (which is predominantly directed toward adult staging) if they are not also **AJCC**-staged. In that situation an otherwise-stageable case may be coded 88 (not applicable) for all **AJCC** items.

EDITS Use
Edits of this type, *Primary Site, AJCC Stage Group*, checks that the pathologic and clinical AJCC stage group codes are valid for the site and histology group according to the *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, Sixth Edition*, using the codes described for the items *Clinical Stage Group* and *Pathologic Stage Group*. Combinations of site and histology not represented in any AJCC schema must be coded 88. Unknown codes must be coded 99. Blanks are not permitted.

Since pediatric cases whose sites and histologies have an AJCC scheme may be coded according to a pediatric scheme instead, *Override Site/TNM-Stage Group* is used to indicate pediatric cases not coded according to the AJCC manual. Pediatric stage groups should *not* be recorded in the *Clinical Stage Group* or *Pathologic Stage Group* items. When neither clinical nor pathologic AJCC staging is used for pediatric cases, code all AJCC items 88. When any AJCC components of either is used to stage a pediatric case, follow the instructions for coding AJCC items and leave *Override Site/TNM-Stage Group* blank.

Instructions for Coding
- Leave blank if the EDITS program does not generate an error message for the edit *Primary Site, AJCC Stage Group*.
- Leave blank and correct any errors for the case if an item is discovered to be incorrect.
- Code 1 if the case is confirmed to be a pediatric case that was coded using a pediatric coding system.

Code	Definition
(leave blank)	Not reviewed; or reviewed and corrected.
1	Reviewed and confirmed as reported.

Override Age/Site/Morph

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	1990	1	01/04, 01/09, 01/10	Optional

Description
Used with the EDITS software to override the edits *Age, Primary Site, Morphology*; *Age, Primary Site, Morphology ICDO3-Adult*; *and Age, Primary Site, Morph ICDO3-Pediatric*.

Rationale
Some edits in the EDITS software package check for code combinations that are possible, but quite rare. If the code combination generates an error message and review of the case indicates that the codes are correct for the case, then the override flag is used to skip the edit on future runs of the EDITS package.

EDITS Use
Edits of the type, *Age, Primary Site, Morphology*; *Age, Primary Site, Morphology ICDO3-Adult*; *and Age, Primary Site, Morph ICDO3-Pediatric* require review if a site-morphology combination occurs in an age group for which it is extremely rare or if the cancer was diagnosed in utero.

If the edit generates an error or warning message, check that the primary site and histologic type are coded correctly and that the age, date of birth, and date of diagnosis are correct.

Instructions for Coding
- Leave blank if the EDITS program does not generate an error message for the *Age, Primary Site, Morphology*; *Age, Primary Site, Morphology ICDO3-Adult*; *and Age, Primary Site, Morph ICDO3-Pediatric* edits.
- Leave blank and correct any errors for the case if an item is discovered to be incorrect.
- Code 1 for an unusual occurrence of a particular age/site/histology combination for a given age has been confirmed by review to be correct.
- Code 2 if the case was diagnosed in utero.
- Code 3 if both conditions apply.

Code	Definition
(leave blank)	Not reviewed; or reviewed and corrected.
1	Reviewed; age, site and morphology combination confirmed as reported.
2	Reviewed; diagnosis in utero.
3	Reviewed; both conditions apply.

Override Surg/DxConf

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2020	1	01/04, 01/09	Optional

Description
Used with the EDITS software to override the edits *Surgery of Primary Site, Diag Conf (SEER IF76)*; *Surgery, Diag Conf (SEER IF46); and/or Surg Site 98-02, Diag Conf (SEER 106)*.

Rationale
Some edits in the EDITS software package check for code combinations that are possible, but quite rare. If the code combination generates an error message and review of the case indicates that the codes are correct for the case, then the override flag is used to skip the edit on future runs of the EDITS package.

EDITS Use
Edits of the type, *Surgery of Primary Site, Diag Conf*, check that cases with a primary site surgical procedure coded 20-90 are histologically confirmed.

If the patient had a surgical procedure, most likely there was a microscopic examination of the cancer.

- Verify the surgery and diagnostic confirmation codes, and correct any errors.
- Sometimes there are valid reasons why no microscopic confirmation is achieved with the surgery, for example, the tissue removed may be inadequate for evaluation.

Instructions for Coding

- Leave blank if the EDITS program does not generate an error message for the edits of the type, *Surgery of Primary Site, Diag Conf*.
- Leave blank and correct any errors for the case if an item is discovered to be incorrect.
- Code 1 if a review of all items in the error or warning message confirms that all are correct.

Code	Definition
(leave blank)	Not reviewed; or reviewed and corrected.
1	Reviewed and confirmed as reported.

Override Site/Type

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2030	1	01/04, 01/09, 01/10	Optional

Description
Used with the EDITS software to override the edits of the type *Primary Site, Morphology-Type and Primary Site, Morphology-Type, Behavior ICDO3.*

Rationale
Some edits in the EDITS software package check for code combinations that are possible, but quite rare. If the code combination generates an error message and review of the case indicates that the codes are correct for the case, then the override flag is used to skip the edit on future runs of the EDITS package.

EDITS Use
There are multiple versions of the edits of the type, *Primary Site, Morphology – Type*, which check for "usual" combinations of site and ICD-O-2 or ICD-O-3 histology. The SEER version of the edit is more restrictive than the CoC edit, and thus uses a different override flag. The CoC version of the edit will accept *Override CoC Site/Type* or *Override Site/Type* as equivalent.

- The Site/Histology Validation List (available on the SEER Website) contains those histologies commonly found in the specified primary site. Histologies that occur only rarely or never are not included. These edits require review of all combinations *not* listed.
- Since basal and squamous cell carcinomas of non-genital skin sites are not reportable to SEER, these site/histology combinations do not appear on the SEER validation list. For the CoC version of the edit, if *Primary Site* is in the range C44.0-C44.9 (skin), and the ICD-O-3 histology is in the range 8000-8005 (neoplasms, malignant, NOS), 8010-8046 (epithelial carcinomas), 8050-8084 (papillary and squamous cell carcinomas), or 8090-8110 (basal cell carcinomas), no further editing is done. No override is necessary for these cases in the CoC version of the edit.

Review of these cases requires investigating whether the combination is biologically implausible or there are cancer registry coding conventions that would dictate different codes for the diagnosis. Review of these rare combinations often results in changes to the primary site and/or morphology, rather than a decision that the combination is correct.

Instructions for Coding

- Leave blank if the EDITS program does not generate an error message for the edit *Primary Site, Morphology-Type*.
- Leave blank and correct any errors for the case if an item is discovered to be incorrect.
- Code 1 if a review of all items in the error or warning message confirms that all are correct.

Code	Definition
(leave blank)	Not reviewed; or reviewed and corrected.
1	Reviewed and confirmed as reported.

Override Histology

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2040	1	01/04, 01/09	Optional

Description
Used with the EDITS software to override any of the five edits: *Diagnostic Confirmation, Behavior ICDO2 (SEERIF31)*; *Diagnostic Confirmation, Behavior ICDO3 (SEER IF31)*; *Morphology – Type/Behavior ICDO2 (SEER MORPH)*; *Morphology – Type/Behavior ICDO3 (SEER MORPH)*; and/or *Morph (1973-91) ICD-O-1 (SEER MORPH*).

Rationale
Some edits in the EDITS software package check for code combinations that are possible, but quite rare. If the code combination generates an error message and review of the case indicates that the codes are correct for the case, then the override flag is used to skip the edit on future runs of the EDITS package.

EDITS Use

I. Edits of the type, *Diagnostic Confirmation, Behavior Code*, differ in the use of ICD-O-2 or ICD-O-3 and check that, for in-situ cases (Behavior=2), *Diagnostic Confirmation* specifies microscopic confirmation (1, 2, or 4). The distinction between in-situ and invasive is very important to a registry, since prognosis is so different. Since the determination that a neoplasm has not invaded surrounding tissue, i.e., is in-situ, is made microscopically, cases coded in-situ in behavior should have a microscopic confirmation code. **Note**: Very rarely will a physician designate a case noninvasive or in-situ without microscopic evidence.

If an edit of the type, *Diagnostic Confirmation, Behavior Code*, gives an error message or warning, check that *Behavior Code* and *Diagnostic Confirmation* have been coded correctly. Check carefully for any cytologic or histologic evidence that may have been missed in coding.

II. Edits of the type, *Morphology – Type/Behavior*, perform the following overrideable check:

- Codes listed in ICD-O-2 or ICD-O-3 with behavior codes of only 0 or 1 are considered valid, since use of the behavior matrix of ICD-O-2 and ICD-O-3 allows for the elevation of the behavior of such histologies when the tumor is in-situ or malignant. This edit forces review of these rare cases to verify that they are indeed in-situ or malignant.

If a *Morphology-ype/Behavior* edit produces an error or warning message and the case is one in which the 4-digit morphology code is one that appears in ICD-O-2 or ICD-O-3 only with behavior codes of 0 of 1, verify the coding of morphology and that the behavior should be coded malignant or in-situ. The registrar may need to consult a pathologist or medical advisor.

Exceptions to the above: If year of *Date of Diagnosis* > 2000, then a behavior code of 1 is valid for the following ICD-O-2 histologies and no override flag is needed: 8931, 9393, 9538, 9950, 9960-9962, 9980-9984, 9989. Similarly, the following ICD-O-3 histologies are valid with a behavior code of 1: 8442, 8451, 8462, 8472, and 8473.

Note: The *Morphology – Type/Behavior* edits are complex and perform several additional types of checks. No other aspects of their checks are subject to override.

Instructions for Coding

- Leave blank if the EDITS program does not generate an error message for the *Diagnostic Confirmation, Morph or Morphology – Type/Behavior* edits.
- Leave blank and correct any errors for the case if an item id discovered to be incorrect.
- Code 1, 2, or 3 as indicated if a review of all items in the error or warning message confirms that all are correct.

Code	Definition
(leave blank)	Not reviewed; or reviewed and corrected.
1	Reviewed and confirmed as reported for edits of the type, Morphology-Type/Behavior.
2	Reviewed and confirmed as reported for edits of the type Diagnostic Confirmation, Behavior Code.
3	Reviewed and conditions 1 and 2 above both apply

Override Leuk/Lymphoma

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2070	1	01/04, 01/09, 01/10	Optional

Description
Used with the EDITS software to override the edits *Diagnostic Confirmation, Histology.*

Rationale
Some edits in the EDITS software package check for code combinations that are possible, but quite rare. If the code combination generates an error message and review of the case indicates that the codes are correct for the case, then the override flag is used to skip the edit on future runs of the EDITS package.

EDITS Use
Edits of the type, *Diagnostic Confirmation, Histology*, differ in use of ICD-O-2 or ICD-O-3 and check the following:

- Since lymphoma and leukemia are almost exclusively microscopic diagnoses, this edit forces review of any cases of lymphoma that have diagnostic confirmation of direct visualization or clinical, and any leukemia with a diagnostic confirmation of direct visualization.
- For lymphomas, *Diagnostic Confirmation* cannot be 6 (direct visualization) or 8 (clinical).
- For leukemia and other hematopoietic neoplasms, *Diagnostic Confirmation* cannot be 6 (direct visualization).

If an edit of the type, *Diagnostic Confirmation, Histology*, produces an error or warning message, check that the *Histology* and *Diagnostic Confirmation* are correctly coded. Remember that positive hematologic findings and bone marrow specimens are included as histologic confirmation (code 1 in *Diagnostic Confirmation*) for leukemia.

Instructions for Coding

- Leave blank if the EDITS program does not generate an error message for the *Diagnostic Confirmation, Histology* edits.
- Leave blank and correct any errors for the case if an item is discovered to be incorrect.
- Code 1 if a review of all items in the error or warning message confirms that all are correct.

Code	Definition
(leave blank)	Not reviewed; or reviewed and corrected.
1	Reviewed and confirmed as reported.

Override Site/Behavior

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2071	1	01/04, 01/09	Optional

Description
Used with the EDITS software to override the edits *Primary Site, Behavior Code ICDO2 (SEER IF39)*; and/or *Primary Site, Behavior Code ICDO3 (SEER IF39)*.

Rationale
Some edits in the EDITS software package check for code combinations that are possible, but quite rare. If the code combination generates an error message and review of the case indicates that the codes are correct for the case, then the override flag is used to skip the edit on future runs of the EDITS package.

EDITS Use
Edits of the type, *Primary Site, Behavior Code,* require review of the following primary sites with a behavior of in-situ (ICD-O-2 or ICD-O-3 behavior = 2):

C26.9	Gastrointestinal tract, NOS	C68.9	Urinary system, NOS
C39.9	Ill-defined sites within respiratory system	C72.9	Nervous system, NOS
C55.9	Uterus, NOS	C75.9	Endocrine gland, NOS
C57.9	Female genital tract, NOS	C76.0-C76.8	Ill-defined sites
C63.9	Male genital organs, NOS	C80.9	Unknown primary site

Since the designation of in-situ is very specific and almost always requires microscopic confirmation, ordinarily specific information should also be available regarding the primary site. Conversely, if inadequate information is available to determine a specific primary site, it is unlikely that information about a cancer being in-situ is reliable.

- If a specific in-situ diagnosis is provided, try to obtain a more specific primary site. A primary site within an organ system can sometimes be identified based on the diagnostic procedure or treatment given or on the histologic type. If a more specific site cannot be determined, it is usually preferable to code a behavior code of 3. In the exceedingly rare situation in which it is certain that the behavior is in-situ and no more specific-site code is applicable, set *Override Site/Behavior* to 1.

Instructions for Coding
- Leave blank if the EDITS program does not generate an error message for the *Primary Site, Behavior* edits.
- Leave blank and correct any errors for the case if an item is discovered to be incorrect.
- Code 1 if a review of all items in the error or warning message confirms that all are correct.

Code	Definition
(leave blank)	Not reviewed; or reviewed and corrected.
1	Reviewed and confirmed as reported.

Override Site/Lat/Morph

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2074	1	01/04, 01/09	Optional

Description
Used with the EDITS software to override the edits *Laterality, Primary Site, Morph ICDO2 (SEER IF42)*; and/or *Laterality, Primary Site, Morph ICDO3 (SEER IF42)*.

Rationale
Some edits in the EDITS software package check for code combinations that are possible, but quite rare. If the code combination generates an error message and review of the case indicates that the codes are correct for the case, then the override flag is used to skip the edit on future runs of the EDITS package.

EDITS Use
Edits of the type, *Laterality, Primary Site, Morph*, differ in whether they produce a warning or an error message and in use of ICD-O-2 or ICD-O-3 morphology do the following:

- If the *Primary Site* is a paired organ and *Behavior Code* is in-situ (2), then *Laterality* must be 1, 2, or 3.
- If diagnosis year is less than 1988 and *Histology* is greater than or equal to 9590, then no further editing is performed. If diagnosis year is greater than 1987 and *Histology* equals 9140, 9700, 9701, 9590-9980, then no further editing is performed.

The intent of this edit is to force a review of in-situ cases for which *Laterality* is coded 4 (bilateral) or 9 (unknown laterality) as to origin.

- In rare instances when the tumor is truly midline (9) or the rate combination is otherwise confirmed correct, enter code 1 for *Override Site/Lat/Morph*.

Instructions for Coding

- Leave blank if the EDITS program does not generate an error message for the *Laterality, Primary Site, Morphology* edits.
- Leave blank and correct any errors for the case if an item is discovered to be incorrect.
- Code 1 if a review of all items in the error or warning message confirms that all are correct.

Code	Definition
(leave blank)	Not reviewed; or reviewed and corrected.
1	Reviewed and confirmed as reported.

Override SeqNo/DxConf

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2000	1	01/09	Optional

Description
Used with CoC Metafile and the EDITS software to override the edit Sequence Number and Diagnostic Confirmation.

Rationale
Some edits in the EDITS software package check for code combinations that are possible, but quite rare. If the code combination generates an error message and review of the case indicates that the codes are correct for the case, then the override flag is used to skip the edit on future runs of the EDITS package.

Instructions for Coding
- Leave blank if the EDITS program does not generate an error message for the edit *Sequence Number and Diagnostic Confirmation*.
- Leave blank and correct the code for any item documented for the edit *Sequence Number and Diagnostic Confirmation* if, on review, it is discovered to be incorrect.
- Code 1 if a review of all items documented for the edit *Sequence Number and Diagnostic Confirmation* confirms that all are correct.

Code	Definition
(leave blank)	Not reviewed; or reviewed and corrected.
1	Reviewed and confirmed as reported.

Override Site/Lat/SeqNo

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2010	1	01/09	Optional

Description
Used with CoC Metafile and the EDITS software to override the edit Site, Laterality, and Sequence Number.

Rationale
Some edits in the EDITS software package check for code combinations that are possible, but quite rare. If the code combination generates an error message and review of the case indicates that the codes are correct for the case, then the override flag is used to skip the edit on future runs of the EDITS package.

Instructions for Coding

- Leave blank if the EDITS program does not generate an error message for the edit *Site, Laterality, and Sequence Number*.
- Leave blank and correct the code for any item documented for the edit *Site, Laterality, and Sequence Number* if, on review, it is discovered to be incorrect.
- Code 1 if a review of all items documented for the edit Site, Laterality, and Sequence Number confirms that all are correct.

Code	Definition
(leave blank)	Not reviewed; or reviewed and corrected.
1	Reviewed and confirmed as reported.

Override Report Source

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2050	1	01/09	Optional

Description
Used with CoC Metafile and the EDITS software to override the edit Report Source.

Rationale
Some edits in the EDITS software package check for code combinations that are possible, but quite rare. If the code combination generates an error message and review of the case indicates that the codes are correct for the case, then the override flag is used to skip the edit on future runs of the EDITS package.

Instructions for Coding
- Leave blank if the EDITS program does not generate an error message for the edit Report Source.
- Leave blank and correct the code for any item documented for the edit *Report Source* if, on review, it is discovered to be incorrect.
- Code 1 if a review of all items documented for the edit Report Source confirms that all are correct.

Code	Definition
(leave blank)	Not reviewed; or reviewed and corrected.
1	Reviewed and confirmed as reported.

Override Ill-Defined Site

Alternate Name	NAACCR Item #	Length	Revision Date	Required Status
	2060	1	01/09	Optional

Description
Used with CoC Metafile and the EDITS software to override the edit Ill-defined Site.

Rationale
Some edits in the EDITS software package check for code combinations that are possible, but quite rare. If the code combination generates an error message and review of the case indicates that the codes are correct for the case, then the override flag is used to skip the edit on future runs of the EDITS package.

Instructions for Coding
- Leave blank if the EDITS program does not generate an error message for the edit Ill-defined Site.
- Leave blank and correct the code for any item documented for the edit Ill-defined Site if, on review, it is discovered to be incorrect.
- Code 1 if a review of all items documented for the edit Ill-defined Site confirms that all are correct.

Code	Definition
(leave blank)	Not reviewed; or reviewed and corrected.
1	Reviewed and confirmed as reported.

Blank Page

Blank Page

Blank Page

Blank Page

Blank Page

Blank Page

Blank Page

Blank Page

Blank Page

Appendix A

Subsequent Primaries Hematologic Malignancies

Blank Page

CRITERIA FOR DETERMINING MULTIPLE PRIMARIES OF LYMPHATIC AND HEMATOPOIETIC DISEASES

Use the table in this Appendix only for hematologic malignancies diagnosed prior to January 1, 2010. Beginning with diagnoses on January 1, 2010, use Hematopoietic and Lymphoid Neoplasm Case Reportability and Coding Manual and the Hematopoietic and Lymphoid Neoplasm Database (Hematopoietic DB).

The following rules are to be used as a guide for identifying lymphomas and leukemias with second primaries. Note that the rules refer to general headings followed by the ICD-O morphology codes included in each heading. For specific terms such as "histiocytic," "diffuse," "nodular" and "granulocytic," check the ICD-O Alphabetic Index to determine into which general category a specific term falls. Complete instructions for determining subsequent primaries in lymphatic and hematopoietic diseases are available in both the SEER Program Code Manual 2004 and the FORDS.

***Note*:** *Different histologic terms are sometimes used to describe progressive stages or phases of the same disease process.*

Lymphoma Codes: Lymphomas present some unique coding difficulties because of the complexity of the classification and the variety of terminologies in use. The following rules will be helpful in choosing the correct ICD-O-3 code for the histologic type:

1. The current preferred terminology is the World Health Organization Classification of Tumors of the Hematopoietic and Lymphoid Tissues.
2. If this terminology is not what is stated in the diagnosis, the following guidelines from older classifications apply:
   a. When the terms "diffuse" and "nodular" (follicular) are both mentioned in a diagnosis, ignore the term "diffuse" in coding, because most nodular tumors progress to diffuse or have some diffuse aspects.
   b. If neither diffuse nor nodular (follicular) is mentioned, presume the lymphoma is diffuse.
   c. The terms lymphoma, malignant lymphoma, and non-Hodgkin's lymphoma may be used interchangeably.
   d. Avoid using non-specific or unclassified lymphoma terms if there are specific diagnoses that can be coded.
   e. Some terms have equivalent meanings, for example:
      i. Centroblastic = non-cleaved
      ii. Centrocytic = cleaved
      iii. Follicular = nodular
      iv. Histiocytic = large (cell)
      v. Lymphocytic = small (cell)
      vi. Mixed lymphocytic and histiocytic = mixed small and large (cell)
   f. When the term "mixed cellularity" is used with non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, it means mixed lymphocytic-histiocytic lymphoma.

DEFINITIONS OF SINGLE AND SUBSEQUENT PRIMARIES FOR HEMATOLOGIC MALIGNANCIES BASED ON ICD-O-3 REPORTABLE MALIGNANCIES, EFFECTIVE WITH DIAGNOSES 01/01/2001 – 12/31/2009

Cancer registrars are often faced with multiple pathology reports in patients with hematologic malignancies, and the diagnoses reported may require different morphology codes. This is due in part to the fact that more intensive diagnostic study may yield a more specific diagnosis, and in part due to the natural histories of hematopoietic diseases, which may progress from one disease into another.

The following chart was prepared by Seer Program, NCI, and provided to aid the registrar in determining single versus subsequent primary.

The following guidelines are employed:

1. "Lymphoma" is a general term for hematopoietic solid malignancies of the lymphoid series. "Leukemia" is a general term for liquid malignancies of either the lymphoid or the myeloid series. While it is recognized that some malignancies occur predominantly (or even exclusively) in liquid or solid form, because so many malignancies can potentially arise as either leukemias or lymphomas (or both), all hematopoietic malignancies are assumed to have this potential.
2. Malignancies of the lymphoid series are considered to be different from those of the myeloid series. Therefore, a lymphoid malignancy arising after diagnosis of a myeloid malignancy (or Myelodysplastic or myeloproliferative disorder) would be considered a subsequent primary; however, a myeloid malignancy diagnosed after a previous myeloid malignancy would not count as a subsequent primary. Histiocytic malignancies are considered different from both lymphoid and myeloid malignancies.
3. Hodgkin lymphoma is considered to be different from non-Hodgkin lymphoma (NHL). Among the NHLs, B-cell malignancies are considered different from T-cell/NK cell malignancies. Therefore, a B-cell malignancy arising later in the course of a patient previously diagnosed with a T-cell malignancy would be considered a subsequent primary; however, a T-cell malignancy diagnosed later in the same patient would not be considered a subsequent primary.
4. The sequence of diagnoses affects whether a diagnosis represents a subsequent primary. In some cases, the order of occurrence of the two diagnoses being compared is a factor in the decision whether the second diagnosis is a new primary.

To use the table, assign the ICD-O-3 code to the first diagnosis and find the row containing that code. Assign the ICD-O-3 code for the second diagnosis and find the column containing that code. In the cell at the intersection of the first diagnosis row and the second diagnosis column, a **"**S" symbol indicates that the two diagnoses are most likely the **same** disease process (prepare/update a single abstract), and a **"**D" indicates that they are most likely **different** disease processes (prepare more than one abstract).

Note: *If one of the two diagnoses is an NOS (not otherwise specified) term and the other is more specific and determined to be the same disease process, code the more specific diagnosis regardless of the sequence. For example, if a diagnosis of non-Hodgkin lymphoma, NOS is followed by a diagnosis of follicular lymphoma, assign the morphology code for the follicular lymphoma*.

Note: *The table "Single versus Subsequent Primaries of Lymphatic and Hematopoietic Diseases" and the "Complete Diagnostic Terms for Table (based on ICD-O-3)" display only the ICD-O-3 primary (boldfaced) term associated with the code. Refer to the International Classification of Diseases, Third Edition (ICD-O-3) for a complete list of related terms and synonyms.*

Source: SEER Program, NCI

Complete Diagnostic Terms for Table (Based on ICD-O-3):

1.	9590	Malignant lymphoma, NOS
2.	9591	Malignant lymphoma, non-Hodgkin, NOS
3.	9596	Composite Hodgkin and non-Hodgkin lymphoma
4.	9650-9667	Hodgkin lymphoma (all subtypes)
5.	9670-9671	Malignant lymphoma, small B lymphocytic
6.	9673	Mantle cell lymphoma
7.	9675-9684	Malignant lymphoma, diffuse large B-cell
8.	9687	Burkitt lymphoma
9.	9689, 9699	Marginal zone B-cell lymphoma
10.	9690-9698	Follicular lymphoma
11.	9700-9701	Mycosis fungoides and Sezary syndrome
12.	9702-9719	T/NK-cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma
13.	9727	Precursor cell lymphoblastic lymphoma, NOS
14.	9728	Precursor B-cell lymphoblastic lymphoma
15.	9729	Precursor T-cell lymphoblastic lymphoma
16.	9731-9734	Plasma cell tumors
17.	9740-9742	Mast cell tumors
18.	9750-9756	Histiocytosis/Langerhans cell histiocytosis
19.	9757-9758	Dendritic cell sarcoma
20.	9760	Immunoproliferative disease, NOS
21.	9761	Waldenstrom macroglobulinemia
22.	9762	Heavy chain disease, NOS
23.	9764	Immunoproliferative small intestinal disease
24.	9800-9801	Leukemia, NOS/Acute leukemia, NOS
25.	9805	Acute biphenotypic leukemia
26.	9820	Lymphoid leukemia, NOS
27.	9823	B-cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia/small lymphocytic lymphoma
28.	9826	Burkitt cell leukemia
29.	9827	Adult T-cell leukemia/lymphoma (HTLV-1 positive)
30.	9832	Prolymphocytic leukemia, NOS
31.	9833	Prolymphocytic leukemia, B-cell type
32.	9834	Prolymphocytic leukemia, T-cell type
33.	9835	Precursor cell lymphoblastic leukemia, NOS
34.	9836	Precursor B-cell lymphoblastic leukemia
35.	9837	Precursor T-cell lymphoblastic leukemia
36.	9840-9910	Myeloid leukemias
37.	9920	Therapy related acute myelogenous leukemia
38.	9930	Myeloid sarcoma
39.	9931	Acute panmyelosis with myelofibrosis
40.	9940	Hairy cell leukemia
41.	9945	Chronic myelomonocytic leukemia, NOS
42.	9946	Juvenile myelomonocytic leukemia
43.	9948	Aggressive NK-cell leukemia
44.	9950	Polycythemia vera
45.	9960	Chronic myeloproliferative disease, NOS
46.	9961	Myelosclerosis with myeloid metaplasia
47.	9962	Essential thrombocythemia
48.	9963	Chronic neutrophilic leukemia
49.	9964	Hypereosinophilic syndrome
50.	9980-9986	Refractory anemias
51.	9987	Therapy related myelodysplastic syndrome, NOS
52.	9989	Myelodysplastic syndrome, NOS

Blank Page

SINGLE VERSUS SUBSEQUENT PRIMARIES OF LYMPHATIC AND HEMATOPOIETIC DISEASES

February 28, 2001
PAGE 1

SECOND DX ACROSS

FIRST DX DOWN

		1. 9590 Malig lymphoma, NOS	2. 9591 NHL, NOS	3. 9596 Compos HD/NHL	4. 9650-9667 Hodgkin lymphoma	5. 9670-9671 ML, small B lymph	6. 9673 Mantle cell lymph	7. 9675-9684 ML, diff large B-cell	8. 9687 Burkitt lymphoma	9. 9689,9699 Marg zn, B-cl lym	10. 9690-9698 Follicular lymphoma
1. Malignant lymphoma, NOS	9590	**S**	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	S
2. NHL, NOS	9591	S	**S**	D	D	S	S	S	S	S	S
3. Composite HD/NHL	9596	S	S	**S**	S	S	S	S	S	S	S
4. Hodgkin lymphoma	9650-9667	S	D	D	**S**	D	D	D	D	D	D
5. ML, small B lymphocytic	9670-9671	S	S	D	D	**S**	D	S	D	D	D
6. Mantle cell lymphoma	9673	S	S	D	D	D	**S**	D	D	D	D
7. ML, diffuse, large B-cell	9675-9684	S	S	D	D	S	D	**S**	S	D	S
8. Burkitt lymphoma	9687	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	**S**	D	D
9. Marg zone, B-cell lymphoma	9689, 9699	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	**S**	D
10. Follicular lymphoma	9690-9698	S	S	D	D	D	D	S	D	D	**S**
11. Mycos fung, Sezary disease	9700-9701	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
12. T/NK-cell NHL	9702-9719	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
13. Precurs lym'blas lymph NOS	9727	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
14. Precurs lym'blas lymph B-cell	9728	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
15. Precurs lym'blas lymph T-cell	9729	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
16. Plasma cell tumors	9731-9734	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
17. Mast cell tumors	9740-9742	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
18. Histiocytos/Langerhans cell	9750-9756	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
19. Dendritic cell sarcoma	9757-9758	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
20. Immunoprolif disease, NOS	9760	S	S	D	D	S	D	S	D	D	D
21. Waldenstrom macroglob	9761	S	S	D	D	S	D	S	D	D	D
22. Heavy chain disease, NOS	9762	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
23. Immun sm intest disease	9764	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
24. Leuk/Acute leuk, NOS	9800-9801	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	S	D	D
25. Acute biphenotypic leukem	9805	S	S	D	D	S	S	S	S	S	S
26. Lymphocytic leukem, NOS	9820	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	S	D	S
27. BCLL/SLL	9823	S	S	D	D	S	D	S	D	D	D
28. Burkitt cell leukemia	9826	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	S	D	D
29. Adult T-cell leuk/lymph	9827	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
30. Prolym'cyt leuk, NOS	9832	D	D	D	D	S	D	D	D	D	D
31. Prolym'cyt leuk, B-cell	9833	D	D	D	D	S	D	D	D	D	D
32. Prolym'cyt leuk, T-cell	9834	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
33. Precurs lym'cyt leuk, NOS	9835	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
34. Precurs B-cell leuk	9836	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
35. Precurs T-cell leuk	9837	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
36. Myeloid leukemias	9840-9910	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
37. Therapy related AML	9920	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
38. Myeloid sarcoma	9930	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
39. Acute panmyelosis	9931	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
40. Hairy cell leukemia	9940	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
41. Chron myelomonocyt leuk	9945	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
42. Juvenile myelomonocy leuk	9946	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
43. NK-cell leukemia	9948	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
44. Polycythemia vera	9950	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
45. Chron myeloprolif disease	9960	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
46. Myelosclerosis	9961	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
47. Essen thrombocythem	9962	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
48. Chron neutrophilic leukemia	9963	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
49. Hypereosinophilic syndrome	9964	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
50. Refractory anemias	9980-9986	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
51. Therapy related MDS	9987	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
52. Myelodysplastic syndr, NOS	9989	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D

Codes: S--one primary only; D--presumably a subsequent primary

SEER Program, NCI. E-mail: seerweb@ims.nci.nih.gov

SINGLE VERSUS SUBSEQUENT PRIMARIES OF LYMPHATIC AND HEMATOPOIETIC DISEASES

February 28, 2001
PAGE 2

SECOND DX ACROSS

FIRST DX DOWN

		11. 9700-9701 MF, Sezary disease	12. 9702-9719 T/NK-cell lymphoma	13. 9727 Precurs lym'blas lymph NOS	14. 9728 Precurs lym'blas lymph B-cl	15. 9729 Precurs lym'blas lymph T-cl	16. 9731-9734 Plasma cell tumors	17. 9740-9742 Mast cell tumors	18. 9750-9756 Histiocytos; LCH	19. 9757-9758 Dendritic cell sarc	20. 9760 Immunoprolif dis
1. Malignant lymphoma, NOS	9590	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	S
2. NHL, NOS	9591	S	S	S	S	S	D	D	D	S	S
3. Composite HD/NHL	9596	S	S	S	S	S	D	D	D	D	S
4. Hodgkin lymphoma	9650-9667	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
5. ML, small B lymphocytic	9670-9671	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
6. Mantle cell lymphoma	9673	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
7. ML, diffuse, large B-cell	9675-9684	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	S
8. Burkitt lymphoma	9687	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
9. Marg zone, B-cell lymphoma	9689, 9699	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
10. Follicular lymphoma	9690-9698	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
11. Mycos fung, Sezary disease	9700-9701	**S**	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
12. T/NK-cell NHL	9702-9719	D	**S**	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	S
13. Precurs lym'blas lymph NOS	9727	D	D	**S**	S	S	D	D	D	D	D
14. Precurs lym'blas lymph B-cell	9728	D	D	S	**S**	D	D	D	D	D	D
15. Precurs lym'blas lymph T-cell	9729	D	D	S	D	**S**	D	D	D	D	D
16. Plasma cell tumors	9731-9734	D	D	D	D	D	**S**	D	D	D	D
17. Mast cell tumors	9740-9742	D	D	D	D	D	D	**S**	D	D	D
18. Histiocytos/Langerhans cell	9750-9756	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	**S**	D	D
19. Dendritic cell sarcoma	9757-9758	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	**S**	D
20. Immunoprolif disease, NOS	9760	D	D	D	D	D	S	D	D	D	**S**
21. Waldenstrom macroglob	9761	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	S
22. Heavy chain disease, NOS	9762	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	S
23. Immun sm intest disease	9764	D	D	D	D	D	S	D	D	D	S
24. Leuk/Acute leuk, NOS	9800-9801	D	S	S	S	S	D	D	D	D	D
25. Acute biphenotypic leukem	9805	S	S	S	S	S	D	D	D	D	D
26. Lymphocytic leukem, NOS	9820	S	S	S	S	S	D	D	D	D	S
27. BCLL/SLL	9823	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	S
28. Burkitt cell leukemia	9826	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
29. Adult T-cell leuk/lymph	9827	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
30. Prolym'cyt leuk, NOS	9832	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
31. Prolym'cyt leuk, B-cell	9833	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
32. Prolym'cyt leuk, T-cell	9834	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
33. Precurs lym'cyt leuk, NOS	9835	D	D	S	S	S	D	D	D	D	D
34. Precurs B-cell leuk	9836	D	D	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	D
35. Precurs T-cell leuk	9837	D	D	S	D	S	D	D	D	D	D
36. Myeloid leukemias	9840-9910	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
37. Therapy related AML	9920	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
38. Myeloid sarcoma	9930	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
39. Acute panmyelosis	9931	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
40. Hairy cell leukemia	9940	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
41. Chron myelomonocyt leuk	9945	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
42. Juvenile myelomonocy leuk	9946	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
43. NK-cell leukemia	9948	D	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
44. Polycythemia vera	9950	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
45. Chron myeloprolif disease	9960	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
46. Myelosclerosis	9961	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
47. Essen thrombocythem	9962	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
48. Chron neutrophilic leukemia	9963	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
49. Hypereosinophilic syndrome	9964	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
50. Refractory anemias	9980-9986	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
51. Therapy related MDS	9987	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
52. Myelodysplastic syndr, NOS	9989	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D

Codes: S--one primary only; D--presumably a subsequent primary

SEER Program, NCI. E-mail: seerweb@ims.nci.nih.gov

SINGLE VERSUS SUBSEQUENT PRIMARIES OF LYMPHATIC AND HEMATOPOIETIC DISEASES

February 28, 2001
PAGE 3

SECOND DX ACROSS

FIRST DX DOWN

		21. 9761 Waldenstrom	22. 9762 Heavy chain dis	23. 9764 Imm sm intest dis	24. 9800-9801 Leuk/Acu leuk NOS	25. 9805 Acute biphenotypic leuk	26. 9820 Lym'cyt leuk, NOS	27. 9823 BCLL/SLL	28. 9826 Burkitt leukemia	29. 9827 Adult T-cell leuk/lym	30. 9832 Prolym leuk, NOS
1. Malignant lymphoma, NOS	9590	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	S
2. NHL, NOS	9591	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	D
3. Composite HD/NHL	9596	S	S	S	S	D	S	S	S	S	D
4. Hodgkin lymphoma	9650-9667	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
5. ML, small B lymphocytic	9670-9671	S	D	D	D	S	S	S	D	D	S
6. Mantle cell lymphoma	9673	D	D	D	D	S	D	D	D	D	D
7. ML, diffuse, large B-cell	9675-9684	S	S	S	D	S	S	S	D	D	S
8. Burkitt lymphoma	9687	D	D	D	S	S	S	D	S	D	D
9. Marg zone, B-cell lymphoma	9689, 9699	D	D	D	D	S	D	D	D	D	D
10. Follicular lymphoma	9690-9698	D	D	D	D	S	D	D	D	D	D
11. Mycos fung, Sezary disease	9700-9701	D	D	D	D	S	S	D	D	D	D
12. T/NK-cell NHL	9702-9719	D	D	D	D	S	S	D	D	D	D
13. Precurs lym'blas lymph NOS	9727	D	D	D	S	S	S	D	D	D	D
14. Precurs lym'blas lymph B-cell	9728	D	D	D	S	S	S	D	D	D	D
15. Precurs lym'blas lymph T-cell	9729	D	D	D	S	S	S	D	D	D	D
16. Plasma cell tumors	9731-9734	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
17. Mast cell tumors	9740-9742	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
18. Histiocytos/Langerhans cell	9750-9756	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
19. Dendritic cell sarcoma	9757-9758	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
20. Immunoprolif disease, NOS	9760	S	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
21. Waldenstrom macroglob	9761	**S**	D	D	D	D	S	S	D	D	D
22. Heavy chain disease, NOS	9762	D	**S**	S	D	D	S	S	D	D	D
23. Immun sm intest disease	9764	D	S	**S**	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
24. Leuk/Acute leuk, NOS	9800-9801	D	D	D	**S**	S	S	D	S	S	D
25. Acute biphenotypic leukem	9805	D	D	D	S	**S**	S	S	S	S	S
26. Lymphocytic leukem, NOS	9820	S	S	D	S	S	**S**	S	S	S	S
27. BCLL/SLL	9823	D	D	D	D	S	S	**S**	D	D	S
28. Burkitt cell leukemia	9826	D	D	D	S	S	S	D	**S**	D	D
29. Adult T-cell leuk/lymph	9827	D	D	D	D	S	S	D	D	**S**	D
30. Prolym'cyt leuk, NOS	9832	D	D	D	D	S	S	S	D	D	**S**
31. Prolym'cyt leuk, B-cell	9833	D	D	D	D	S	S	S	D	D	S
32. Prolym'cyt leuk, T-cell	9834	D	D	D	D	S	S	D	D	S	S
33. Precurs lym'cyt leuk, NOS	9835	D	D	D	S	S	S	D	D	D	D
34. Precurs B-cell leuk	9836	D	D	D	S	S	S	D	D	D	D
35. Precurs T-cell leuk	9837	D	D	D	S	S	S	D	D	D	D
36. Myeloid leukemias	9840-9910	D	D	D	S	S	D	D	D	D	D
37. Therapy related AML	9920	D	D	D	S	S	D	D	D	D	D
38. Myeloid sarcoma	9930	D	D	D	S	S	D	D	D	D	D
39. Acute panmyelosis	9931	D	D	D	S	S	D	D	D	D	D
40. Hairy cell leukemia	9940	D	D	D	S	S	D	D	D	D	D
41. Chron myelomonocyt leuk	9945	D	D	D	S	S	D	D	D	D	D
42. Juvenile myelomonocy leuk	9946	D	D	D	S	S	D	D	D	D	D
43. NK-cell leukemia	9948	D	D	D	S	S	S	D	D	D	D
44. Polycythemia vera	9950	D	D	D	S	D	D	D	D	D	D
45. Chron myeloprolif disease	9960	D	D	D	S	S	D	D	D	D	D
46. Myelosclerosis	9961	D	D	D	S	S	D	D	D	D	D
47. Essen thrombocythem	9962	D	D	D	S	D	D	D	D	D	D
48. Chron neutrophilic leukemia	9963	D	D	D	S	D	D	D	D	D	D
49. Hypereosinophilic syndrome	9964	D	D	D	S	D	D	D	D	D	D
50. Refractory anemias	9980-9986	D	D	D	S	S	D	D	D	D	D
51. Therapy related MDS	9987	D	D	D	S	S	D	D	D	D	D
52. Myelodysplastic syndr, NOS	9989	D	D	D	S	S	D	D	D	D	D

Codes: S--one primary only; D--presumably a subsequent primary

SEER Program, NCI. E-mail: seerweb@ims.nci.nih.gov

SINGLE VERSUS SUBSEQUENT PRIMARIES OF LYMPHATIC AND HEMATOPOIETIC DISEASES

February 28, 2001
PAGE 4

SECOND DX ACROSS
FIRST DX DOWN

		31. 9833 Prolym leuk, B-cell	32. 9834 Prolym leuk, T-cell	33. 9835 Precurs leuk, NOS	34. 9836 Precurs leuk, B-cell	35. 9837 Precurs leuk, T-cell	36. 9840-9910 Myeloid leukemias	37. 9920 Therapy rel AML	38. 9930 Myeloid sarcoma	39. 9931 Acute panmyelosis	40. 9940 Hairy cell leukemia	41. 9945 Chr myelomono leu
1. Malignant lymphoma, NOS	9590	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	S
2. NHL, NOS	9591	D	D	S	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	D
3. Composite HD/NHL	9596	D	D	S	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	D
4. Hodgkin lymphoma	9650-9667	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
5. ML, small B lymphocytic	9670-9671	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
6. Mantle cell lymphoma	9673	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
7. ML, diffuse, large B-cell	9675-9684	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
8. Burkitt lymphoma	9687	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
9. Marg zone, B-cell lymphoma	9689, 9699	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
10. Follicular lymphoma	9690-9698	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
11. Mycos fung, Sezary disease	9700-9701	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
12. T/NK-cell NHL	9702-9719	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
13. Precurs lym'blas lymph NOS	9727	D	D	S	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	D
14. Precurs lym'blas lymph B-cell	9728	D	D	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
15. Precurs lym'blas lymph T-cell	9729	D	D	S	D	S	D	D	D	D	D	D
16. Plasma cell tumors	9731-9734	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
17. Mast cell tumors	9740-9742	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
18. Histiocytos/Langerhans cell	9750-9756	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
19. Dendritic cell sarcoma	9757-9758	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
20. Immunoprolif disease, NOS	9760	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
21. Waldenstrom macroglob	9761	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
22. Heavy chain disease, NOS	9762	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
23. Immun sm intest disease	9764	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
24. Leuk/Acute leuk, NOS	9800-9801	D	D	S	S	S	S	S	S	D	D	S
25. Acute biphenotypic leukem	9805	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	S
26. Lymphocytic leukem, NOS	9820	S	S	S	S	S	D	D	D	D	S	D
27. BCLL/SLL	9823	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
28. Burkitt cell leukemia	9826	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
29. Adult T-cell leuk/lymph	9827	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
30. Prolym'cyt leuk, NOS	9832	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
31. Prolym'cyt leuk, B-cell	9833	**S**	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
32. Prolym'cyt leuk, T-cell	9834	D	**S**	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
33. Precurs lym'cyt leuk, NOS	9835	D	D	**S**	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	D
34. Precurs B-cell leuk	9836	D	D	S	**S**	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
35. Precurs T-cell leuk	9837	D	D	S	D	**S**	D	D	D	D	D	D
36. Myeloid leukemias	9840-9910	D	D	D	D	D	**S**	S	S	S	D	S
37. Therapy related AML	9920	D	D	D	D	D	S	**S**	S	S	D	S
38. Myeloid sarcoma	9930	D	D	D	D	D	S	S	**S**	S	D	S
39. Acute panmyelosis	9931	D	D	D	D	D	S	S	S	**S**	D	S
40. Hairy cell leukemia	9940	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	**S**	D
41. Chron myelomonocyt leuk	9945	D	D	D	D	D	S	S	S	S	D	**S**
42. Juvenile myelomonocy leuk	9946	D	D	D	D	D	S	S	S	S	D	S
43. NK-cell leukemia	9948	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
44. Polycythemia vera	9950	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
45. Chron myeloprolif disease	9960	D	D	D	D	D	S	S	S	S	D	S
46. Myelosclerosis	9961	D	D	D	D	D	S	S	S	S	D	S
47. Essen thrombocythem	9962	D	D	D	D	D	S	S	S	S	D	S
48. Chron neutrophilic leukemia	9963	D	D	D	D	D	S	S	S	S	D	S
49. Hypereosinophilic syndrome	9964	D	D	D	D	D	S	S	S	S	D	S
50. Refractory anemias	9980-9986	D	D	D	D	D	S	S	S	S	D	S
51. Therapy related MDS	9987	D	D	D	D	D	S	S	S	S	D	S
52. Myelodysplastic syndr, NOS	9989	D	D	D	D	D	S	S	S	S	D	S

Codes: S--one primary only; D--presumably a subsequent primary

SEER Program, NCI. E-mail: seerweb@ims.nci.nih.gov

SINGLE VERSUS SUBSEQUENT PRIMARIES OF LYMPHATIC AND HEMATOPOIETIC DISEASES

February 28, 2001
PAGE 5

SECOND DX ACROSS

FIRST DX DOWN

		42. 9946 Juv myelomono leu	43. 9948 NK-cell leukemia	44. 9950 Polycythemia vera	45. 9960 Chr myeloprolif dis	46. 9961 Myelosclerosis	47. 9962 Ess thrombocythem	48. 9963 Chr neutrophil leu	49. 9964 Hypereosin syndr	50. 9980-9986 Refract anemias	51. 9987 Therapy rel MDS	52. 9989 Myelodys syn NOS
1. Malignant lymphoma, NOS	9590	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
2. NHL, NOS	9591	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
3. Composite HD/NHL	9596	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
4. Hodgkin lymphoma	9650-9667	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
5. ML, small B lymphocytic	9670-9671	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
6. Mantle cell lymphoma	9673	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
7. ML, diffuse, large B-cell	9675-9684	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
8. Burkitt lymphoma	9687	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
9. Marg zone, B-cell lymphoma	9689, 9699	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
10. Follicular lymphoma	9690-9698	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
11. Mycos fung, Sezary disease	9700-9701	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
12. T/NK-cell NHL	9702-9719	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
13. Precurs lym'blas lymph NOS	9727	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
14. Precurs lym'blas lymph B-cell	9728	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
15. Precurs lym'blas lymph T-cell	9729	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
16. Plasma cell tumors	9731-9734	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
17. Mast cell tumors	9740-9742	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
18. Histiocytos/Langerhans cell	9750-9756	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
19. Dendritic cell sarcoma	9757-9758	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
20. Immunoprolif disease, NOS	9760	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
21. Waldenstrom macroglob	9761	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
22. Heavy chain disease, NOS	9762	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
23. Immun sm intest disease	9764	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
24. Leuk/Acute leuk, NOS	9800-9801	S	D	D	S	S	D	S	S	D	S	S
25. Acute biphenotypic leukem	9805	S	S	D	S	S	D	D	D	S	S	S
26. Lymphocytic leukem, NOS	9820	D	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
27. BCLL/SLL	9823	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
28. Burkitt cell leukemia	9826	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
29. Adult T-cell leuk/lymph	9827	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
30. Prolym'cyt leuk, NOS	9832	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
31. Prolym'cyt leuk, B-cell	9833	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
32. Prolym'cyt leuk, T-cell	9834	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
33. Precurs lym'cyt leuk, NOS	9835	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
34. Precurs B-cell leuk	9836	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
35. Precurs T-cell leuk	9837	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
36. Myeloid leukemias	9840-9910	S	D	D	S	S	S	S	S	D	S	S
37. Therapy related AML	9920	S	D	D	D	S	D	D	D	D	S	S
38. Myeloid sarcoma	9930	S	D	D	S	S	S	S	D	D	S	S
39. Acute panmyelosis	9931	S	D	D	D	S	D	D	D	D	S	S
40. Hairy cell leukemia	9940	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
41. Chron myelomonocyt leuk	9945	S	D	D	S	S	D	S	D	D	S	S
42. Juvenile myelomonocy leuk	9946	**S**	D	D	D	S	D	D	D	D	S	S
43. NK-cell leukemia	9948	D	**S**	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
44. Polycythemia vera	9950	D	D	**S**	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	D
45. Chron myeloprolif disease	9960	D	D	D	**S**	S	S	S	D	D	D	D
46. Myelosclerosis	9961	S	D	D	S	**S**	S	S	D	D	S	S
47. Essen thrombocythem	9962	D	D	D	S	S	**S**	S	D	D	D	D
48. Chron neutrophilic leukemia	9963	D	D	D	S	S	S	**S**	D	D	D	D
49. Hypereosinophilic syndrome	9964	S	D	D	S	S	D	D	**S**	D	D	D
50. Refractory anemias	9980-9986	S	D	D	S	S	D	D	D	**S**	S	S
51. Therapy related MDS	9987	S	D	D	S	S	D	D	D	S	**S**	S
52. Myelodysplastic syndr, NOS	9989	S	D	D	S	S	D	D	D	S	S	**S**

Codes: S--one primary only; D--presumably a subsequent primary

SEER Program, NCI. E-mail: seerweb@ims.nci.nih.gov

Blank Page

Blank Page

Blank Page

Appendix B

Surgery Codes

Blank Page

ORAL CAVITY
Lip C00.0-C00.9, Base of Tongue C01.9, Other Parts of Tongue C02.0-C02.9, Gum C03.0-C03.9, Floor of Mouth C04.0-C04.9, Palate C05.0-C05.9, Other Parts of Mouth C06.0-C06.9
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992)

Codes

00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS
- 11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
- 13 Cryosurgery
- 14 Laser

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10-14.

20 Local tumor excision, NOS
- 26 Polypectomy
- 27 Excisional biopsy

Any combination of 20 or 26-27 WITH
- 21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 22 Electrocautery
- 23 Cryosurgery
- 24 Laser ablation

25 Laser excision

30 Wide excision, NOS

Code 30 includes:
Hemiglossectomy
Partial glossectomy

40 Radical excision of tumor, NOS
- 41 Radical excision of tumor ONLY
- 42 Combination of 41 WITH resection in continuity with mandible (marginal, segmental, hemi-, or total resection)
- 43 Combination of 41 WITH resection in continuity with maxilla (partial, subtotal, or total resection)

Codes 40-43 include:
Total glossectomy
Radical glossectomy

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20-43.

90 Surgery, NOS

99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

PAROTID AND OTHER UNSPECIFIED GLANDS
Parotid Gland C07.9, Major Salivary Glands C08.0-C08.9
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992)

Codes

00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS
- 11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
- 13 Cryosurgery
- 14 Laser

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10-14.

20 Local tumor excision, NOS
- 26 Polypectomy
- 27 Excisional biopsy
- Any combination of 20 or 26-27 WITH
  - 21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
  - 22 Electrocautery
  - 23 Cryosurgery
  - 24 Laser ablation
- 25 Laser excision

30 Less than total parotidectomy, NOS; less than total removal of major salivary gland, NOS
- 31 Facial nerve spared
- 32 Facial nerve sacrificed
- 33 Superficial lobe ONLY
  - 34 Facial nerve spared
  - 35 Facial nerve sacrificed
- 36 Deep lobe (Total)
  - 37 Facial nerve spared
  - 38 Facial nerve sacrificed

40 Total parotidectomy, NOS; total removal of major salivary gland, NOS
- 41 Facial nerve spared
- 42 Facial nerve sacrificed

50 Radical parotidectomy, NOS; radical removal of major salivary gland, NOS
- 51 WITHOUT removal of temporal bone
- 52 WITH removal of temporal bone
- 53 WITH removal of overlying skin (requires graft or flap coverage)

80 Parotidectomy, NOS

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20-80.

90 Surgery, NOS

99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

PHARYNX
Tonsil C09.0-C09.9, Oropharynx C10.0-C10.9, Nasopharynx C11.0-C11.9 Pyriform Sinus C12.9, Hypopharynx C13.0-C13.9, Pharynx C14.0
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992)

Codes

00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS
- 11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
- 13 Cryosurgery
- 14 Laser
- 15 Stripping

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10-15.

20 Local tumor excision, NOS
- 26 Polypectomy
- 27 Excisional biopsy
- Any combination of 20 or 26-27 WITH
  - 21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
  - 22 Electrocautery
  - 23 Cryosurgery
  - 24 Laser ablation
- 25 Laser excision
- 28 Stripping

30 Pharyngectomy, NOS
- 31 Limited/partial pharyngectomy; tonsillectomy, bilateral tonsillectomy
- 32 Total pharyngectomy

40 Pharyngectomy WITH laryngectomy OR removal of contiguous bone tissue, NOS (does NOT include total mandibular resection)
- 41 WITH Laryngectomy (laryngopharyngectomy)
- 42 WITH bone
- 43 With both 41 and 42

50 Radical pharyngectomy (includes total mandibular resection), NOS
- 51 WITHOUTH laryngectomy
- 52 WITH laryngectomy

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20-52.

90 Surgery, NOS

99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

ESOPHAGUS
C15.0-C15.9
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992)

Codes

00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS
- 11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
- 13 Cryosurgery
- 14 Laser

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10-14.

20 Local tumor excision, NOS
- 26 Polypectomy
- 27 Excisional biopsy
- Any combination of 20 or 26-27 WITH
  - 21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
  - 22 Electrocautery
  - 23 Cryosurgery
  - 24 Laser ablation
- 25 Laser excision

30 Partial esophagectomy

40 Total esophagectomy, NOS

50 Esophagectomy, NOS WITH laryngectomy and/or gastrectomy, NOS
- 51 WITH laryngectomy
- 52 WITH gastrectomy, NOS
- 53 Partial gastrectomy
- 54 Total gastrectomy
- 55 Combination of 51 WITH any of 52-54

80 Esophagectomy, NOS

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20-80.

90 Surgery, NOS

99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

STOMACH
C16.0-C16.9
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992)

Codes

00 None, no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS
- 11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
- 13 Cryosurgery
- 14 Laser

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10-14.

20 Local tumor excision, NOS
- 26 Polypectomy
- 27 Excisional biopsy

Any combination of 20 or 26-27 WITH
- 21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 22 Electrocautery
- 23 Cryosurgery
- 24 Laser ablation

25 Laser excision

30 Gastrectomy, NOS (partial, subtotal, hemi-)
- 31 Antrectomy, lower (distal-less than 40% of stomach)***
- 32 Lower (distal) gastrectomy (partial, subtotal, hemi-)
- 33 Upper (proximal) gastrectomy (partial, subtotal, hemi-)

Code 30 includes:
Partial gastrectomy, including a sleeve resection of the stomach
Billroth I: anastomosis to duodenum (duodenostomy)
Billroth II: anastomosis to jejunum (jejunostomy)

40 Near-total or total gastrectomy, NOS
- 41 Near-total gastrectomy
- 42 Total gastrectomy

Any total gastrectomy may follow a previous partial resection of the stomach.

50 Gastrectomy, NOS WITH removal of a portion of esophagus
- 51 Partial or subtotal gastrectomy
- 52 Near total or total gastrectomy

Codes 50-52 are used for gastrectomy resection when only portions of esophagus are included in procedure.

60 Gastrectomy with a resection in continuity with the resection of other organs, NOS***
- 61 Partial or subtotal gastrectomy, in continuity with the resection of other organs***
- 62 Near total or total gastrectomy, in continuity with the resection of other organs***
- 63 Radical gastrectomy, in continuity with the resection of other organs***

Codes 60-63 are used for gastrectomy resections with organs other than esophagus. Portions of esophagus may or may not be included in the resection.

80 Gastrectomy, NOS

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20-80.

90 Surgery, NOS

99 Unknown if surgery performed, death certificate ONLY

*** Incidental splenectomy NOT included

COLON
C18.0-C18.9
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992)

Code removal/surgical ablation of single or multiple liver metastases under the data item *Surgical Procedure/Other Site*.

Codes

00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS
- 11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
- 13 Cryosurgery
- 14 Laser

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10-14.

20 Local tumor excision, NOS
- 27 Excisional biopsy
- 26 Polypectomy, NOS
- 28 Polypectomy-endoscopic
- 29 Polypectomy-surgical excision
- Any combination of 20 or 26-29 WITH
  - 21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
  - 22 Electrocautery
  - 23 Cryosurgery
  - 24 Laser ablation
- 25 Laser excision

30 Partial colectomy, segmental resection
- 32 Plus resection of contiguous organ; example: small bowel, bladder

40 Subtotal colectomy/hemicolectomy (total right or left colon and a portion of transverse colon)
- 41 Plus resection of contiguous organ; example: small bowel, bladder

50 Total colectomy (removal of colon from cecum to the rectosigmoid junction; may include a portion of the rectum)
- 51 Plus resection of contiguous organ; example: small bowel, bladder

60 Total proctocolectomy (removal of colon from cecum to the rectosigmoid junction, including the entire rectum)
- 61 Plus resection of contiguous organ; example: small bowel, bladder

70 Colectomy or coloproctotectomy with resection of contiguous organ(s), NOS (where there is not enough information to code 32, 41, 51, or 61)

Code 70 includes: Any colectomy (partial, hemicolectomy, or total) WITH a resection of any other organs in continuity with the primary site. Other organs may be partially or totally removed. Other organs may include, but are not limited to, oophorectomy, partial proctectomy, rectal mucosectomy, or pelvic exenteration.

80 Colectomy, NOS

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20-80.

90 Surgery, NOS

99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

RECTOSIGMOID
C19.9
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992)

Code removal/surgical ablation of single or multiple liver metastases under the date item *Surgical Procedure/Other Site*.

Codes

00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS
- 11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
- 13 Cryosurgery
- 14 Laser ablation

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10-14.

20 Local tumor excision, NOS
- 26 Polypectomy
- 27 Excisional biopsy
- Combination of 20 or 26-27 WITH
  - 21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
  - 22 Electrocautery
  - 23 Cryosurgery
  - 24 Laser ablation
- 25 Laser excision

30 Wedge or segmental resection; partial proctosigmoidectomy, NOS
- 31 Plus resection of contiguous organs; example: small bowel, bladder

Procedures coded 30 include, but are not limited to:
- Anterior resection
- Hartmann operation
- Low anterior resection (LAR)
- Partial colectomy, NOS
- Rectosigmoidectomy, NOS
- Sigmoidectomy

40 Pull through WITH sphincter preservation (colo-anal anastomosis)

50 Total proctectomy

51 Total colectomy

55 Total colectomy WITH ileostomy, NOS
- 56 Ileorectal reconstruction
- 57 Total colectomy WITH other pouch; example: Koch pouch

60 Total proctocolectomy, NOS
65 Total proctocolectomy WITH ileostomy, NOS
66 Total proctocolectomy WITH ileostomy and pouch
Removal of the colon from cecum to the rectosigmoid or a portion of the rectum.

70 Colectomy or proctocolectomy resection in continuity with other organs; pelvic exenteration

80 Colectomy, NOS; Proctectomy, NOS

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20-80.

90 Surgery, NOS

99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

RECTUM
C20.9
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992)

Code removal/surgical ablation of single or multiple liver metastases under the date item *Surgical Procedure/Other Site*.

Codes

00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS
- 11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
- 13 Cryosurgery
- 14 Laser

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10-14.

20 Local tumor excision, NOS
- 27 Excisional biopsy
- 26 Polypectomy
- Any combination of 20 or 26-27 WITH
  - 21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
  - 22 Electrocautery
  - 23 Cryosurgery
  - 24 Laser ablation
- 25 Laser excision
- 28 Curette and fulguration

30 Wedge or segmental resection; partial proctectomy, NOS

Procedures coded 30 include, but are not limited to:
- Anterior resection
- Hartmann operation
- Low anterior resection (LAR)
- Transsacral rectosigmoidectomy
- Total mesorectal excision (TME)

40 Pull through WITH sphincter preservation (coloanal anastomosis)

50 Total proctectomy

Procedure coded 50 includes, but is not limited to:
- Abdominoperineal resection (Miles Procedure)

60 Total proctocolectomy, NOS

70 Proctectomy or proctocolectomy with resection in continuity with other organs; pelvic exenteration

80 Proctectomy, NOS

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20-80.

90 Surgery, NOS

99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

ANUS
C21.0-C21.8
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992)

Codes

00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS
- 11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
- 13 Cryosurgery
- 14 Laser
- 15 Thermal Ablation

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10-15.

20 Local tumor excision, NOS
- 26 Polypectomy
- 27 Excisional biopsy
- Any combination of 20 or 26-27 WITH
  - 21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
  - 22 Electrocautery
  - 23 Cryosurgery
  - 24 Laser ablation
- 25 Laser excision

60 Abdominal perineal resection, NOS (APR; Miles procedure)
- 61 APR and sentinel node excision
- 62 APR and unilateral inguinal lymph node dissection
- 63 APR and bilateral inguinal lymph node dissection

The lymph node dissection should also be coded under *Scope of Regional Lymph Node Surgery*.

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20-63.

90 Surgery, NOS

99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

LIVER AND INTRAHEPATIC BILE DUCTS
C22.0-C22.1
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992)

Codes

00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS
- 11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
- 13 Cryosurgery
- 14 Laser
- 15 Alcohol (Percutaneous Ethanol Injection-PEI)
- 16 Heat-Radio-frequency ablation (RFA)
- 17 Other (ultrasound, acetic acid)

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10-17.

20 Wedge or segmental resection, NOS
- 21 Wedge resection
- 22 Segmental resection, NOS
  - 23 One
  - 24 Two
  - 25 Three
  - 26 Segmental resection AND local tumor destruction

30 Lobectomy, NOS
- 36 Right lobectomy
- 37 Left lobectomy
- 38 Lobectomy AND local tumor destruction

50 Extended lobectomy, NOS (extended: resection of a single lobe plus a segment of another lobe)
- 51 Right lobectomy
- 52 Left lobectomy
- 59 Extended lobectomy AND local tumor destruction

60 Hepatectomy, NOS
- 61 Total hepatectomy and transplant

65 Excision of a bile duct (for an intra-hepatic bile duct primary only)
- 66 Excision of a bile duct PLUS partial hepatectomy

75 Bile duct and hepatectomy WITH transplant

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20-75.

90 Surgery, NOS

99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

PANCREAS
C25.0-C25.9
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992)

Codes

00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

25 Local excision of tumor, NOS

30 Partial pancreatectomy, NOS; example: distal

35 Local or partial pancreatectomy and duodenectomy
- 36 WITHOUT distal/partial gastrectomy
- 37 WITH partial gastrectomy (Whipple)

40 Total pancreatectomy

60 Total pancreatectomy and subtotal gastrectomy or duodenectomy

70 Extended pancreatoduodenectomy

80 Pancreatectomy, NOS

90 Surgery, NOS

99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

LARYNX
C32.0-C32.9
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992)

Codes

00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS
- 11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
- 13 Cryosurgery
- 14 Laser
- 15 Stripping

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10-15.

20 Local tumor excision, NOS
- 26 Polypectomy
- 27 Excisional biopsy
- Any combination of 20 or 26-27 WITH
  - 21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
  - 22 Electrocautery
  - 23 Cryosurgery
  - 24 Laser ablation
- 25 Laser excision
- 28 Stripping

30 Partial excision of the primary site, NOS; subtotal/partial laryngectomy NOS; hemilaryngectomy NOS
- 31 Vertical laryngectomy
- 32 Anterior commissure laryngectomy
- 33 Supraglottic laryngectomy

40 Total or radical laryngectomy, NOS
- 41 Total laryngectomy ONLY
- 42 Radical laryngectomy ONLY

50 Pharyngolaryngectomy

80 Laryngectomy, NOS

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20-80.

90 Surgery, NOS

99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

LUNG
C34.0-C34.9
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992)

Codes

00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

19 Local tumor destruction or excision, NOS
Unknown whether a specimen was sent to pathology for surgical events coded 19 (principally for cases diagnosed prior to January 1, 2003).

15 Local tumor destruction or excision, NOS
12 Laser ablation or cryosurgery
13 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 12-13 and 15.

20 Excision or resection of less than one lobe, NOS
23 Excision, NOS
24 Laser excision
25 Bronchial sleeve resection ONLY
21 Wedge resection
22 Segmental resection, including lingulectomy
Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20-25.

30 Resection of lobe or bilobectomy, but less than the whole lung (partial pneumonectomy, NOS)
33 Lobectomy WITH mediastinal lymph node dissection
The lymph node dissection should also be coded under *Scope of Regional Lymph Node Surgery*.

45 Lobe or bilobectomy extended, NOS
46 WITH chest wall
47 WITH pericardium
48 WITH diaphragm

55 Pneumonectomy, NOS
56 WITH mediastinal lymph node dissection (radical pneumonectomy)
The lymph node dissection should also be coded under *Scope of Regional Lymph Node Surgery*.

65 Extended pneumonectomy
66 Extended pneumonectomy plus pleura or diaphragm

70 Extended radical pneumonectomy
The lymph node dissection should also be coded under *Scope of Regional Lymph Node Surgery*.

80 Resection of lung, NOS

90 Surgery, NOS

99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

HEMATOPOIETIC/RETICULOENDOTHELIAL/ IMMUNOPROLIFERATIVE/MYELOPROLIFERATIVE DISEASE
C42.0, C42.1, C42.3, C42.4 (with any histology) or M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992 (with any site)

Code

98 All hematopoietic/reticuloendothelial/immunoproliferative/myeloproliferative disease sites and/or histologies, WITH or WITHOUT surgical treatment.

Surgical procedures for hematopoietic/reticuloendothelial/immunoproliferative/ myeloproliferative primaries are to be recorded using the data item *Surgical Procedure/Other Site*.

BONES, JOINTS, AND ARTICULAR CARTILAGE PERIPHERAL NERVES AND AUTONOMIC NERVOUS SYSTEM CONNECTIVE, SUBCUTANEOUS, AND OTHER SOFT TISSUES
Bones C40.0-C41.9, Nerves C47.0-C47.9, Connective C49.0-C49.9
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992)

Codes

00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

19 Local tumor destruction or excision, NOS

Unknown whether a specimen was sent to pathology for surgical event coded 19 (principally for cases diagnosed prior to January 1, 2003).

15 Local tumor destruction

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical event 15.

25 Local excision

26 Partial resection

30 Radical excision or resection of lesion WITH limb salvage

40 Amputation of limb
- 41 Partial amputation of limb
- 42 Total amputation of limb

50 Major amputation, NOS
- 51 Forequarter, including scapula
- 52 Hindquarter, including ilium/hip bone
- 53 Hemipelvectomy, NOS
- 54 Internal hemipelvectomy

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 25-54.

90 Surgery, NOS

99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

SPLEEN
C42.2
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992)

Codes

00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

19 Local tumor destruction or excision, NOS

Unknown whether a specimen was sent to pathology for surgical events coded 19 (principally for cases diagnosed prior to January 1, 2003).

21 Partial splenectomy

22 Total splenectomy

80 Splenectomy, NOS

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 25-80.

90 Surgery, NOS

99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

SKIN
C44.0-C44.9
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992)

Codes

00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS
- 11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
- 13 Cryosurgery
- 14 Laser ablation

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10-14.

20 Local tumor excision, NOS
- 26 Polypectomy
- 27 Excisional biopsy

Any combination of 20 or 26-27 WITH
- 21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 22 Electrocautery
- 23 Cryosurgery
- 24 Laser ablation

25 Laser excision

30 Biopsy of primary tumor followed by a gross excision of the lesion (does not have to be done under the same anesthesia)
- 31 Shave biopsy followed by a gross excision of the lesion
- 32 Punch biopsy followed by a gross excision of the lesion
- 33 Incisional biopsy followed by a gross excision of the lesion
- 34 Mohs surgery, NOS
- 35 Mohs with 1-cm margin or less
- 36 Mohs with more than 1-cm margin

45 Wide excision or re-excision of lesion or minor (local) amputation with the margins more than 1 cm, NOS. Margins MUST be microscopically negative.
- 46 WITH margins more than 1 cm and less than or equal to 2 cm
- 47 WITH margins greater than 2 cm

If the excision does not have microscopically negative margins greater than 1 cm, use the appropriate code, 20-36.

60 Major amputation

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20-60.

90 Surgery, NOS

99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

BREAST
C50.0-C50.9
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992)

Codes

00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

19 Local tumor destruction, NOS

No specimen was sent to pathology for surgical event coded 19 (principally for cases diagnosed prior to January 1, 2003).

20 Partial mastectomy, NOS; less than total mastectomy, NOS
- 21 Partial mastectomy WITH nipple resection
- 22 Lumpectomy or excisional biopsy
- 23 Reexcision of the biopsy site for gross or microscopic residual disease
- 24 Segmental mastectomy (including wedge resection, quadrantectomy, tylectomy)

Procedures coded 20-24 remove the gross primary tumor and some of the breast tissue (breast-conserving or preserving). There may be microscopic residual tumor.

30 Subcutaneous mastectomy

A subcutaneous mastectomy is the removal of breast tissue without the nipple and areolar complex or overlying skin.

40 Total (simple) mastectomy
- 41 WITHOUT removal of uninvolved contralateral breast
- 43 Reconstruction, NOS
  - 44 Tissue
  - 45 Implant
  - 46 Combined (Tissue and Implant)
- 42 WITH removal of uninvolved contralateral breast
- 47 Reconstruction, NOS
  - 48 Tissue
  - 49 Implant
  - 75 Combined (Tissue and Implant)

A total (simple) mastectomy removes all breast tissue, the nipple, and areolar complex. An axillary dissection is not done.

For single primaries only, code removal of involved contralateral breast under the data item *Surgical Procedure/Other Site*.

If contralateral breast reveals a second primary, each breast is abstracted separately. The surgical procedure is coded 41 for the first primary. The surgical code for the contralateral breast is coded to the procedure performed on that site.

Reconstruction that is planned as part of first course treatment is coded 43-49 or 75, whether it is done at the time of mastectomy or later.

50 Modified radical mastectomy
- 51 WITHOUT removal of uninvolved contralateral breast
- 53 Reconstruction, NOS
  - 54 Tissue
  - 55 Implant
  - 56 Combined (Tissue and Implant)
- 52 WITH removal of uninvolved contralateral breast
  - 57 Reconstruction, NOS
  - 58 Tissue
  - 59 Implant
  - 63 Combined (Tissue and Implant)

Removal of all breast tissue, the nipple, the areolar complex, and variable amounts of breast skin in continuity with the axilla. The specimen may or may not include a portion of the pectoralis major muscle.

If contralateral breast reveals a second primary, it is abstracted separately. The surgical procedure is coded 51 for the first primary. The surgical code for the contralateral breast is coded to the procedure performed on that site.

For single primaries only, code removal of involved contralateral breast under the data item *Surgical Procedure/Other Site*.

60 Radical mastectomy, NOS
- 61 WITHOUT removal of uninvolved contralateral breast
  - 64 Reconstruction, NOS
  - 65 Tissue
  - 66 Implant
  - 67 Combined (Tissue and Implant)
- 62 WITH removal of uninvolved contralateral breast
  - 68 Reconstruction, NOS
  - 69 Tissue
  - 73 Implant
  - 74 Combined (Tissue and Implant)

70 Extended radical mastectomy
- 71 WITHOUT removal of uninvolved contralateral breast
- 72 WITH removal of uninvolved contralateral breast

80 Mastectomy, NOS

Specimen sent to pathology for surgical events coded 20-80.

90 Surgery, NOS

99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

CERVIX UTERI
C53.0-C53.9
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992)

For invasive cancers, dilation and curettage is coded as an Incisional biopsy (02) under the data item *DX/Stage Procedure*.

Codes

00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS
- 11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
- 13 Cryosurgery
- 14 Laser
- 15 Loop Electrocautery Excision Procedure (LEEP)
- 16 Laser ablation
- 17 Thermal ablation

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10-17.

20 Local tumor excision, NOS
- 26 Excisional biopsy, NOS
- 27 Cone biopsy
- 24 Cone biopsy WITH gross excision of lesion
- 29 Trachelectomy; removal of cervical stump; cervicectomy

Any combination of 20, 24, 26, 27, or 29 WITH
- 21 Electrocautery
- 22 Cryosurgery
- 23 Laser ablation or excision

- 25 Dilatation and curettage; endocervical curettage (for in-situ only)
- 28 Loop Electrocautery Excision Procedure (LEEP)

30 Total hysterectomy (simple, pan-) WITHOUT removal of tubes and ovaries
Total hysterectomy removes both the corpus and cervix uteri and may also include a portion of vaginal cuff.

40 Total hysterectomy (simple, pan-) WITH removal of tubes and/or ovary
Total hysterectomy removes both the corpus and cervix uteri and may also include a portion of vaginal cuff.

50 Modified radical or extended hysterectomy; radical hysterectomy; extended radical hysterectomy
- 51 Modified radical hysterectomy
- 52 Extended hysterectomy
- 53 Radical hysterectomy; Wertheim procedure
- 54 Extended radical hysterectomy

60 Hysterectomy, NOS, WITH or WITHOUT removal of tubes and ovaries
- 61 WITHOUT removal of tubes and ovaries
- 62 WITH removal of tubes and ovaries

70 Pelvic exenteration

71 Anterior exenteration

Includes bladder, distal ureters, and genital organs WITH their ligamentous attachments and pelvic lymph nodes.

72 Posterior exenteration

Includes rectum and rectosigmoid WITH ligamentous attachments and pelvic lymph nodes.

73 Total exenteration

Includes removal of all pelvic contents and pelvic lymph nodes.

74 Extended exenteration

Includes pelvic blood vessels or bony pelvis

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20-74.

90 Surgery, NOS

99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

CORPUS UTERI
C54.0-C55.9
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992)

For invasive cancers, dilation and curettage is coded as an incisional biopsy (02) under the data item *DX/Stage Procedure*.

Codes

00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

19 Local tumor destruction or excision, NOS

Unknown whether a specimen was sent to pathology for surgical events coded 19 (principally for cases diagnosed prior to January 1, 2003).

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS
- 11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
- 13 Cryosurgery
- 14 Laser
- 15 Loop Electrocautery Excision Procedure (LEEP)
- 16 Thermal ablation

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10-16.

20 Local tumor excision, NOS; simple excision, NOS
- 24 Excisional biopsy
- 25 Polypectomy
- 26 Myomectomy

Any combination of 20 or 24-26 WITH
- 21 Electrocautery
- 22 Cryosurgery
- 23 Laser ablation or excision

30 Subtotal hysterectomy/supracervical hysterectomy/fundectomy WITH or WITHOUT removal of tube(s) and ovary(ies)
- 31 WITHOUT tube(s) and ovary(ies)
- 32 WITH tube(s) and ovary(ies)

40 Total hysterectomy (simple, pan-) WITHOUT removal of tube(s) and ovary(ies)
Removes both the corpus and cervix uteri. It may also include a portion of the vaginal cuff.

50 Total hysterectomy (simple, pan-) WITH removal of tube(s) and/or ovary(ies)
Removes both the corpus and cervix uteri. It may also include a portion of the vaginal cuff.

60 Modified radical or extended hysterectomy; radical hysterectomy; extended radical hysterectomy
- 61 Modified radical hysterectomy
- 62 Extended hysterectomy
- 63 Radical hysterectomy; Wertheim procedure
- 64 Extended radical hysterectomy

65 Hysterectomy, NOS, WITH or WITHOUT removal of tube(s) and ovary(ies)
  66 WITHOUT removal of tube(s) and ovary(ies)
  67 WITH removal of tube(s) and ovary(ies)

75 Pelvic exenteration
  76 Anterior exenteration
  Includes bladder, distal ureters, and genital organs WITH their ligamentous attachments and pelvic lymph nodes.

77 Posterior exenteration
  Includes rectum and rectosigmoid WITH ligamentous attachments and pelvic lymph nodes.

78 Total exenteration
  Includes removal of all pelvic contents and pelvic lymph nodes.

79 Extended exenteration
  Includes pelvic blood vessels or bony pelvis.

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20-79.

90 Surgery, NOS

99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

OVARY
C56.9
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992)

Codes

00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

17 Local tumor destruction, NOS

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical event 17.

25 Total removal of tumor or (single) ovary, NOS
- 26 Resection of ovary (wedge, subtotal, or partial) ONLY, NOS; unknown if hysterectomy done
- 27 WITHOUT hysterectomy
- 28 WITH hysterectomy

35 Unilateral (salpingo-)oophorectomy; unknown if hysterectomy done
- 36 WITHOUT hysterectomy
- 37 WITH hysterectomy

50 Bilateral (salpingo-)oophorectomy; unknown if hysterectomy done
- 51 WITHOUT hysterectomy
- 52 WITH hysterectomy

55 Unilateral or bilateral (salpingo-)oophorectomy WITH OMENTECTOMY, NOS; partial or total; unknown if hysterectomy done
- 56 WITHOUT hysterectomy
- 57 WITH hysterectomy

60 Debulking; cytoreductive surgery, NOS
- 61 WITH colon (including appendix) and/or small intestine resection (not incidental)
- 62 WITH partial resection of urinary tract (not incidental)
- 63 Combination of 61 and 62

Debulking is a partial or total removal of the tumor mass and can involve the removal of multiple organ sites. It may include removal of ovaries and/or the uterus (a hysterectomy). The pathology report may or may not identify ovarian tissue. A Debulking is usually found by another treatment modality such as chemotherapy.

70 Pelvic exenteration, NOS
- 71 Anterior

Includes bladder, distal ureters, and genital organs WITH their ligamentous attachments and pelvic lymph nodes.

72 Posterior

Includes rectum and rectosigmoid WITH ligamentous attachments and pelvic lymph nodes.

73 Total
Includes removal of all pelvic contents and pelvic lymph nodes.

74 Extended exenteration
Includes pelvic blood vessels or bony pelvis.

80 (Salpingo-)oophorectomy, NOS

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 25-80.

90 Surgery, NOS

99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

PROSTATE
C61.9
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992)

Do not code an orchiectomy in this field. For prostate primaries, orchiectomies are coded in the data item *Transplant/Endocrine*.

Codes

00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

18 Local tumor destruction or excision, NOS

19 Transurethral resection (TURP), NOS

Unknown whether a specimen was sent to pathology for surgical events coded 18 or 19 (principally for cases diagnosed prior to January 1, 2003).

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS
- 14 Cryoprostatectomy
- 15 Laser ablation
- 16 Hyperthermia
- 17 Other method of local tumor destruction

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10-17.

20 Local tumor excision, NOS
- 21 Transurethral resection (TURP), NOS
- 22 TURP-cancer is incidental finding during surgery for benign disease
- 23 TURP-patient has suspected/known cancer

Any combination of 20-23 WITH
- 24 Cryosurgery
- 25 Laser
- 26 Hyperthermia

30 Subtotal, segmental, or simple prostatectomy, which may leave all or part of the capsule intact

50 Radical prostatectomy, NOS; total prostatectomy, NOS
Excised prostate, prostatic capsule, ejaculatory ducts, seminal vesicle(s) and may include a narrow cuff of bladder neck.

70 Prostatectomy WITH resection in continuity with other organs; pelvic exenteration
Surgeries coded 70 are any prostatectomy WITH resection in continuity with any other organs. The other organs may be partially or totally removed. Procedures may include, but are not limited to, cystoprostatectomy, radical cystectomy, and prostatectomy.

80 Prostatectomy, NOS

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20-80.

90 Surgery, NOS

99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

TESTIS
C62.0-C62.9
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992)

Codes

00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

12 Local tumor destruction, NOS

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical event 12.

20 Local or partial excision of testicle

30 Excision of testicle WITHOUT cord

40 Excision of testicle WITH cord/or cord not mentioned (radical orchiectomy)

80 Orchiectomy, NOS (unspecified whether partial or total testicle removed)

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20-80.

90 Surgery, NOS

99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

KIDNEY, RENAL PELVIS, AND URETER
Kidney C64.9, Renal Pelvis C65.9, Ureter C66.9
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992)

Codes

00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS
- 11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
- 13 Cryosurgery
- 14 Laser
- 15 Thermal ablation

No specimen sent to pathology for surgical events 10-15.

20 Local tumor excision, NOS
- 26 Polypectomy
- 27 Excisional biopsy

Any combination of 20 or 26-27 WITH
- 21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 22 Electrocautery
- 23 Cryosurgery
- 24 Laser ablation

25 Laser excision

30 Partial or subtotal nephrectomy (kidney or renal pelvis) or partial ureterectomy (ureter)

Procedures coded 30 include, but are not limited to:
Segmental resection
Wedge resection

40 Complete/total/simple nephrectomy-for kidney parenchyma
Nephroureterectomy
Includes bladder cuff for renal pelvis or ureter.

50 Radical nephrectomy
May include removal of a portion of vena cava, adrenal gland(s), Gerota's fascia, perinephric fat, or partial/total ureter.

70 Any nephrectomy (simple, subtotal, complete, partial, total, radical) in continuity with the resection of other organ(s) (colon, bladder)
The other organs, such as colon or bladder, may be partially or totally removed.

80 Nephrectomy, NOS
Ureterectomy, NOS

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20-80.

90 Surgery, NOS

99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

BLADDER
C67.0-C67.9
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992)

Codes

00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS
- 11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
- 13 Cryosurgery
- 14 Laser
- 15 Intravesical therapy
- 16 Bacillus Calmette-Guerin (BCG) or other immunotherapy

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10-16.

20 Local tumor excision, NOS
- 26 Polypectomy
- 27 Excisional biopsy

Combination of 20 or 26-27 WITH
- 21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 22 Electrocautery
- 23 Cryosurgery
- 24 Laser ablation

25 Laser excision

30 Partial cystectomy

50 Simple/total/complete cystectomy

60 Complete cystectomy with reconstruction
- 61 Radical cystectomy PLUS ileal conduit
- 62 Radical cystectomy PLUS continent reservoir or pouch, NOS
- 63 Radical cystectomy PLUS abdominal pouch (cutaneous)
- 64 Radical cystectomy PLUS in-situ pouch (orthotopic)

When the procedure is described as a pelvic exenteration for males, but the prostate is not removed, the surgery should be coded as a cystectomy (code 60-64).

70 Pelvic exenteration, NOS
- 71 Radical cystectomy including anterior exenteration

For females, includes removal of bladder, uterus, ovaries, entire vaginal wall, and entire urethra. For males, includes removal of the prostate. When a procedure is described as a pelvic exenteration for males, but the prostate is not removed, the surgery should be coded as a cystectomy (code 60-64).
- 72 Posterior exenteration

For females, also includes removal of vagina, rectum and anus. For males, also includes prostate, rectum and anus.
- 73 Total exenteration

Includes all tissue and organs for an anterior and posterior exenteration.
- 74 Extended exenteration

Includes pelvic blood vessels or bony pelvis.

80 Cystectomy, NOS

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20-80.

90 Surgery, NOS

99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

BRAIN
Meninges C70.0-C70.9, Brain C71.0-C71.9, Spinal Cord, Cranial Nerves and Other Parts of Central Nervous System C72.0-C72.9
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992)

Do not code laminectomies for spinal cord primaries.

Codes

00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

10 Tumor destruction, NOS

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical event 10.

Do not record stereotactic radiosurgery (SRS), Gamma knife, Cyber knife, or Linac radiosurgery as surgical destruction. All of these modalities are recorded in the radiation treatment fields.

20 Local excision (biopsy) of lesion or mass
- 21 Subtotal resection of tumor, lesion or mass in brain
- 22 Resection of tumor of spinal cord or nerve

30 Radical, total, gross resection of tumor, lesion or mass in brain

40 Partial resection of lobe of brain, when the surgery cannot be coded as 20-30

55 Gross total resection of lobe of brain (lobectomy)

Codes 30-55 are not applicable for spinal cord or spinal nerve primary sites.

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20-55.

90 Surgery, NOS

99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

THYROID GLAND
C73.9
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992)

Codes

00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

13 Local tumor destruction, NOS

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical event 13.

25 Removal of less than a lobe, NOS
- 26 Local surgical excision
- 27 Removal of a partial lobe ONLY

20 Lobectomy and/or isthmectomy
- 21 Lobectomy ONLY
- 22 Isthmectomy ONLY
- 23 Lobectomy WITH isthmus

30 Removal of a lobe and partial removal of the contralateral lobe

40 Subtotal or near total thyroidectomy

50 Total thyroidectomy

80 Thyroidectomy, NOS

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 25-80.

90 Surgery, NOS

99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

LYMPH NODES
C77.0-C77.9
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992)

Codes

00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

19 Local tumor destruction or excision, NOS

Unknown whether a specimen was sent to pathology for surgical events coded to 19 (principally for cases diagnosed prior to January 1, 2003).

15 Local tumor destruction, NOS

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical event 15.

25 Local tumor excision, NOS
Less than a full chain, includes an excisional biopsy of a single lymph node.

30 Lymph node dissection, NOS
- 31 One chain
- 32 Two or more chains

40 Lymph node dissection, NOS PLUS splenectomy
- 41 One chain
- 42 Two or more chains

50 Lymph node dissection, NOS and partial/total removal of adjacent organ(s)
- 51 One chain
- 52 Two or more chains

60 Lymph node dissection, NOS and partial/total removal of adjacent organ(s) PLUS splenectomy
(Includes staging laparotomy for lymphoma.)
- 61 One chain
- 62 Two or more chains

Specimen sent to pathology for surgical events 25-62.

90 Surgery, NOS

99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

ALL OTHER SITES
C14.2-C14.8, C17.0-C17.9, C23.9, C24.0-C24.9, C26.0-C26.9 C30.0-C30.1, C31.0-C31.9, C33.9, C37.9, C38.0-C38.8, C39.0-C39.9, C48.0-C48.8, C51.0-C51.9, C52.9, C57.0-C57.9, C58.9, C60.0-C60.9, C63.0-C63.9, C68.0-C68.9, C69.0-C69.9, C74.0-C74.9, C75.0-C75.9
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992)

Codes

00 None; no surgery of primary site; autopsy ONLY

10 Local tumor destruction, NOS
- 11 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
- 12 Electrocautery; fulguration (includes use of hot forceps for tumor destruction)
- 13 Cryosurgery
- 14 Laser

No specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 10-14.

20 Local tumor excision, NOS
- 26 Polypectomy
- 27 Excisional biopsy
- Any combination of 20 or 26-27 WITH
  - 21 Photodynamic therapy (PDT)
  - 22 Electrocautery
  - 23 Cryosurgery
  - 24 Laser ablation
- 25 Laser excision

30 Simple/partial surgical removal of primary site

40 Total surgical removal of primary site; enucleation
- 41 Total enucleation (for eye surgery only)

50 Surgery stated to be “Debulking”

60 Radical surgery
Partial or total removal of the primary site WITH a resection in continuity (partial or total removal) with other organs.

Specimen sent to pathology from surgical events 20-60.

90 Surgery, NOS

99 Unknown if surgery performed; death certificate ONLY

UNKNOWN AND ILL-DEFINED PRIMARY SITES
C76.0-C76.8, C80.9
(Except for M-9750, 9760-9764, 9800-9820, 9826, 9831-9920, 9931-9964, 9965-9992)

Code

98 All unknown and ill-defined disease sites, WITH or WITHOUT surgical treatment.

Surgical procedures for unknown and ill-defined primaries are to be recorded using the data item *Surgical Procedure/Other Site*.

Blank Page

Blank Page

Blank Page

Blank Page

Blank Page

Index

Abstracted By 29
Accession Number 32
Address and Residency Rules 51
Address at DX 52-62
Address Current 65-70
Age at Diagnosis 48
AJCC Derived Stage 203-216
AJCC TNM Staging 147
Alcohol History 87
Alias Name 39
All Other Sites Surgery Codes 476
Ambiguous Terminology 18
Ambiguous Terminology Diagnosis 109
Anus Surgery Codes 452
Approach Surgical 2010 338
Articular Cartilage Surgery Codes 458
Autonomic Nervous System Surgery Codes 458
Autopsy 367
Beam Radiation Text 270
Behavior 139
Birthdate and Flag 46-47
Birthplace 49-50
Bladder Surgery Codes 472
Bone Mets at Diagnosis (CS) 170
Bones, Joints, and Articular Cartilage Surgery Codes 458
Boost Dose: cGy 299
Boost Treatment Modality 297-298
Brain Mets at Diagnosis (CS) 171
Brain Surgery Codes 473
Breast Surgery Codes 461-462
BRM/Immunotherapy 317-318
BRM/Immunotherapy Date and Flag 319-321
BRM/Immunotherapy Text 273
Cancer Identification 16
Cancer Status 362
Case Administration 19
Casefinding 9
Casefinding Source 108
Cause of Death 366
Central Nervous System Surgery Codes 473
Cervix Uteri Surgery Codes 463-464
cGy Boost Dose 299
cGy Regional Dose 300
Chemotherapy 307-308
Chemotherapy Date and Flag 309-311
Chemotherapy Text 271
City/Town at Diagnosis 54
City/Town Current 67
Class of Case 13, 72-73
Clinical TNM 153-157
Coding Dates 15
Collaborative Staging 158-218
Colon Surgery Codes 447-448
Comorbidities and Complications 1-10 91-102
Complications 1-10 91-102
Conclusive Diagnosis Date and Flag 110-111
Confidentiality 12

Connective, Subcutaneous, and Other Soft Tissues Surgery Codes 458
Contact Follow-up 388-398
Corpus Uteri Surgery Codes 465-466
County at Diagnosis 62
Cranial Nerves Surgery Codes 473
Criteria for Determining Multiple Primaries for Lymphatic and Hematopoietic 427-435
CS Extension 161
CS Lymph Nodes 163
CS Lymph Vascular Invasion 167
CS Metastasis at Diagnosis 168
CS Metastasis Evaluation 169
CS Mets at Diagnosis – Bone 170
CS Mets at Diagnosis – Brain 171
CS Mets at Diagnosis – Liver 172
CS Mets at Diagnosis – Lung 173
CS Overview 158-159
CS PreRx and PostRx (2012) 219-241
CS Regional LN's Examined 165
CS Regional LN's Positive 166
CS Regional Nodes Evaluation 164
CS Site-Specific Factors 1-25 174-202
CS Tumor Size 160
CS Tumor Size/Extension Evaluation 162
Current Address 65-70
Date of 1st Recurrence and Flag 381-382
Date of Birth and Flag 46-47
Date of BRM/Immunotherapy and Flag 319-321
Date of Chemotherapy and Flag 309-311
Date of Conclusive Diagnosis and Flag 110-111
Date of Death and Flag 359-360
Date of Diagnosis and Flag 127-128
Date of Dx/Staging Procedure and Flag 280-281
Date of First Contact and Flag 13, 41-42
Date of First Course of Treatment and Flag 342-343
Date of First Recurrence and Flag 381-382
Date of Hormone Therapy and Flag 314-316
Date of Last Contact or Death and Flag 359-360
Date of Multiple Tumors and Flag 113-114
Date of Other Treatment and Flag 324-325
Date of Recurrence and Flag 381-382
Date of Surgery and Flag 283-284
Date of Surgical Discharge and Flag 285-286
Date of Systemic Treatment and Flag 330-332
Date of Transplant/Endocrine and Flag 328-329
Date Radiation Ended and Flag 291-293
Date Radiation Started and Flag 288-290
Dates (Coding and Flags) 15
Death Cause 366
Death Date and Flag 359-360
Death Place 365
Definitions of Single and Subsequent Primaries for Hematologic Malignancies (<2010) 427-435
Derived AJCC 6th Ed Stages 203-209
Derived AJCC 7th Ed Stages 210-216
Derived Stages 203-218
Derived Summary Stage 217-218
Describe Place of Death 364
Determining Multiple Primaries 17, 427-435
Diagnosing Address 51-62
Diagnosis Date and Flag 127-128
Diagnostic Confirmation 133-134

Differentiation 140-142
Discharge Date and Flag 285-286
Distant Sites of 1st Recurrence 385-387
DX/Stage Procedure 278-279
DX/Stage Procedure Date and Flag 280-281
Embolization 20
Endocrine/Transplant 326-327
Esophagus Surgery Codes 444
Ethnicity 82
Evaluation CS Metastasis 169
Evaluation CS Regional Nodes 164
Evaluation CS Tumor Size/Extension 162
Examined Lymph Nodes 166
Extension (CS) 161
Facility Reporting 27-28
Facility Treating 276-277
Facility Referred From 104, 106
Facility Referred To 105, 107
First Contact 41-42
First Course Treatment 259-265
First Course Treatment Date and Flag 342-343
First Name 36
Flags (Dates) 15
Flags (Override) 400-415
Flags RMCDS 399
Follow-Up 12
Follow-Up Contact 388-398
Follow-Up Source 379
Follow-Up Source Next 380
Following Physician 370, 375
Grade/Differentiation 140-142
Grade Path System 143
Grade Path Value 144
Gum Surgery Codes 441
Hematopoietic/Reticuloendothelial/Immunoproliferative/Myeloproliferative Disease Surgery Codes 457
Hispanic Origin 82
Histology (ICD-O-3) 138
Histology Title Text 137
History Alcohol 87
History Tobacco 86
Hormone Therapy 312-313
Hormone Therapy Date and Flag 314-316
Hormone Therapy Text 272
Hospital (Reporting Facility) 27-28
Hospital (Treating Facility) 276-277
Hypopharynx Surgery Codes 443
ICD-O-3 Histology 138
Ill-Defined Sites Surgery Codes 477
Immunoproliferative Surgery Codes 457
In Utero Diagnosis and Treatment 20
Industry 85
Institution Referred From 104,106
Institution Referred To 105,107
Intrahepatic Bile Ducts Surgery Codes 453
Joints Surgery Codes 458
Kidney, Renal Pelvis, and Ureter Surgery Codes 471
Lab Tests Text 246
Larynx Surgery Codes 455
Last Contact Date and Flag 359-360
Last Name 35

Laterality 131-132
Letter Frequency 363
Lip Surgery Codes 441
Liver and Intrahepatic Bile Ducts Surgery Codes 453
Liver Mets at Diagnosis (CS) 172
Local Hospital (Facility) 276-277
Location of Radiation Treatment 306
Lung Mets at Diagnosis (CS) 173
Lung Surgery Codes 456
Lymph Nodes (CS) 163
Lymph Nodes Evaluation (CS) 164
Lymph Nodes Examined (CS) 166
Lymph Nodes Positive (CS) 165
Lymph Nodes Surgery Codes 475
Lymph Vascular Invasion (CS) 167
Maiden Name 38
Major Salivary Glands Surgery Codes 442
Managing Physician 371, 376
Margins 341
Marital Status at DX 88
Medical Record Number 43
Meninges Surgery Codes 473
Metastasis at Diagnosis (CS) 168
Metastasis Evaluation (CS) 169
Mets at Diagnosis – Bone 170
Mets at Diagnosis – Brain 171
Mets at Diagnosis – Liver 172
Mets at Diagnosis – Lung 173
Middle Name 37
Modality Boost Radiation 297-298
Modality Regional Radiation 294-296
Morphology ICD-O-3 138
Mouth Surgery Codes 441
Multiple Primaries 17
Multiple Primaries for Lymphatic and Hematopoietic (<2010) 427-435
Multiple Tumors Date and Flag 113-114
Multiple Tumors Reported as One Primary 112
Multiplicity Counter 115
Myeloproliferative Surgery Codes 457
Name - Alias 39
Name - First 36
Name - Last 35
Name - Maiden 38
Name - Middle 37
Name - Spouse/Parent 89
Name - Suffix 40
Nasopharynx Surgery Codes 443
National Provider Identifiers 15
Next Follow-up Source 380
Non-Reportable List 11
NPI – Facility Referred From 106
NPI – Facility Referred To 107
NPI - Following Physician 375
NPI - Managing Physician 376
NPI - Physician 3-4 377-378
NPI - Primary Surgeon 374
Number of Treatments to this Volume 301
Occupation 84
Operative Text 267
Oral Cavity Surgery Codes 441

Oropharynx Surgery Codes 443
Other Primary Tumors Text 126
Other Sites Surgery Codes 476
Other Treatment 324-325
Other Treatment Date and Flag 324-325
Other Treatment Text 274
Outcomes 18, 357
Ovary Surgery Codes 467-468
Override Fields 400-415
Paired Organs 131-132
Palate Surgery Codes 441
Palliative Care 336-337
Pancreas Surgery Codes 454
Parent Name 89
Parotid and Other Unspecified Glands Surgery Codes 442
Path Number 135
Pathologic TNM 153-157
Pathology Text 136
Patient Address and Residency Rules 51
Patient Status 361
Payer 74-75
PE Text 243
Peripheral Nerves and Autonomic Nervous System Surgery Codes 458
Pharynx Surgery Codes 443
Phone Number 71
Physical Exam Text 243
Physician - 3-4 372-373, 377-378
Physician - Following 370, 375
Physician - Managing 371, 376
Physician - Primary Surgeon 369, 374
Place of Birth 49-50
Place of Death 365
Place of Death Description 364
Place of Diagnosis Text 125
Positive Lymph Nodes 165
Postal (Zip) Code at Diagnosis 57-61
Postal (Zip) Code Current 70
PreRx and PostRx (CS) 219-241
Primary Payer at Diagnosis 74-75
Primary Site 130
Primary Site Title Text 129
Primary Surgeon 369, 374
Procedure Manual 14
Prostate Surgery Codes 469
Purpose of Registry 9
Pyriform Sinus Surgery Codes 443
Quality Control 12
Race 1-5 77-81
Radiation Boost Dose: cGy 299
Radiation Boost Treatment Modality 297-298
Radiation Dates and Flags 288-293
Radiation Location of Treatment 306
Radiation Number of Treatments to this Volume 301
Radiation Regional Dose: cGy 300
Radiation Regional Treatment Modality 294-296
Radiation Treatment Volume 302-305
Radiation/Surgery Sequence 346-347
Radiation 287
Radiation Text 269-270
Radiation Treatment Location 306

Radiation Treatment Modality 294-296
Radiation Treatment Volume 302-305
Readmission within 30 Days 340
Reason for No Radiation 345
Reason for No Surgery 344
Rectosigmoid Surgery Codes 449-450
Rectum Surgery Codes 451
Recurrence Date – 1st and Flag 381-382
Recurrence Distant Site 1-3 385-387
Recurrence Type - 1st 383-384
Reference Date 9
Referred From 104, 106
Referred To 105, 107
Regional Dose: cGy 300
Regional Lymph Nodes Examined (CS) 166
Regional Lymph Nodes Positive (CS) 165
Regional Nodes Evaluation (CS) 164
Regional Treatment Modality 294-296
Remarks Text 247
Renal Pelvis Surgery Codes 471
Reportable List 10
Reporting Facility 27-28
Reporting Source 30
Residency Rules 51
Reticuloendothelial Surgery Codes 457
Revising the Original Diagnosis 17
RMCDS Flag Fields 399
Scope of Regional Lymph Node Surgery 333-334
Scopes Text 244
SEER Summary Stage 2000 146
Sequence Number 33-34
Sequence Surgery/Radiation 346-347
Sequence Systemic/Surgery 348-349
Sex 45
Single and Subsequent Primaries for Hematologic Malignancies (<2010) 427-435
Site-Specific Factors 1-25 174-202
Size of Tumor 160
Skin Surgery Codes 460
Smoking History 86
Social Security Number 44
Soft Tissues Surgery Codes 458
Source of Casefinding 108
Source of Follow-Up 379
Source of Next Follow-up 380
Spanish/Hispanic Origin 82
Spinal Cord Surgery Codes 473
Spleen Surgery Codes 459
Spouse Name 89
Stage – AJCC 147-157
Stage – CS 158-218
Stage – Summary 146
Staging Text 145
State at Diagnosis 55-56
State Current 68-69
Status of Cancer 362
Status of Treatment 339
Status of Patient (Vital) 361
Stomach Surgery Codes 445-446
Street Address at Diagnosis 52
Street Address Current 65

Subcutaneous Tissues Surgery Codes 458
Subsequent Primaries for Hematologic 427-435
Subsequent Treatment 350
Suffix Name 40
Summary Stage 2000 146
Summary Stage Derived 217-218
Supplemental Address at Diagnosis 53
Supplemental Address Current 66
Surgeon 369, 374
Surgery Codes 441-477
All Other Sites 476
Anus 452
Articular Cartilage 458
Autonomic Nervous System 458
Base of Tongue 441
Bladder 472
Bones 458
Brain 473
Breast 461-462
Central Nervous System 473
Cervix 463-464
Colon 447-448
Connective Tissue 458
Corpus Uteri 465-466
Cranial Nerves 473
Esophagus 444
Floor of Mouth 441
Gum 441
Hematopoietic 457
Hypopharynx 443
Ill-Defined Sites 477
Immunoproliferative 457
Intrahepatic Bile Ducts 453
Joints 458
Kidney 471
Larynx 455
Lip 441
Liver 453
Lung 456
Lymph Nodes 475
Major Salivary Glands 442
Meninges 473
Mouth 441
Myeloproliferative 457
Nasopharynx 443
Oral Cavity 441
Oropharynx 443
Other Parts of Central Nervous System 473
Other Parts of Mouth 441
Other Parts of Tongue 441
Other Sites 476
Other Soft Tissue 458
Ovary 467-468
Palate 441
Pancreas 454
Parotid and Other Unspecified Glands 442
Peripheral Nerves 458
Pharynx 443
Prostate 469
Pyriform Sinus 443

Rectosigmoid 449-450
Rectum 451
Renal Pelvis 471
Reticuloendothelial 457
Skin 460
Soft Tissue 458
Spinal Cord 473
Spleen 459
Stomach 445-446
Subcutaneous Tissue 458
Testis 470
Thyroid 474
Tongue 441
Tonsil 443
Unknown 477
Ureter 471
Uterus 465-466
Surgery Date and Flag 283-284
Surgery of Other Regional/Distant Sites 335
Surgery of Primary Site 282
Surgery/Radiation Sequence 346-347
Surgery/Systemic Sequence 348-349
Surgery Text 268
Surgical Approach 2010 338
Surgical Discharge Date and Flag 285-286
Surgical Margins 341
Suspense Case 31
Systemic/Surgery Sequence 348-349
Systemic Treatment Date and Flag 330-332
Telephone and Type 71
Testis Surgery Codes 470
Text – BRM/Immunotherapy 273
Text - Chemotherapy 271
Text - Describe Place of Death 364
Text - Histology Title 137
Text - Hormone Therapy 272
Text – Lab Tests 246
Text – Operative 267
Text - Other Primary Tumors 126
Text - Other Treatment 274
Text – Pathology 136
Text – Physical Exam 243
Text - Place of Diagnosis 125
Text - Primary Site Title 129
Text – Radiation (Beam) 269
Text – Radiation (Other) 270
Text - Remarks 247
Text – Scopes 244
Text - Staging 145
Text - Surgery 268
Text - Usual Industry 85
Text - Usual Occupation 84
Text – X-ray/Scan 245
Thyroid Gland Surgery Codes 474
TNM Clinical 148-152
TNM Pathologic 153-157
TNM Stage Overview 147
Tobacco History 86
Tongue Surgery Codes 441
Tonsil Surgery Codes 443

Transplant/Endocrine 326-327
Transplant/Endocrine Date and Flag 328-329
Treatment First Course 259-265
Treatment Status 339
Tumor Size (CS) 160
Tumor Size/Extension Evaluation (CS) 162
Tumor Status 362
Type of 1st Recurrence 383-384
Type of Reporting Source 30
Unique Patient Identifiers 14
Unknown and Ill-Defined Sites 477
Ureter Surgery Codes 471
Usual Industry 85
Usual Occupation 84
Uterus Surgery Codes 465-466
Vital Status 361
Volume Number of Treatments 301
Volume Radiation Treatment 302-305
X-Ray/Scan Text 245
Zip Code at Diagnosis 57-61
Zip Code Current 70